CAMBRIDGE

FULL CONTACT

interchange FIFTH EDITION

3

Student's Book Video Activity Worksheets Workbook



With Online Self-Study

Jack C. Richards
with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

Experience Better Learning

DO NOT BUY THIS BOOK IF THE CODE HAS BEEN USED

WARNING: If this activation code has been revealed, someone else has used it, and it will not work for you.

Online Self-Study

Activation Code

- Scratch to reveal your code!
- Learn more with online self-study!
- Fun, free practice!

ZY8J-K4TR-3KC8-WU4D

How to activate the Online Self-Study

- 1. Scratch off and see your activation code.
- 2. Go to www.cambridgelms.org
- 3. Log in (or Register if you are a new user)
- 4. Go to My Learning and click Activate new product
- 5. Enter your code

For help, system requirements, or the terms and conditions, go to www.cambridgelms.org.

Your activation code can only be used once. You can access the online self-study for 12 months after you activate the code.

interchange

FIFTH EDITION

Student's Book

Jack C. Richards
with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

WITH ONLINE SELF-STUDY



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

4843/24, 2nd Floor, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, Delhi - 110002, India

79 Anson Road, #06-04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781316624050

© Cambridge University Press 2005, 2017

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2005

Second edition 2013

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in the United Kingdom by Latimer Trend

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

```
Student's Book 3 with Online Self-Study
ISBN
       9781316620519
ISBN
       9781316620533
                         Student's Book 3A with Online Self-Study
ISBN
       9781316620540
                         Student's Book 3B with Online Self-Study
                         Student's Book 3 with Online Self-Study and Online Workbook
ISBN
       9781316620557
                         Student's Book 3A with Online Self-Study and Online Workbook
ISBN
       9781316620564
                         Student's Book 3B with Online Self-Study and Online Workbook
ISBN
       9781316620588
                         Workbook 3
ISBN
       9781316622766
                         Workbook 3A
ISBN
       9781316622773
                         Workbook 3B
ISBN
       9781316622797
                         Teacher's Edition 3 with Complete Assessment Program
ISBN
       9781316622803
ISBN
       9781316622308
                         Class Audio CDs 3
                         Full Contact 3 with Online Self-Study
ISBN
       9781316624050
ISBN
                         Full Contact 3A with Online Self-Study
       9781316624074
                         Full Contact 3B with Online Self-Study
ISBN
       9781316624098
                         Presentation Plus 3
ISBN
       9781316622322
```

Additional resources for this publication at www.cambridge.org/interchange

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but 2 Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Informed by teachers

Teachers from all over the world helped develop Interchange Fifth Edition. They looked at everything – from the color of the designs to the topics in the conversations - in order to make sure that this course will work in the classroom. We heard from 1,500 teachers in:

- Surveys
- Focus Groups
- In-Depth Reviews

We appreciate the help and input from everyone. In particular, we'd like to give the following people our special thanks:

Jader Franceschi, Actúa Idiomas, Bento Gonçalves, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil

Juliana Dos Santos Voltan Costa, Actus Idiomas, São Paulo,

Ella Osorio, Angelo State University, San Angelo, TX, US Mary Hunter, Angelo State University, San Angelo, TX, US Mario César González, Angloamericano de Monterrey, SC, Monterrey, Mexico

Samantha Shipman, Auburn High School, Auburn, AL, US Linda, Bernick Language School, Radford, VA, US

Dave Lowrance, Bethesda University of California, Yorba Linda, CA, US

Tajbakhsh Hosseini, Bezmialem Vakif University, Istanbul,

Dilek Gercek, Bil English, Izmir, Turkey

Erkan Kolat, Biruni University, ELT, Istanbul, Turkey

Nika Gutkowska, Bluedata International, New York, NY, US Daniel Alcocer Gómez, Cecati 92, Guadalupe, Nuevo León, Mexico

Samantha Webb, Central Middle School, Milton-Freewater, OR, US

Verónica Salgado, Centro Anglo Americano, Cuernavaca, Mexico

Ana Rivadeneira Martínez and Georgia P. de Machuca, Centro de Educación Continua - Universidad Politécnica del Ecuador, Quito, Ecuador

Anderson Francisco Guimerães Maia, Centro Cultural Brasil Estados Unidos, Belém, Brazil

Rosana Mariano, Centro Paula Souza, São Paulo, Brazil Carlos de la Paz Arroyo, Teresa Noemí Parra Alarcón, Gilberto

Bastida Gaytan, Manuel Esquivel Román, and Rosa Cepeda Tapia, Centro Universitario Angloamericano, Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Antonio Almeida, CETEC, Morelos, Mexico

Cinthia Ferreira, Cinthia Ferreira Languages Services, Toronto, ON, Canada

Phil Thomas and Sérgio Sanchez, CLS Canadian Language School, São Paulo, Brazil

Celia Concannon, Cochise College, Nogales, AZ, US

Maria do Carmo Rocha and CAOP English team, Colégio Arquidiocesano Ouro Preto - Unidade Cônego Paulo Dilascio, Ouro Preto, Brazil

Kim Rodriguez, College of Charleston North, Charleston, SC, US

Jesús Leza Alvarado, Coparmex English Institute, Monterrey, Mexico

John Partain, Cortazar, Guanajuato, Mexico

Alexander Palencia Navas, Cursos de Lenguas, Universidad del Atlántico, Barranquilla, Colombia

Kenneth Johan Gerardo Steenhuisen Cera, Melfi Osvaldo Guzman Triana, and Carlos Alberto Algarín Jiminez, Cursos de Lenguas Extranjeras Universidad del Atlantico, Barranquilla, Colombia

Jane P Kerford, East Los Angeles College, Pasadena, CA,

Daniela, East Village, Campinas, São Paulo, Brazil Rosalva Camacho Orduño, Easy English for Groups S.A. de C.V., Monterrey, Nuevo León, Mexico

Adonis Gimenez Fusetti, Easy Way Idiomas, Ibiúna, Brazil Eileen Thompson, Edison Community College, Piqua, OH.

Ahminne Handeri O.L Froede, Englishouse escola de idiomas, Teófilo Otoni, Brazil

Ana Luz Delgado-Izazola, Escuela Nacional Preparatoria 5, UNAM, Mexico City, Mexico

Nancy Alarcón Mendoza, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Zaragoza, UNAM, Mexico City, Mexico

Marcilio N. Barros, Fast English USA, Campinas, São Paulo,

Greta Douthat, FCI Ashland, Ashland, KY, US

Carlos Lizárraga González, Grupo Educativo Anglo Americano, S.C., Mexico City, Mexico

Hugo Fernando Alcántar Valle, Instituto Politécnico Nacional, Escuela Superior de Comercio y Administración-Unidad Santotomás, Celex Esca Santo Tomás, Mexico City,

Sueli Nascimento, Instituto Superior de Educação do Rio de Janeiro, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Elsa F Monteverde, International Academic Services. Miami, FL, US

Laura Anand, Irvine Adult School, Irvine, CA, US Prof. Marli T. Fernandes (principal) and Prof. Dr. Jefferson J. Fernandes (pedagogue), Jefferson Idiomas, São Paulo,

Herman Bartelen, Kanda Gaigo Gakuin, Tokyo, Japan Cassia Silva, Key Languages, Key Biscayne, FL, US Sister Mary Hope, Kyoto Notre Dame Joshi Gakuin, Kyoto,

Nate Freedman, LAL Language Centres, Boston, MA, US Richard Janzen, Langley Secondary School, Abbotsford, BC, Canada

Christina Abel Gabardo, Language House, Campo Largo, Brazil

Ivonne Castro, Learn English International, Cali, Colombia Julio Cesar Maciel Rodriques, Liberty Centro de Línguas, São Paulo, Brazil

Ann Gibson, Maynard High School, Maynard, MA, US Martin Darling, Meiji Gakuin Daigaku, Tokyo, Japan Dax Thomas, Meiji Gakuin Daigaku, Yokohama, Kanagawa, Japan

Derya Budak, Mevlana University, Konya, Turkey B Sullivan, Miami Valley Career Technical Center International Program, Dayton, OH, US

Julio Velazquez, Milo Language Center, Weston, FL, US Daiane Sigueira da Silva, Luiz Carlos Buontempo, Marlete Avelina de Oliveira Cunha, Marcos Paulo Segatti, Morgana Eveline de Oliveira, Nadia Lia Gino Alo, and Paul Hyde Budgen, New Interchange-Escola de Idiomas, São Paulo,

Patrícia França Furtado da Costa, Juiz de Fora, Brazil Patricia Servín

Chris Pollard, North West Regional College SK, North Battleford, SK, Canada

Olga Arny, Notre Dame High School, Red Deer, Canada Amy Garrett, Ouachita Baptist University, Arkadelphia, AR, US

Mervin Curry, Palm Beach State College, Boca Raton, FL, US

Julie Barros, Quality English Studio, Guarulhos, São Paulo, Brazil

Teodoro González Saldaña and Jesús Monserrrta Mata Franco, Race Idiomas, Mexico City, Mexico

Autumn Westphal and Noga La`or, Rennert International, New York, NY, US

Antonio Gallo and Javy Palau, Rigby Idiomas, Monterrey, Mexico Tatiane Gabriela Sperb do Nascimento, Right Way, Igrejinha, Brazil

Mustafa Akgül, Selahaddin Eyyubi Universitesi, Diyarbakır, Turkey

James Drury M. Fonseca, Senac Idiomas Fortaleza, Fortaleza, Ceara, Brazil

Manoel Fialho S Neto, Senac - PE, Recife, Brazil Jane Imber, Small World, Lawrence, KS, US Tony Torres, South Texas College, McAllen, TX, US Janet Rose, Tennessee Foreign Language Institute, College Grove, TN, US

Todd Enslen, Tohoku University, Sendai, Miyagi, Japan Daniel Murray, Torrance Adult School, Torrance, CA, US Juan Manuel Pulido Mendoza, Universidad del Atlántico, Barranguilla, Colombia

Juan Carlos Vargas Millán, Universidad Libre Seccional Cali, Cali (Valle del Cauca), Colombia

Carmen Cecilia Llanos Ospina, Universidad Libre Seccional Cali, Cali, Colombia

Jorge Noriega Zenteno, Universidad Politécnica del Valle de México, Estado de México, Mexico

Aimee Natasha Holguin S., Universidad Politécnica del Valle de México UPVM, Tultitlàn Estado de México, Mexico Christian Selene Bernal Barraza, UPVM Universidad Politécnica del Valle de México, Ecatepec, Mexico Lizeth Ramos Acosta, Universidad Santiago de Cali, Cali, Colombia

Silvana Dushku, University of Illinois Champaign, IL, US Deirdre McMurtry, University of Nebraska - Omaha, Omaha, NE, US

Jason E Mower, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, US Paul Chugg, Vanguard Taylor Language Institute, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada

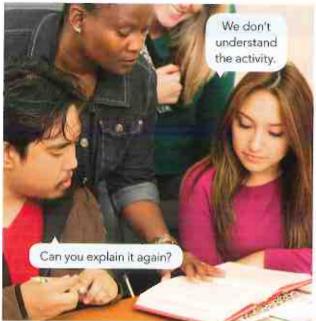
Henry Mulak, Varsity Tutors, Los Angeles, CA, US Shirlei Strucker Calgaro and Hugo Guilherme Karrer, VIP Centro de Idiomas, Panambi, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil Eleanor Kelly, Waseda Daigaku Extension Centre, Tokyo,

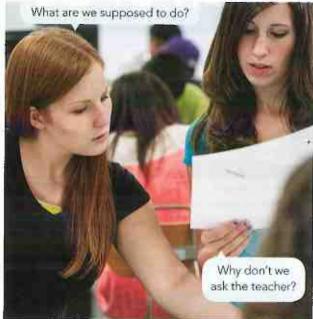
Sherry Ashworth, Wichita State University, Wichita, KS, US Laine Bourdene, William Carey University, Hattiesburg, MS, US

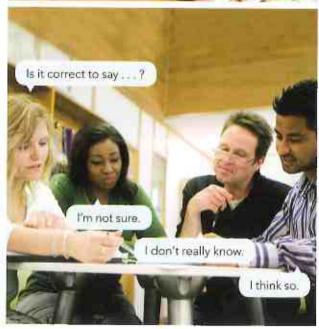
Serap Aydın, İstanbul, Türkey Liliana Covino, Guarulhos, Brazil Yannuarys Jiménez, Barranquilla, Colombia Juliana Morais Pazzini, Toronto, ON, Canada Marlon Sanches, Montreal, Canada

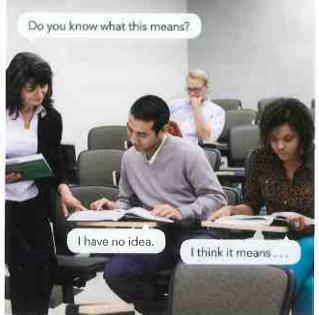
Additional content contributed by Kenna Bourke, Inara Couto, Nic Harris, Greg Manin, Ashleigh Martinez, Laura McKenzie, Paul McIntyre, Clara Prado, Lynne Robertson, Mari Vargo, Theo Walker, and Maria Lucia Zaorob.

Classroom Language Student questions









Plan of Book 3

	Titles/Topics	Speaking	Grammar
· AAA	UNIT 1 PAGES 2-7		B. Forevision and the Association
A PARTIE	That's my kind of friend! Personality types and qualities; relationships; likes and dislikes	Describing personalities; expressing likes and dislikes; agreeing and disagreeing; complaining	Relative pronouns as subjects and objects; it clauses + adverbial clauses with when
	UNIT 2 PAGES 8–13		
	Working 9 to 5 Jobs; career benefits; job skills; summer jobs	Talking about possible careers; describing jobs; deciding between two jobs	Gerund phrases as subjects and objects; comparisons with adjectives, nouns, verbs, and past participles
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 14-15		
	UNIT 3 PAGES 16–21		
	Lend a hand. Favors; formal and informal requests; messages	Making direct and indirect requests; accepting and declining requests	Requests with modals, if clauses, and gerunds; indirect requests
A local	UNIT 4 PAGES 22-27		
4.95	What happened? The media; news stories; exceptional events	Narrating a story; describing events and experiences in the past	Past continuous vs. simple past; past perfect
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 28-29		
All and a second	UNIT 5 PAGES 30–35		
	Expanding your horizons Cultural comparisons and culture shock; moving abroad; emotions; customs; tourism and travel abroad	Talking about moving abroad; expressing emotions; describing cultural expectations; giving advice	Noun phrases containing relative clauses; expectations: the custom to, (not) supposed to, expected to, (not) acceptable to
	UNIT 6 PAGES 36–41 That needs fixing. Consumer complaints; everyday problems; problems with electronics; repairs PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 42–43	Describing problems; making complaints; explaining something that needs to be done	Describing problems with past participles as adjectives and with nouns; describing problems with need + gerund, need + passive infinitive, and keep + gerund
	1 the mileta without 19 the terms		
	UNIT 7 PAGES 44-49 What can we do? The environment; global challenges; current issues	identifying and describing problems; coming up with solutions	Passive in the present continuous and present perfect; prepositions of cause; infinitive clauses and phrases
	Never stop learning. Education; learner choices; strategies for learning; life skills	Asking about preferences; discussing	Would rather and would prefer, by + gerund to describe how to do things
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 56-57	<u>1</u>	

	Pronunciation/Listening	Writing/Reading	"Personality quiz": Interviewing a classmate to find out about personality characteristics PAGE 114	
****	Linked sounds Listening for descriptions of people; listening for opinions	Writing a description of a good friend "Social Networks That Aren't for Everyone": Reading about unusual social networking sites		
	Stress with compound nouns Listening to the good and bad parts of a job; listening for complaints	Writing about two career choices "The Perfect Workplace?": Reading about different types of workplaces	"Networking": Comparing people's careers and personalities to make a seating chart for a dinner party PAGE 115	
	Unreleased consonants Listening to people making, accepting, and declining requests	Writing a message with requests "Can You Tell It Like It Is?": Reading about talking to friends about difficult topics	"Beg and borrow": Asking classmates to borrow items; lending or refusing to lend items PAGE 116	
	Intonation in complex sentences Listening to news stories; listening to messages and a podcast	Writing a personal account "Believing More Than We Should": Reading about the reliability of online content	"Spin a yarn": Inventing a story from three random elements PAGE 117	
	Word stress in sentences Listening for information about living abroad; listening to opinions about customs	Writing a pamphlet for tourists "Culture Shock": Reading about moving to another country	"Cultural dos and taboos": Comparing customs in different countries PAGE 118	
	Contrastive stress Listening to complaints; listening to people exchange things in a store; listening to a conversation about a "throwaway culture"	Writing a critical online review "Ask the Fixer!": Reading about a problem with a ride-sharing service	"Home makeover": Comparing problems in two pictures of an apartment PAGES 119, 120	
	Reduction of auxiliary verbs Listening to environmental problems; listening for solutions	Writing a post on a community website "Turning an Invasion Into an Advantage": Reading about a creative solution to lionfish on St. Lucia	"Take action!": Choosing an issue and deciding on an effective method of protest; devising a strategy PAGE 121	
	Intonation in questions of choice Listening to a conversation with a guidance counselor; listening for additional information	Writing about a skill "Are You Studying the 'Right' Way?": Reading about different studying styles	"Making choices": Choosing between different things you want to learn PAGE 122	

	Titles/Topics	Speaking	Grammar
417	UNIT 9 PAGES 58-63		
	Getting things done Everyday services; recommendations; self-improvement	Talking about things you need to have done; asking for and giving advice or suggestions	Get or have something done; making suggestions with modals + verbs, gerunds, negative questions, and infinitives
	UNIT 10 PAGES 64-69		
	A matter of time Historic events and people; biography; the future	Talking about historic events; talking about things to be accomplished in the future	Referring to time in the past with adverbs and prepositions: during, in, ago, fromto, for, since; predicting the future with will, future continuous, and future perfect
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 70-71		
KIND ENGINE	UNIT 11 PAGES 72-77		
	Rites of passage Milestones and turning points; behavior and personality; regrets	Describing milestones; describing turning points; describing regrets and hypothetical situations	Time clauses: before, after, once, the moment, as soon as, until, by the time, expressing regret with should (not) have + past participle; describing hypothetical situations with if clauses + past perfect and would/could have + past participle
4	UNIT 12 PAGES 78–83	D. H. Berton	Parameter and a control of the Table have
	Keys to success Qualities for success; successful businesses; advertising	Describing qualities for success; giving reasons for success; interviewing for a job; talking about ads and slogans	Describing purpose with infinitive clauses and infinitive clauses with for; giving reasons with because, since, because of, for, due to, and the reason
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 84-85		
	UNIT 13 PAGES 86-91		
	What might have been Pet peeves; unexplained events; reactions; complicated situations and advice	Drawing conclusions; offering explanations; describing hypothetical events; giving advice for complicated situations	Past modals for degrees of certainty: must (not) have, may (not) have, might (not) have, could (not) have; past modals for judgments and suggestions: should (not) have, could (not) have, would (not) have
100	UNIT 14 PAGES 92–97 Creative careers	Describing how something is done or	The passive to describe process with
	Movies; media and entertainment professions; processes	made; describing careers in film, TV, publishing, gaming, and music	is/are + past participle and modal + be + past participle; defining and non-defining relative clauses
	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 98-99		
	UNIT 15 PAGES 100-105		
**	A law must be passed! Recommendations; opinions; community issues; controversial topics	Giving opinions for and against controversial topics; offering a different opinion; agreeing and disagreeing	Giving recommendations and opinions with passive modals; should be, ought to be, must be, has to be, has got to be, tag questions for opinions
No.	UNIT 16 PAGES 106-111	Cides enisions about inscinting	Accomplishments with the simple
1	Reaching your goals Challenges; accomplishments; goals; inspirational sayings	Giving opinions about inspirational sayings; talking about the past and the future	Accomplishments with the simple past and present perfect; goals with the future perfect and would like to have + past participle
- SEV - 676	PROGRESS CHECK PAGES 112-113		
	GRAMMAR PLUS PAGES 132-150		

	Pronunciation/Listening	Writing/Reading	"Absolutely not!": Discussing different points of view of parents and their children PAGE 123	
	Sentence stress Listening to New Year's resolutions	Writing a message of advice "Improving the World - One Idea at a Time": Reading about young scientist Jack Andraka		
	Syllable stress Listening for dates and time periods; listening to predictions	Writing a biography "Looking Into the Future": Reading about futurists and their predictions for the year 2050	"History buff": Taking a history qui PAGE 124, 126	
	Reduction of have and been Listening to descriptions of important events; listening to regrets and explanations	Writing a message of apology "Stella's Answers": Reading about a conflict with a friend and advice on how to fix it	"Good choices, bad choices": Playing a board game to talk about how you were and could have been PAGE 125	
	Reduced words Listening for features and slogans	Writing a TV or web commercial "Brain Invasion: Why We Can't Forget Some Ads": Reading about what makes some advertisements memorable	"Advertising taglines": Creating a slogan and logo for a product PAGE 127	
	Reduction in past modals Listening to explanations; listening for the best solution	Writing about a complicated situation "Messages from Outer Space, or a Leaking Pipe?": Reading about unexplained events	"Think of the possibilities!": Drawing possible conclusions about situations PAGE 128	
***************************************	Review of stress in compound nouns Listening for parts of a movie	Writing about a process "The Truth About Being a Film Extra": Reading about what the job of film extra Is like	"Celebrities": Guessing famous people from clues PAGE 129	
	Intonation in tag questions Listening for solutions to everyday annoyances; listening to issues and opinions	Writing a persuasive essay "That's Plagiarism?": Reading about plagiarism in the digital age	"On the wrong side of the law": Deciding on punishments for common offenses PAGE 130	
	Stress and rhythm Listening to past obstacles and how they were overcome; listening for people's goals for the future	Writing a personal statement for an application "Soaring Like an Eagle": Reading about the athlete Michael Edwards	"A digital nomad": Taking a quiz about working remotely PAGES 131	

That's my kind of friend!

- Discuss personalities and qualities
- Discuss likes and dislikes

SNAPSHOT



CONVERSATION What are you looking for?

A Listen and practice.

Joe: What are you doing?

Roy: I'm setting up my profile for this online dating site.

I have to describe the kind of person I'm looking for.

Joe: I see. And what are you looking for?

Roy: Oh, I like people who aren't too serious and who have a good sense of humor. You know, someone I can have fun with.

Joe: OK. Uh, what else?

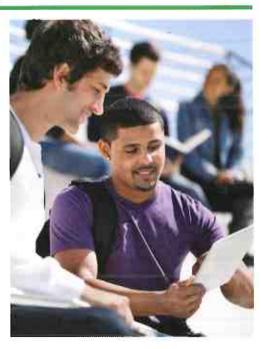
Roy: Well, I'd like someone I have something in common with – who I can talk to easily.

Joe: I think I know just the girl for you: my cousin Lisa. She's a lot of fun and she loves sports, just like you.

Roy: Well, why not? I'll give it a try.

Joe: OK, I'll invite her over for dinner, and you can tell me what you think.

E Listen to Joe and Roy discuss Lisa after they had dinner together. What did Roy think of her?



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A	
e	
Ę	

Relative pronouns

As the subject of a clause

I like people who/that aren't too serious.

I like people who/that have a good sense of humor. I'd like someone (who/that) I can talk to easily.

As the object of a clause

I want someone (who/that) I can have fun with.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 132

A Match the information in columns A and B. Then compare with a partner.

Α

- **1.** I don't like to work with people who/that <u>c</u>
- 2. I have some good, old friends who/that _____
- 3. I discuss my problems with people who/that
- **4.** I don't want to have a roommate who/that _____
- 5. I'd like to have a boss who/that
- 6. I enjoy teachers who/that _____
- 7. I'm looking for a partner who/that _____

- R
- a. help me understand things easily.
- **b.** is messy.
- c. are too competitive.
- d. I can respect as a leader.
- e. I met in middle school.
- f. I have a lot in common with.
- g. can give me good advice.
- Put a line through who/that in part A if it's optional. Then compare with a partner.
- C PAIR WORK Complete the sentences in column A with your own information. Do you and your partner have similar opinions?
 - A: I don't like to work with people who are too competitive.
 - B: Neither do I. I like to work with people who are friendly and helpful.

4 WORD POWER Personality traits

Α	Match the words with the definitions. Then decide whether the words
	are positive (P) or negative (N). Write P or N after each word.

<u>h</u>	1.	easygoing	<u> </u>

- 2. egotistical
- **3.** inflexible _____
- _____ **4.** modest _____
- _____ **5.** outgoing _____
- 7. supportive _____
- 8. temperamental
 - 9. unreliable

- a. a person who doesn't change easily and is stubborn
- **b.** someone who doesn't like giving or spending money
- c. someone who has a very high opinion of him- or herself
- d. someone who is helpful and encouraging
- e. a person who doesn't do what he or she promised
- f. a person who enjoys being with other people
- **g.** a person who has unpredictable or irregular moods
- **h.** a person who doesn't worry much or get angry easily
- i. someone who doesn't brag about his or her accomplishments

B PAIR WORK Cover the definitions. Take turns talking about the adjectives in your own words.

C PAIR WORK Think of at least two adjectives to describe your favorite relative. Then tell a partner.

[&]quot;An easygoing person is someone who . . . "

ISTENING What's new?

OA	Listen to conversations that describe three people. Are the descriptions
	positive (P) or negative (N)? Check (✓) the box.

1.	Emma	□Р	□N	
2.	Mrs. Leblanc	□Р	□N	
3.	Pablo	□Р	□N	

Listen again. Write two adjectives that describe each person in the chart.

6 DISCUSSION The right qualities

Mhat is the ideal friend, parent, or partner like? Add your own type of person under **People**. Then write one quality each ideal person should have, and one each should not have.

People	This person is	This person is not
The ideal friend		
The ideal parent		
The ideal partner		
The ideal		

- **GROUP WORK** Take turns describing your ideal people. Try to agree on the two most important qualities for each person.
 - **A:** I think the ideal friend is someone who is supportive and who is a good listener.
 - **B:** I agree. The ideal friend is someone who isn't critical . . .
 - C: Oh, I'm not sure I agree. . . .

WRITING A good friend

A Think about a good friend. Answer the questions. Then write a paragraph.

What is this person like?

How long have you known each other?

How did you meet?

How are you similar?

How are you different?

What makes your relationship special?

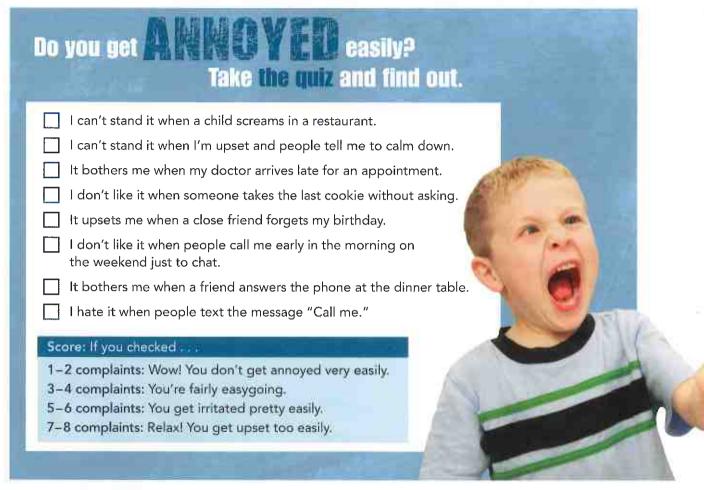
My friend Nolan is easygoing and doesn't take life too seriously. He's someone who loves to have fun, and he makes sure everyone else has a good time, too. We met about six years ago...

B PAIR WORK Exchange paragraphs. How are your friends similar? How are they different?



PERSPECTIVES Are you difficult to please?

Listen to some common complaints. Check (✓) the ones you agree with.

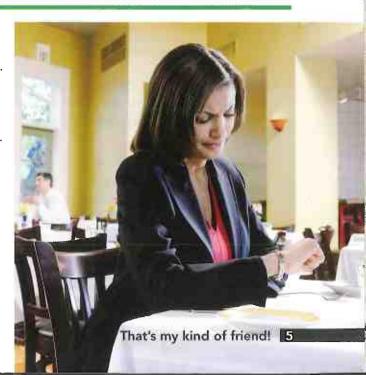


Calculate your score. Do you get annoyed easily? Tell the class what bothers you the most.

PRONUNCIATION Linked sounds

- Listen and practice. Final consonant sounds are often linked to the vowel sounds that follow them.

 It upsets me when a friend is late for an appointment. I love it when a friend is supportive and kind.
- Mark the linked sounds in the sentences below. Listen and check. Then practice saying the sentences.
 - 1. I hate it when a cell phone goes off at the movies.
 - 2. I can't stand it when a person is inflexible.
 - 3. Does it bother you when a friend is unreliable?
 - C PAIR WORK Take turns saying the sentences in Exercise 8. Pay attention to linked sounds.



GRAMMAR FOCUS

It clauses + adverbial clauses with when

I like it when my roommate cleans the apartment. I don't mind it when a friend answers the phone at the dinner table. I can't stand it when I'm upset and people tell me to calm down. It makes me happy when people do nice things for no reason. It bothers me when my doctor arrives late for an appointment. It upsets me when a close friend forgets my birthday.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page

A How do you feel about these situations? Complete the sentences with it clauses from the list. Then compare your sentences with a partner.

I love it I don't mind it It really upsets me It annoys me I don't like it I can't stand it It doesn't bother me I like it It makes me happy I hate it

1.		when	a friend
	gives me a present for no special re	eason.	
2.		when	someone
	criticizes a friend of mine.		
3.		when	friends
	start arguing in front of me.		
4.		when	people
	call me late at night.		
5.	-	when	
	salesclerks are temperamental.		
6.		when	people
	are direct and say what's on their n		
7.	<u>-</u>	when	someone
	corrects my grammar in front of ot	hers.	
8.		when	a friend
	is sensitive and supportive.		
9.		when	people
	throw trash on the ground.		
10.		when	a friend
	treats me to dinner.		

B GROUP WORK Do you ever get annoyed by a certain type of person or situation? Write down five things that annoy you the most. Then compare in groups.

- A: I can't stand it when someone takes food off my plate.
- B: I feel the same way. Especially when the person didn't order his or her own food!
- C: Yeah, but it bothers me more when . . .



INTERCHANGE 1 Personality quiz

Interview a classmate to find out about his or her personality. Go to Interchange 1 on page 114.



A Are you a frequent social media user? What kinds of things get your attention on social media?

HOME

NEWS

ABOUT

CULTURE

SOCIAL NETWORKS THAT AREN'T FOR EVERYONE

Since social networking websites first appeared, many have come and some have gone. However, their purpose has generally been the same: keeping up with old friends, making new friends, and sharing pictures, videos, and bits of interesting news. In addition, some sites make it possible to pursue new relationships, either online or in the real world.

For some people who have very specific interests, generic sites like Facebook or Twitter are not sufficient. They want to be part of a supportive online community that shares their particular passions.

A good example is Stache Passions, a social

site for people who wear, admire, or have an interest in moustaches. It features photos of men with all sizes and styles of moustaches, forums



for discussing the history, growing, and styling of the 'stache, and even a meet-up page to help you meet other moustache-lovers. Purrsonals is a specialized site for those who love cats. Here you can meet and chat with cat-loving friends, set up feline play-dates with local people and their pets, and even find a home for a cat in need. And if your friends don't like it when you share endless cute cat videos on your regular social site, Purrsonals is where people are sure to appreciate them! On a more serious note, Horyou is a website for people that want to do good in the world. On the site, you can connect with other social activists and entrepreneurs, plan meetings, share fund-raising strategies, and keep up with thousands of people who are working hard to make the world a better place. There are no funny videos here, but Horyou offers its own web-based video channel that features programs and documentaries about efforts to improve people's lives around the globe.

В	Read the article. Which website is good for the people below? Write S (Stache Passions), P (Purrsonals), or H (Horyou).
	This site would be good for someone who
	1. has a strong interest in personal appearance.
	2. is hoping to adopt a new pet
	3. wants to watch a bit of light entertainment.
	4. wants ideas for improving others' lives.
	5. is interested in styles from the past
	6. wants to raise money for a charity.
C	Find the words in the article that mean the following.
	1. enough for a purpose
	2. places where a discussion can take place
	3. to like and be grateful for something
	4. people who want to accomplish political or social change
	5. plans of action

PAIR WORK Do you belong to any specialized social networking sites? If yes, what is the focus? If not, what type of specialized site might you join?

SNAPSHOT

What do you want from your career?



Security

If you want to have stability, choose a job that you can keep for your whole life. You could be a federal judge, a public school teacher, or a university professor.



Adventure

Perhaps you can't picture yourself doing the same thing, at the same place, for years and years. In that case, be something that will allow you to explore other places and other cultures, like an environmentalist or a tour guide.



Money

Do you want to have a high-paying job? You may want to look into being a financial analyst, a doctor, or a stockbroker.

ompare with a partner.

Rank the factors from 1 (most important) to 3 (least important). Compare with a partner. Which factors did you consider when you chose your present job or your future career? Why?

PERSPECTIVES Career choices

Listen to students discuss career choices. Do you agree or disagree? Check (✓) the speaker you agree with more.



I'd like to work in the video game industry. Playing games all day would be lots of fun.



I disagree!
Playing the same game every day for months would be boring.



Designing clothes is not a man's job. Women are much more fascinated by fashion



Being a flight
attendant sounds very
exciting. Traveling all
the time would be
really interesting.



But flight attendants get tired of traveling. They spend most of their time in airports!





Compare your responses with your classmates. Give more reasons to support your opinions.



I'd enjoy working with animals. I think working as a veterinarian could be rewarding.



I'm not so sure.
Animals can be very unpredictable.
Getting a dog bite would be scary!

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Gerund phrases

Gerund phrases as subjects

Playing games all day would be lots of fun.

Being a flight attendant sounds exciting.

Designing clothes is not a man's job.

Working as a veterinarian could be rewarding.

Gerund phrases as objects

She'd be good at testing games.

He'd love being a flight attendant.

He wouldn't like being a fashion designer.

She'd enjoy working with animals.

A Look at the gerund phrases in column A. Write your opinion of each job by choosing information from columns B and C. Then add two more gerund phrases and write similar sentences.

Α

- 1. working from home
- 2. doing volunteer work
- 3. having your own business
- 4. working on a movie set
- 5. being a teacher
- 6. making a living as a tour guide
- 7. taking care of sick people
- 8. retiring at age 40

seems

could be

would be

must be

wouldn't be doesn't sound C

awful

stressful

fantastic

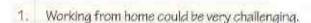
fascinating

pretty difficult

kind of boring

really rewarding

very challenging





- A: In my opinion, working from home could be very challenging.
- B: Really? Why is that?
- A: Because you have to learn to manage your time. It's easy to get distracted.
- B: I'm not sure that's true. For me, working from home would be . . .
- GROUP WORK Complete the sentences with gerund phrases.

Then take turns reading your sentences. Share the three most interesting sentences with the class.

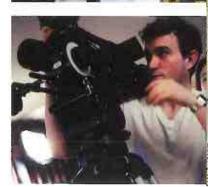
- 1. I'd get tired of . . .
- 2. I'd be interested in . . .
- 3. I'd be very excited about . . .
- **4.** I'd enjoy . . .
- 5. I think I'd be good at . . .
- 6. I wouldn't be very good at . . .

"I'd get tired of doing the same thing every day."









WORD POWER Suffixes

A Add the suffixes -er, -or, -ist, or -ian to form the names of these jobs. Write the words in the chart and add one more example to each column.

software develop er computer technic	freelance journal guidance counsel		marketing direct project manag	
-er	-or	-ist	-ian	
software developer				

B PAIR WORK Can you give a definition for each job?

"A software developer is someone who creates apps for computers and other devices."

SPEAKING Career paths

GROUP WORK Talk about a career you would like to have. Use information from Exercises 1-4 or your own ideas. Other students ask follow-up questions.

- A: I'd enjoy working as a guidance counselor.
- B: Why is that?
- A: Helping kids must be really rewarding.
- C: Where would you work?
- A: Well, I think I'd like to work at a high school. I enjoy working with teens.



WRITING What's more satisfying?

- A GROUP WORK What would you choose: a job that you love that doesn't pay well, or a high-paying job that you don't like? Discuss and list the consequences of the two alternatives.
- Use the list to write a paragraph justifying your choice.

Having a high-paying job that you don't like could be very frustrating. First of all, you'd have to do something you don't like every day. You would have a lot of money. However, it's not worth it if ...

C PAIR WORK Read your partner's paragraph. Do you agree or disagree? Why or why not?

useful expressions

First of all, . . . In addition,

Furthermore, ...

For example, . . .

However, . . .

On the other hand, . . .

In conclusion, ...

Listen and practice.

Tyler: Guess what? . . . I've found a summer job!

Emma: That's great! Anything interesting?

Tyler: Yes, working at a beach resort.

Emma: Wow, that sounds fantastic!

Tyler: So, have you found anything?

Emma: Nothing yet, but I have a couple of leads.

One is working as an intern for a news website - mostly answering emails and posts from readers. Or I can get a job as a

camp counselor again.

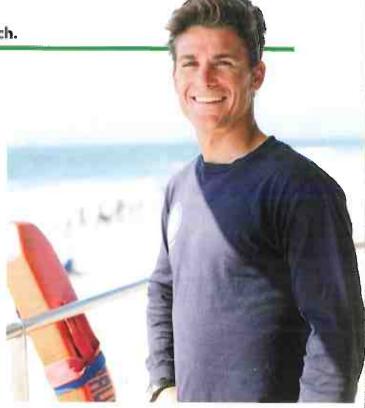
Tyler: Being an intern sounds more challenging than working at a summer camp. You could earn college credits, and it's

probably not as much work.

Emma: Yeah, but the internship doesn't pay as

much as the summer camp job. Do they have another opening at the beach resort?

That's the kind of job I'd really enjoy.



 $igctilde{igctrlaip}$ igctrloip Listen to the rest of the conversation. What is Tyler going to do at the resort?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

A

with verbs
earns more/less than
earns as much as
doesn't pay as much as
with past participles
is better paid than
is as well paid as
isn't as well paid as

	omplete the sentences using the word ore than one answer is possible.)	s in parentheses. Compare with a partner.
1.	In my opinion, being a firefighter is _ In addition, sales associates have	(stressful) being a sales associate. (hours) firefighters.
	In general, doctors need(earn) nutritionists.	(training) nutritionists. However, they usually
3.	Game testers don't need (earn) :	
4.	A career in banking is often (paid).	(demanding) a career in sales,

PAIR WORK Compare the jobs in part A. Which would you choose? Why?

PRONUNCIATION Stress with compound nouns

Listen and practice. Notice that the first word in these compound nouns has more stress. Then add two more compound nouns to the chart.

•	•	•	•
firefighter	game tester	guidance counselor	
	flight attendant	project manager	

B GROUP WORK Which job in each column would be more challenging? Why? Tell the group. Pay attention to stress.

LISTENING It's not what I thought.

Listen to Caden talk to Janelle about his job as a video game tester. Which parts of the job does he like and dislike? Check (✓) Like or Dislike.

		Like	Dislike
1.	The pay		
2.	The hours		
3.	Testing games		
4.	Playing video games at home		
5.	Thinking of new ideas for games		



- 🕞 B Listen again. What does Caden decide to do?
 - PAIR WORK What other advice would you give Caden?

DISCUSSION Which job would you take?

A What is a job you would like to have? What is a job you wouldn't like to have? Write each one on a separate slip of paper.

kindergarten teacher

tour guide

- B GROUP WORK Mix all the slips from your group. One student picks two slips and the group helps him or her decide between the two jobs.
 - A: You should take the job as a kindergarten teacher because you enjoy working with kids.
 - B: But being a tour guide sounds more exciting. I could travel more and earn more money.
 - C: But you'd work longer hours and . . .

INTERCHANGE 2 Networking

Would you be a good party planner? Go to Interchange 2 on page 115.

A Skim the web posts. Which person works in the most traditional workplace? the least traditional?

THE PERFECT WORKPLACE?

What is your workplace like? Tell us and see how other places compare

My workplace is cooler than any office I've ever seen. Working here is really stimulating. I share a table with my co-workers, and the workplace is flooded with light. Getting free meals is great, and there are relaxing activities like billiards and board games. Plus we get a membership to a local gyml It isn't all play, of course - we work very hard - but the perks make it better than any other job I can imagine.



Lauren L., Palo Alto, California

When I got my job as a project manager for a finance company in London, I imagined a modern building with views of the city and open workspaces. When I arrived for my first day, I was pretty surprised. I found a typical cubicle farm, with desks as far as the eye could see. It works for me, though. I can concentrate in my own space and then talk with colleagues. in the meeting rooms. We do have a great gym on the ground floor, so that's a bonus!



Catherine D., London, UK

I work in a research laboratory at a botanical garden. Working in a lab isn't as tedious as it sounds. That's because a lot of my work takes place in the greenhouses or outdoors. I love spending time among plants, and I enjoy working with other scientists who share my interests. True, the workplace isn't very luxurious. We have a tiny break room that some people complain about, and there isn't a place to work out or anything, but being outdoors so much makes up for the disadvantages.



Wark T., Bronx, New York

В	Read the web posts. Who would have written these sentences about their workplace? Write the names.
	 Working in different environments keeps me from getting bored. It's a perfect environment for sharing new ideas with co-workers. There's nothing unique about it, but it's fine for the kind of work we do. Visitors might get the idea that we don't take our work seriously. Some employees are dissatisfied with the workplace, but I don't mind it. I love being able to exercise without leaving the building.
n d	Find the words below in the web posts. Then complete the sentences with the words.

				·	·
S	timulating	perk	cubicle	tedious	luxurious
1.	One		of my jo	b is that w	e get free t
2.	Working v	vith cre	ative peo _l	ole is very	
3.	The disad around yo		e of worki	ng in a	is
4.	The marke	eting di	rector's o	ffice is very	
5.	Working v	vith nur	nhers all d	dav seems	

Units 1-2 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

I can	Very well	OK	A little
Describe personalities (Ex. 1)			
Ask about and express preferences (Ex. 1)			
Understand and express complaints (Ex. 2)			
Give opinions about jobs (Ex. 3)			
Describe and compare different jobs (Ex. 4)			

SPEAKING Doing things together

A What two qualities would you like someone to have for these situations?

A person to . . .

- 1. be your business partner
- 2. share an apartment with
- 3. go on vacation with
- 4. work on a class project with _____
- **B** CLASS ACTIVITY Find someone you could do each thing with.
 - A: What kind of person would you like to be your business partner?
 - B: I'd choose someone who has initiative and is hardworking.
 - A: Me, too! And I'd like someone who I can . . .



LISTENING I know what you mean!

Listen to Suki and Andy discuss these topics. Complete the chart.

	Andy's biggest complaint	Suki's biggest complaint
1. websites		
2. children		
3. taxi drivers		
4. restaurant servers		

B PAIR WORK What is your biggest complaint about any of the topics in part A?

"I hate it when you can't find the products you want on a company's website."

SURVEY Job evaluation

A GROUP WORK What job would you like to have? Ask and answer questions in groups to complete the chart.

	Name	Job	Good points	Bad points
1.				
2.	Į.			
3.				
4.				

A: What job would you like to have?

B: I'd like to be a flight attendant.

C: What would be the good points?

B: Well, traveling around the world would be exciting.

D: Would there be any bad points?

B: Oh, sure. I'd dislike packing and unpacking all the time. . . .

useful expressions

I would(n't) be good at . . .

I would enjoy/dislike . . .

I would(n't) be interested in . . .

I would(n't) be excited about . . .

B GROUP WORK Who thought of the most unusual job? the best job? the worst job?

ROLE PLAY Choosing a job

Student A: Your partner, Student B, is looking

for a job. Based on his or her opinions about jobs in Exercise 3, suggest two other jobs that Student B might enjoy.

Student B: You are looking for a job. Student A

suggests two jobs for you. Discuss the questions below. Then choose one of the jobs.

Which one is more interesting? harder? Which one has better hours? better pay? Which job would you rather have?

A: I thought of two other jobs for you. You could be a hairstylist or a truck driver.

B: Hmm. Which job has better hours?

A: Well, a hairstylist has better hours, but it's not as . . .

Change roles and try the role play again.





WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?



► Leave messages with requests

SNAPSHOT

ANNOYING FAVORS PEOPLE ASK

Could you . . .

- babysit my kids on the weekend?
- watch my stuff for a few minutes?
- let me use your credit card?
- drive me to the airport?
- let me use your passcode to download a movie?
- 6. help me move to my new apartment?
- come with me to my niece's school concert?
- let me stay at your place for a couple of weeks?
- donate to my favorite charity?
- 10. co-sign a bank loan for me?



Imagine that a close friend asked you each of these favors. Which would you agree to do? What are three other favors that you dislike being asked?

CONVERSATION Thanks a million.

Listen and practice.

Carlos: Hey, Keiko. What's up?

Keiko: Hi, Carlos. I was wondering if you could help me. I'm moving to my new apartment this weekend, and my car is pretty small. Can I borrow your truck, please?

Carlos: Um, I need it on Saturday, but you can borrow it

on Sunday.

Keiko: Thanks so much.

Carlos: Sure. So, have you packed already?

Keiko: Uh-huh. I mean, I'll have everything packed by Sunday. You know, I think some of my boxes are going to be kind of heavy. Would you mind helping

me put them in your truck on Sunday?

Carlos: I guess not. I suppose you want my help taking them

out of the truck, too?

Keiko: Oh, that'd be great. Thanks a million, Carlos!

Listen to two more calls Keiko makes. What else does she need help with? Do her friends agree to help?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

0

Requests with modals, if clauses, and gerunds

Less formal

Can I borrow your truck, please?

Could you lend me your truck, please?

Is it OK if I use your credit card?

Do you mind if I use your credit card?

Would it be all right if I used your credit card?

Would you mind if I borrowed your truck?

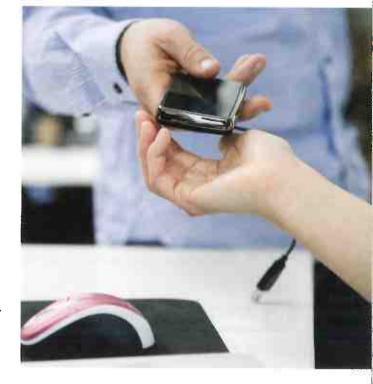
Would you mind helping me on Sunday?

I was wondering if you could help me move.

GRAMMAR PLUS 1919 134

A Circle the correct answers. Then practice with a partner.

- **1. A:** Is it OK if / Would / Do you mind I use your cell phone? Mine just died.
 - **B:** No problem, but can you keep it short? I'm expecting an important phone call.
- 2. A: Would you mind if I stay / staying / stayed at your place for the weekend?
 - B: Not at all. It'll be fun to have you stay with us.
- A: I was wondering I could / if I could / if I would borrow your car tomorrow.
 - **B:** Sure, that's fine. Just be careful. I've only had it for a couple of months.
- 4. A: Could you lend / lending / lent me \$20?
 - **B:** I'm sorry. I don't have any money to spare right now.
- **5. A:** Would you mind **help / helped / helping** me pack my stuff this weekend?
 - B: No, I don't mind. I'm not doing anything then.
- **6. A: Would you mind / Can / Is it OK if** you feed my cats while I'm on vacation, please?
 - B: Sorry, I don't get along with cats.



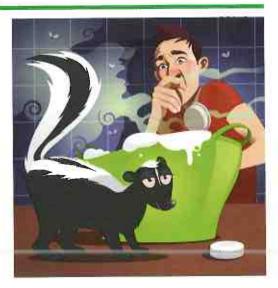
- Rewrite these sentences to make them more formal requests. Then practice making your requests with a partner. Accept or decline each request.
 - 1. Come to my cousin's wedding with me.
 - 2. Can I borrow your notes to study for the test?
 - 3. Can you lend me your camera to take with me on my vacation?
 - 4. Drive me to the airport.
 - 5. Help me paint my apartment.
 - 6. I'd like to borrow your cell phone to call a friend in London.
 - Would you mind coming to my cousin's wedding with me?

PRONUNCIATION Unreleased consonants

Listen and practice. Notice that when /t/, /d/, /k/, /g/, /p/, and /b/ are followed by other consonant sounds, they are unreleased.

Could Craig take care of my pet skunk? Can you ask Bob to help me?

- © B Circle the unreleased consonants in the conversations. Listen and check. Then practice the conversations with a partner.
 - 1. A: I was wondering if I could borrow that book.
 - B: Yes, but can you take it back to Doug tomorrow?
 - **2. A:** Would you mind giving Albert some help moving that big bed?
 - **B:** Sorry, but my doctor said my back needs rest.



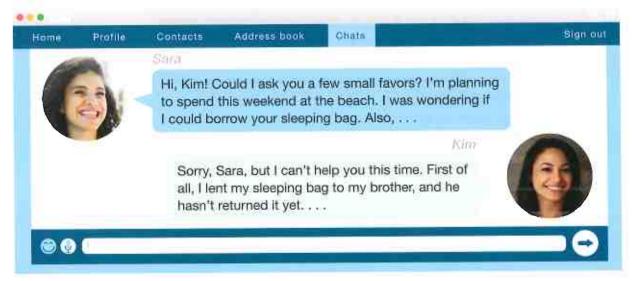
LISTENING I was wondering . . .

	Request	Yes	No
1. Jesse			
2. Liz			
3. Min-jun			

PAIR WORK Use the chart to act out each conversation in your own words.

WRITING A message with requests

- A Write a message to a classmate asking for several favors. Explain why you need help.
- B PAIR WORK Exchange messages. Write a reply accepting or declining the requests.



Find out how generous you are. Go to Interchange 3 on page 116.

WORD POWER Verb-noun collocations

- A Which verb is not usually paired with each noun? Put a line through the verb. Then compare with a partner.
 - 1. return / do / ask for / make
 - 2. owe / offer / do / accept
 - 3. receive / accept / turn down / offer
 - 4. do / receive / give / accept

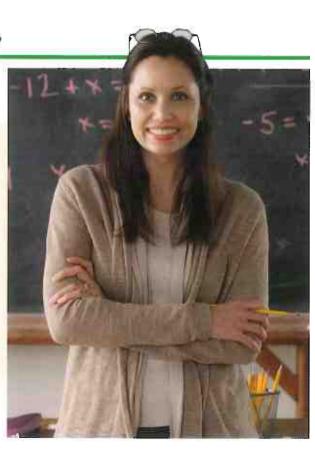
 - 5. do / return / make / receive
 - 6. accept / make / decline / offer
 - 7. receive / return / do / give

- a favor
- an apology
- an invitation
- a gift
- a phone call
- a request
- a compliment
- B PAIR WORK Add two questions to the list using the collocations in part A. Then take turns asking and answering the questions.
 - 1. What are nice ways to return a favor? How do you usually return favors?
 - 2. Have you ever invented an excuse to turn down an invitation? What excuse did you give?
 - 3. When was the last time you declined a request? What was the request?

5	
v	4

PERSPECTIVES Can you tell her . . . ?

- igcirc igcap A Listen to the requests people make at the school where Mary Martin teaches. Complete each request with ask or tell.
 - If you see Mary, can you _ her that she left her phone in my car?
 - 2. If you see Mary, could you whether or not she is coming to the teachers' meeting?
 - If you see Ms. Martin, can you _____ her if she's graded our tests yet?
 - 4. If you see Mary, please her not to forget the students' reports.
 - If you see Mary, could you _____ her to find me in the cafeteria after her meeting?
 - 6. If you see Ms. Martin, would you her what time I can talk to her about my homework?
 - Who do you think made each request? the school coordinator? another teacher? a student?



0

Indirect requests

Statements

Mary, you left your phone in my car.

Imperatives

Mary, don't forget the students' reports.

Yes/No questions

Ms. Martin, have you graded our tests? Mary, are you coming to the meeting?

Wh-questions

Mary, where are you having lunch?

Ms. Martin, what time can I talk to you about my homework?

Indirect requests introduced by that

Could you tell Mary (that) she left her phone in my car?

Indirect requests using infinitives

Can you tell Mary not to forget the students' reports?

Indirect requests introduced by if or whether

- → Can you ask her if she's graded our tests yet?
- Could you ask her whether or not she is coming to the meeting?

Indirect requests introduced by a question word

- Can you ask Mary where she's having lunch?
- Would you ask her what time I can talk to her about my homework?

GRAMMAR PLUS

Read the things people want to say to Mary. Rewrite the sentences as indirect requests. Then compare with a partner.

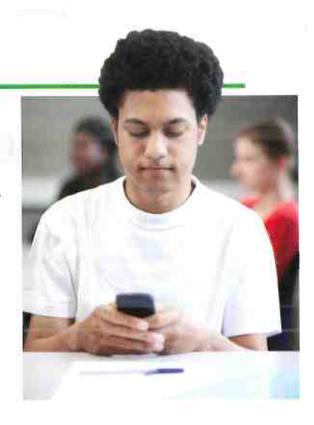
- 1. Mary, did you get my message about your phone?
- 2. Mary, will you give me a ride to school tomorrow?
- 3. Ms. Martin, when is our assignment due?
- 4. Mary, why didn't you meet us at the cafeteria for lunch?
- 5. Ms. Martin, I won't be in class tomorrow night.
- 6. Mary, are you going to the school party on Saturday?
- 7. Mary, please return my call when you get your phone back.
- 8. Mary, have you received my wedding invitation?
- 1. Could you ask Mary if she got my message about her phone?

SPEAKING No problem.

Write five requests for your partner to pass on to classmates.

Would you ask Keith If he can turn off his phone in class?

- **B CLASS ACTIVITY** Ask your partner to pass on your requests. Go around the class and make your partner's requests. Then tell your partner how people responded.
 - A: Would you ask Keith if he can turn off his phone in class?
 - **B:** No problem. . . . Keith, could you turn off your cell phone in class?
 - **C:** I'm sorry, but I can't! I'm expecting an important phone call.
 - B: Lee, Keith says he's expecting an important phone call.





A Scan the article. What are the three problems?

HOME NEWS ARTICLES COMMUNITY

CAN YOU TELL IT LIKE IT IS?

There are some things that are almost impossible to say to our close friends – especially if we want them to be our friends for life. Are you wondering what problems others have with bringing up difficult subjects? Read on.

I. "I can't stand your other friends."

My best friend sometimes hangs out with some people that I really don't like. I think they have a bad influence on her, and she only spends time with them because they are "cool." Could you tell me if I should bring the matter up with her, or if it would be better for me to keep quiet? I don't want to lose her as a friend. – Carly

2. "I won't help you cheat."

My closest friend has lost interest in school and studying. He says he's bored with the whole thing, so he often asks me whether I'll do him a favor and let him copy my homework. So far I've said no, but he keeps asking me. I told him that I think we'll get in trouble, but he just laughed and told me not to worry. I don't want to put my grades at risk, but I'm afraid to confront my friend about this, so I just keep avoiding the topic. How can I get him to stop asking? I was wondering if you could give me some tips for handling my problem. – Matt

"No, I CAN'T do that for you!"

My best friend and I get along really well, but she is constantly asking me to do things for her. "Could you help me pick out some new clothes? Would you mind if I borrowed your car? Can you look after my apartment while I'm away?" And these are just a few examples. I've said yes so many times that now I'm afraid I'll hurt her feelings if I say no. Any ideas? – Dana



В	ad the article. Then answer the questions.	
	Why is Carly concerned about her friend?	
	What is Matt most worried about?	
	Why is Dana afraid to say no to her friend?	
	Who is this advice best for?	
	a. Say that you know your friend can handle the work himself.	
	b. Agree to some requests, but only if your friend does something in return.	
	c. Tell your friend there are more important things than being popular.	
m,	hat do the underlined words in the article refer to? Write the correct word(s).	
	them	
	the matter	
	the whole thing	
	this	
	these	

PAIR WORK Have you ever had similar problems with friends? How were the problems resolved? What advice would you give to Carly, Matt, and Dana?

SNAPSHOT

NEWS

Several Streets Closed After "Suspicious Package" Was Found



HEALTH

Why Weight Loss isn't the Same as Being Healthy





TRENDING TOPICS

The Earth Is Getting Warmer and the Signs Are Everywhere



ARTS

The Top-Rated TV Shows You Need to Be Watching Right Now

SCIENCE

Women Need More Sleep Than Men Because They Use More of Their Brains



TECH

Here Are the Five Must-Have Apps for Runners



Which story would you like to read? Why?
What types of stories do you usually read online?
Where do you get your news? What's happening in the news today?

PERSPECTIVES Listen up.

Listen to what people are listening to on their way to work. Which stories from Exercise 1 are they related to?

Hey, I just downloaded this incredible app. I used it this morning and I think you're going to love it. While I was working out, it calculated exactly how many calories I burned. The bad thing is, it tells me I still need to run about 4 miles to burn off last night's dinner.

As scientists were doing some research on the effects of sleep deprivation, they discovered that women need about 20 more minutes of sleep a night than men do. They think the reason is that women tend to do several tasks at once, which makes their brains work harder.

Hi, Jeff. We're canceling our meeting in the downtown office this morning. We just learned that the police have closed all the streets in the area. It seems that a man was looking for his lost cat when he found a suspicious package inside a trash can. In the end, it was just an old box of chocolates.

B Which is a message from a co-worker? a message from a friend? a podcast?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Past continuous vs. simple past

Use the past continuous for an ongoing action in the past. Use the simple past for an event that interrupts that action.

Past continuous

While I was working out, As scientists were doing research,

A man was looking for his cat

Simple past

it calculated how many calories I burned.

they discovered that women need more sleep than men. when he found a suspicious package inside a trash can.

GRAMMAR PLUS ee page 135

Complete the stories using the past continuous or simple past forms of the verbs. Then compare with a partner.

1.	Bad memory, bad luck: Marcia Murphy	
		_ (donate) her old pants to
	a thrift shop. As sh	ne (walk)
	home, she	(remember) she
		_ (leave) \$20 in her pants pocket.
2.	Good intentions,	bad interpretation: Jason Clark
		_ (walk) home one day, when he
		_ (see) a little puppy crying on the
		(stop) to help.
		(pick) him up, a woman
	***	_ (come) from nowhere screaming:
	"Stop that guy. He	e's trying to steal my puppy." Jason
		(end) up spending three hours at the
	police station.	
3.	A bad ride, a bad	fall: On her birthday last year,
	Diane Larson	(drive) to work
	when she	(have) a bad accident.
		e safe, she decided to stay home
	on her birthday. Ur	nfortunately, that night while she
		(sleep) in her apartment, the floor
	of her living room	(collapse) and she



B GROUP WORK Take turns retelling the stories in part A. Add your own ideas and details to make the stories more interesting!

PRONUNCIATION Intonation in complex sentences

💽 \land Listen and practice. Notice how each clause in a complex sentence has its own intonation pattern.

As Marcia was walking home, she remembered she left \$20 in her pants pocket. A man was looking for his cat when he found a package.

(fall) into her neighbor's apartment.

B PAIR WORK Use your imagination to make complex sentences. Take turns starting and finishing the sentences. Pay attention to intonation.

A: As Lee was coming to school today . . .

B: . . . he saw a parade coming down the street.

5 LISTENING Crazy but true!

Listen to three news stories. Number the pictures from 1 to 3. (There is one extra picture.)









B Listen again. Take notes on each story.

	Where did it happen?	When did it happen?	What happened?
1.			
2.			
3.			

6 WRITING A personal account

A Think of a story that happened to you or to someone you know. Choose one of the titles below, or create your own.

A Scary Experience

I'll Never Forget That Day

1 Was Really Lucky

I Can't Believe It Happened

Write your story. First, answer these questions.

Who was involved?

Where did it happen?

When did it happen?

What happened?

I Was Really Lucky

Last year, I took a trip to see my grandparents. I was waiting in the airport for my flight when a storm hit, and all the flights were cancelled. Luckly, I...

GROUP WORK Take turns telling your stories. Other students ask questions. Who has the best story?

CONVERSATION That's terrible!

A Listen and practice.



CAROL Guess what? Someone stole my new bike yesterday!



MILLO Oh, no! What happened?



CAROL Well, I was having lunch with a friend, and I had parked it on the street, just like I always do. When I came back, someone had stolen it. I guess I'd forgotten to lock it up.



That's terrible! Did you report the theft to the police?



CAROL Yes, I did. And I also listed it on that site for stolen and lost bikes. But I doubt I'll ever get it back.



💽 B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What did Milo have stolen once? Where was he?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Past perfect

Use the past perfect for an event that occurred before another event in the past.

Past event

A

I was having lunch with a friend,

When I came back,

They were able to steal it

Past perfect event

and I had parked my bike on the street.

someone had stolen it.

because I had forgotten to lock it up.

GRAMMAR PLUS TO page 131

1.	. I (took/had taken) a trip t	D London last year. I was a bit scared because
		eled) abroad before, but everything was perfect.
2.	, (visited/was visiting) the	British Museum one afternoon when
	(ran/had run) into an old	school friend who I
	(didn't see/hadn't seen) for over 10 years.	
3.	One weekend, we (were d	riving/had driven) to Liverpool when we
		gas on the highway because we
	(forgot/had forgotten) to fill up the tank befor	e leaving. Fortunately, a truck driver
		d (helped/had helped) us.
4.	On the last day, as I (was	
	(got/had gotten) stuck in	
		(started/had started) it again.

PAIR WORK Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

Until last year, I had never . . .

One day, as I was . . .

WORD POWER Exceptional events

A Match the words in column A with the definitions in column B.

Ą	
i.	coincidence
≥.	dilemma
3.	disaster
1.	emergency
5.	lucky break
5.	mishap
7.	mystery

8. triumph

В

- a. an unexpected event that brings good fortune
- b. a situation that involves a difficult choice
- c. something puzzling or unexplained
- d. an event that causes suffering or destruction
- e. a great success or achievement
- f. an accident, mistake, or unlucky event
- g. a sudden, dangerous situation that requires quick action
- **h.** a situation when two similar things happen at the same time for no reason

B PAIR WORK Choose one kind of event from part A. Write a situation for it.

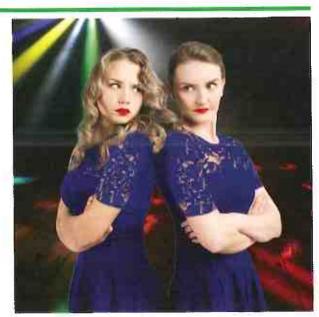
A man bought an old house for \$10,000. As he was cleaning the attic of his new home, he found an old painting by a famous painter. He had never collected art, but when he took it to a museum, he found out it was worth almost one million dollars, (lucky break)

GROUP WORK Read your situation. Can others guess which kind of event it describes?

10 SPEAKING It's a story about . . .

GROUP WORK Have you ever experienced the events in Exercise 9, part A? Tell your group about it. Answer any questions.

- A: It's a story about a coincidence.
- **B:** What happened?
- **A:** My sister bought a new dress for her graduation party. She had saved for months to buy it. When she got to the party, another girl was wearing the exact same dress!
- **C:** Wow! That's more than a coincidence. It's a disaster! And what did she do?



INTERCHANGE 4 Spin a yarn

Tell a story. Go to Interchange 4 on page 117.

A Skim the article. Was the story about lice true or false?



Believing More Than We Should

Is everything you read on the Internet true? If your answer is "no," you are absolutely right. Many stories and even photos are not to be trusted. And don't believe that because a good friend or a well-known news source has posted something that it is necessarily trustworthy.

There are many reasons for the spread of inaccurate content on the Internet. One reason is that satirical websites can create very believable stories, which they invent in order to make a point or to make people laugh. Other reasons might be an attempt to gain more readers, a desire to damage someone's reputation, or simple curiosity about how far a fake story can spread.

One story that spread throughout the media before anyone had checked the facts involved teenagers, selfies, and head lice. The article claimed that when teenagers were posing together for selfies, their heads often touched and the tiny insects were jumping from head to head. The article went on to say that this was causing a massive outbreak of lice. Some major websites and news outlets picked up the story, not even bothering to consult the experts. It

turned out that some entrepreneurs who were marketing a new treatment for head lice had made up the story and posted it. Their motivation was to get attention and more business.

The spread of this story is understandable. It involved one epidemic (selfies) causing another (lice), and the "ick" factor was irresistible. Because there is so much false information online, there are now websites, such as Snopes and Factcheck. which exist specifically to find out if stories are true or not. So the next time you see a story that sounds too good to be true, at least you have somewhere to turn for verification before you spread false information to all your friends.



В	Read the article. Find the words in italics in the a	article.
	Then check (\checkmark) the meaning of each word.	

- 1. inaccurate not exact or true
- 2. satirical humorously critical
- 3. reputation hurtful news about someone
- 4. massive small
- 5. irresistible hard to prove 6. verification proof of truth

- shocking or disgusting
 - completely factual
- public opinion of someone
- very large
- hard to fight against
 - another opinion

PAIR WORK Discuss these questions.

Do you think you would have believed the story about selfies and head lice? Do you think the creation of the story was justified or not? Who do you think is most responsible for the story being so popular?

Do you think there should be a penalty for spreading false information? If so, what should it be?

GROUP WORK Have you ever read a story that turned out to be false? How did you find out the truth?

Units 3-4 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

l can	Very well	OK	A little
Discuss favors (Ex. 1)			
Leave messages with requests (Ex. 2)			
Tell a story, making clear the sequence of events (Ex. 3, 5)			
Understand the sequence of events in a story (Ex. 4)			

ROLE PLAY Save the date!

- Student A: You are planning a class party at your house. Think of three things you need help with. Then call a classmate and ask for help.
- Student B: Student A is planning a party. Agree to help with some things, but not everything.

"Hi, Martina. I'm calling about the party. Would you mind . . . ?"

Change roles and try the role play again.



DISCUSSION Who said it?

A GROUP WORK Take turns reading each request. Then discuss the questions and come up with possible answers.

Tell Rita that I'm going to be a half hour late for our meeting. Ask her to wait for me in her office.

Tell your officers that he's white and wears a blue collar with his name on it – Rex. Please call if you find him. I'm sorry to bother you, but I really need it back for the office party on Friday. Please ask Sue to bring it over before that.

- 1. What is the situation?
- 2. Who is the request for? Who do you think received the request and passed it on?
- 3. Give an indirect request for each situation.

"Could you tell Rita . . . ?"

CLASS ACTIVITY Compare your answers. Which group has the most interesting answers for each message?

SPEAKING And then . . . ?

A PAIR WORK Choose a type of event from the box. Then make up a title for a story about it. Write the title on a piece of paper.

disaster emergency lucky break triumph

- PAIR WORK Exchange titles with another pair. Discuss the questions who, what, where, when, why, and how about the other pair's title. Then make up a story.
- 🖏 Share your story with the pair who wrote the title.

The Mystery of the Message in a Bottle

I was walking on the beach when I saw a bottle with a message inside. The bottle looked very old, and it was hard to open it. Inside there was a message: "My beloved Catherine, I hope you"

LISTENING What happened first?

- $lue{}$ Listen to each situation. Number the events from 1 to 3.
 - .1. I She got sick. She went on vacation. She went back to work.
 - John called me. I didn't get the message. I changed phone numbers.
 - I was very nervous. Heft the office. I felt relieved.
 - I was watching a movie. We went out. My cousin stopped by.

DISCUSSION Beginning, middle, and end

GROUP WORK Choose the beginning of a story from column A and an ending from column B. Discuss interesting or unusual events that could link A to B. Then make up a story.

Once, I . . .

accepted an interesting invitation. was asked to do an unusual favor. received an unexpected phone call. owed someone a big apology.

- A: Once, I accepted an interesting invitation.
- **B:** Let's see. . . . I was biking home when I got a text from an old friend.
- C: I hadn't seen him in over five years.
- D: I was really surprised, but . . .

R

Believe it or not, . . .

I got home, and there were 30 people in my living room! I had no idea where I was. when I got there, everyone had left.

it was the star of my favorite TV show!



WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

Expanding your horizons Discuss living in a foreign country Describe cultural expectations and differences

PERSPECTIVES Challenges of living abroad

- Listen to people talk about moving to a foreign country. Check (✓) the concerns you think you would share.
 - "One thing that I'd really miss is hanging out with my friends."
 - "Something that I'd be worried about is the local food. I'm a picky eater."
 - Getting used to a different culture might be difficult at first."
 - "I'd be worried about not knowing how to get around in a new city."
 - "The people that I'd miss the most are my parents. We're very close."
 - "Not knowing the local customs is something I'd be concerned about."
 - "I'd be nervous about getting sick and not knowing how to explain my symptoms."
 - "Communicating in a foreign language could be a challenge."



B Rate each concern from 1 (not worried at all) to 5 (really worried). What would be your biggest concern? Why?

WORD POWER Mixed feelings

A These words are used to describe how people sometimes feel when they live in a foreign country. Which are positive (P)? Which are negative (N)? Write P or N.

anxious embarrassed insecure
comfortable enthusiastic nervous
confident excited uncertain
curious fascinated uncomfortable
depressed homesick worried

- **B GROUP WORK** Tell your group about other situations in which you experienced the feelings in part A. What made you feel that way? How do you feel about the situations now?
 - A: I felt very embarrassed yesterday. I fell down the stairs in a restaurant.
 - **B:** How did it happen?
 - A: I think I slipped on something.
 - C: Did you get hurt?
 - **A:** Just a couple of bruises, but the restaurant manager was worried, so he convinced me to go to the hospital.



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Noun phrases containing relative clauses

Something (that) I'd be worried about is the local food.

One thing (that) I'd really miss is hanging out with my friends.

The people (who/that) I'd miss the most are my parents.

The local food is something (that) I'd be worried about.

Hanging out with my friends is one thing (that) I'd really miss.

My parents are the people (who/that) I'd miss the most.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 1

A Complete the sentences about living in a foreign country. Use the phrases below. Then compare with a partner.

my friends trying new foods my family feeling like an outsider making new friends getting sick

being away from home my grandmother's cooking speaking a foreign language getting lost in a new city not understanding people learning about a different culture

- 1. . . . is something I'd be very enthusiastic about.
- 2. The thing I'd probably be most excited about is . . .
- 3. . . . is something I'd really miss.
- 4. Two things I'd be homesick for are . . .
- 5. Something I'd get depressed about is . . .
- 6. . . . is one thing that I might be embarrassed about.
- 7. The thing I'd feel most uncomfortable about would be . .
- 8. . . . are the people who I'd miss the most.
- 9. One thing I'd be insecure about is . . .
- **10.** . . . are two things I'd be anxious about.



- Now complete three sentences in part A with your own information.
 - 1. Going to different festivals is something I'd be very enthusiastic about.
- GROUP WORK Rewrite your sentences from part B in another way. Then compare. Do others feel the same way?
 - I'd be very enthusiastic about going to different festivals.

PRONUNCIATION Word stress in sentences

- lacksquare lacksquare Listen and practice. Notice that the important words in a sentence have more stress.
 - Uruguay is a country that I'd like to live in.

Speaking a foreign language is something I'd be anxious about.

- Trying new foods is something I'd be curious about.
- PAIR WORK Mark the stress in the sentences you wrote in Exercise 3, part A. Then practice the sentences. Pay attention to word stress.

DISCUSSION Moving to a foreign country

GROUP WORK Read the questions. Think of two more questions to add to the list.

Then take turns asking and answering the questions in groups.

What country would you like to live in? Why? What country wouldn't you like to live in? Why?

Who is the person you would most like to go abroad with?

What is something you would never travel without?

Who is the person you would email first after arriving somewhere new?

What would be your two greatest concerns about living abroad?

What is the thing you would enjoy the most about living abroad?

A: What country would you like to live in?

B: The country I'd most like to live in is Zimbabwe.

C: Why is that?

B: Well, I've always wanted to work with wild animals. Besides, . . .



SNAPSHOT



Does your culture follow any of these customs?

Do any of these customs seem unusual to you? Explain.

What other interesting customs do you know?

CONVERSATION Bring a small gift.

Listen and practice.

Klaus: My boss invited my wife and me to dinner at his house.

Olivia: Oh, how nice!

Klaus: Yes, but what do you do here when you're invited

to someone's house?

Olivia: Well, here in the U.S., it's the custom to bring a

small gift.

Klaus: Like what?

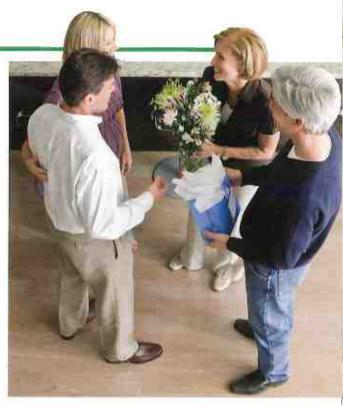
Olivia: Oh, maybe some flowers or chocolates.

Klaus: And is it all right to bring our kids along?

Olivia: Well, if you want to bring them, you're expected

to ask if it's OK first.

Listen to the rest of the conversation. If you are invited to someone's house in Germany, when are you expected to arrive? What can you bring as a gift?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Expectations	
When you visit someone,	it's the custom to bring a small gift. you aren't supposed to arrive early.
If you want to bring others,	you're expected to ask if it's OK first. you're supposed to check with the host.
	it's not acceptable to bring them without asking.
	GRAMMAR PLUS 100 mag 134

A Match information in columns A and B to make sentences about customs in the United States and Canada. Then compare with a partner.

A		В	
1.	If someone sends you a gift,	a.	you're supposed to call first.
2.	If you plan to visit someone at home,	b.	it's the custom to leave a tip.
3.	When you go out with friends for dinner,	c.	you aren't supposed to kiss him or her.
4.	If the service in a restaurant is acceptable,	d.	you're expected to respond to it quickly
5.	When you meet someone for the first time,	e.	you're expected to thank the person.
5.	When you receive an invitation,	f.	it's acceptable to share the expenses.

- **GROUP WORK** How are the customs in part A different in your country?
- Complete these sentences with information about your country or a country you know well. Then compare with a partner.
 - **1.** In . . . , if people invite you to their home, . . .
 - 2. When you go out on a date, . . .
 - 3. If a friend is in the hospital, . . .

- 4. When you receive a gift, . . .
- 5. If you're staying at someone's home, . . .
- 6. When someone has a baby, . . .

LISTENING Different cultures

A Listen to people describe customs they observed abroad. Complete the chart.

	Where was the person?	What was the custom?	How did the person react?
1. Carla			
2. Nate			
3. Shauna			

B PAIR WORK Which custom would you have the most trouble adapting to? Why?

SPEAKING Local customs

A PAIR WORK What should a visitor to your country know about local customs? Make a list. Include these points.

greeting and addressing someone eating or drinking in public taking photographs giving gifts

dressing appropriately visiting someone's home using public transportation tipping

When you ride in a cab, you're supposed to tip the driver.

B GROUP WORK Compare your lists with another pair. Then share experiences in which you (or someone you know) didn't follow the appropriate cultural behavior. What happened?

A: Once, when traveling abroad, I took a cab, and I didn't give the driver a tip.

B: What happened?

A: Well, he looked kind of angry. Then my friend gave the guy a tip, and I realized my mistake. It was a little embarrassing. . . .

WRITING A tourist pamphlet

A GROUP WORK Choose five points from the list you made in Exercise 10. Use them to write and design a pamphlet for tourists visiting your country or city.

WE HOPE YOU ENJOY YOUR STAY.

When you visit Italy, there are some important things you should know. For example, you can't buy a bus ticket on the bus in most big cities. Actually, you are supposed to . . .

B CLASS ACTIVITY Present your pamphlets. Which of the points were the most useful? What other information would a tourist need to know?





INTERCHANGE 5 Cultural dos and taboos

Compare customs in different countries. Go to Interchange 5 on page 118.



A Scan the blog. What kinds of culture shock did the writer experience?

0 0 0							
CU	LTU	8E	SH	\bigcirc	CK	I'm an exchange student from Spain navigating life in the	A
PROFILE	PHOTOS	BLOG	COMMUNITY			United States. Lucia M	

JANUARY 15

My hometown of Seville, Spain is a city with active, passionate people and a lively nightlife, so coming to Seattle, in the United States, has been quite an eye-opener. Americans think of Seattle as an exciting city, but the first time I went out with friends on a Saturday night, there was hardly anybody out in the streets. I actually thought something was wrong! Then my friend explained that most of their social life takes place indoors. In Seville, people fill the streets year-round, and Saturday nights are like a big celebration.

JANUARY 22

After a couple of weeks of classes, I've begun to notice some differences between Spanish students and American students. In Spain, students talk a lot during class, and it's not always related to the lesson. On the other hand, when Spanish students are enthusiastic about a lesson, they often ask unusual questions, and it's common to stay after class to talk to the teacher. American students are expected to talk less and listen more, and many of them take detailed notes. Most of them leave the room as soon as the class ends, though, and are already focused on the next lesson.

FEBRUARY 8

Before I came to the United States, a friend who had studied here told me that American friends don't greet each other like we do in Spain, where we touch cheeks and make kissing sounds. Americans often hug each other, but kissing is not common, and I've gotten used to that. So imagine my surprise when I was introduced to a new girl, and she immediately gave me the Spanish-style double kiss. When I asked my friend about this later, she explained that the girl was from a family of actors, and that "air-kissing" was a usual greeting for artistic people. My friend also said that some outgoing people greet their friends or family this way, but that it would make other people feel uncomfortable. I think I'll stick to handshakes and hugs while I'm here!

Read the blog. Then add the correct title to each entry. Where's the party? Class contrasts Meeting and greeting

 \mathbb{C} Check (\checkmark) True or False for each statement. Then correct the false statements.

		True	False	
1.	The writer was nervous because the Seattle streets were crowded at night.		П	
2.	Spanish students often stay after class to ask questions.			
3.	Hugging is a usual greeting among friends in Spain.			
4.	The writer plans to change the way she greets American friends.			

PAIR WORK How do things in your city compare with Seville? with Seattle?

That needs fixing.

- Describe problems and make complaints
- Discuss what needs fixing

SNAPSHOT

Some common complaints

Banking

The credit card company bills you for something you didn't buy.

Online shopping

The store sends you an incorrect size.

Internet providers

The Internet connection is not reliable, and you hardly ever get the speed you pay for.

Restaurants

The server rushes you to leave as soon as you finish your meal.

Vehicles

Your new car consumes too much gas.

Repair services

Your TV breaks again, a week after it was repaired.

Parking garage

Someone damages your car.



Have you ever had any of these problems? Which ones? What would you do in each of these situations? What other complaints have you had?

PERSPECTIVES That's not right!

0	A Listen to people describe	complaints.	Check (✔)	what you thir	ık each persor	n should do.
---	-----------------------------	-------------	-----------	---------------	----------------	--------------

- B Have you ever had similar complaints? What happened? What did you do?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Describing problems 1

With past participles as adjectives With nouns

The suitcase lining is torn. It has a tear in it./There's a hole in it.

The car is damaged. There is some damage on the bumper.

The coffee mug is chipped. There is a chip in it.

My pants are stained. They have a stain on them.

The camera lens is scratched. There are a few scratches on it.

The washing machine is leaking.* It has a leak.

*Exception: is leaking is a present continuous form.

GRAMMAR PLUS

A Read the comments from customers in a restaurant. Write sentences in two different ways using forms of the word in parentheses. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. Could we have another water pitcher? This one . . . (crack)
- 2. That valet was so careless. My car . . . (dent)
- 3. The toilet is dirty. And the sink . . . (leak)
- 4. This tablecloth isn't very clean. It . . . (stain)
- 5. Would you bring me another glass? This glass . . . (chip)
- **6.** The table looks pretty dirty. The wood . . . , too. (scratch)
- 7. The server needs a new shirt. The one he's wearing . . . (tear)
- 8. The walls really need paint. And the ceiling . . . (damage)
- This one is cracked. It has a crack.
- PAIR WORK Describe two problems with each thing below. Use forms of the words in the box. You may use the same word more than once.

break crack damage dent scratch stain









- A: The vase is broken.
- B: Yes. And it has a crack, too.
- GROUP WORK Look around your classroom. How many problems can you describe?

"The floor is scratched, and the window is cracked. The desks are . . . "

LISTENING I'd like a refund.

Listen to three customers return items they purchased. Complete the chart.

	Did the store give a refund?	Why or why not?	
Evie			
Darren			
Gisela			

B GROUP WORK How is your culture similar or different in terms of refunds and customer service?



ROLE PLAY How can I help you?

Student A: You are returning an item to a store. Decide what the item is

and explain why you are returning it.

Student B: You are a salesperson. A customer is returning an item

to the store. Ask these questions:

What exactly is the problem?

When did you buy it?

Can you show it to me?

Do you have the receipt?

Was it like this when you bought it?

Would you like a refund or a store credit?

Change roles and try the role play again.

CONVERSATION It needs to be adjusted.

D 🛝 Listen and practice.

MR. LEROY Hello?



Hello, Mr. Leroy. This is Heather Forman.



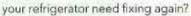
MR. LEROY Uh, Ms. Forman



HEATHER In Apartment 12C.



MR. LEROY Oh, yes. What can I do for you? Does





HEATHER No, it's the oven this time.



MR. LEROY Oh. So, what's wrong with it?



HEATHER Well, I think the temperature control needs to be adjusted.

The oven keeps burning everything I try to cook.



MR. LEROY Really? OK, I'll have someone look at it right away.



HEATHER Thanks a lot, Mr. Leroy.



MR. LEROY Uh, by the way, Ms. Forman, are you sure it's the oven and not your cooking?



Describing problems 2

Need + gerund

Need + passive infinitive

Keep + gerund

The oven needs adjusting

It needs to be adjusted.

Everything keeps burning.

The alarm needs fixing.

It needs to be fixed.

The alarm keeps going off.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 137

A What needs to be done in this apartment? Write sentences about these items using need with gerunds or passive infinitives.



- 1. the cupboards (clean)
- 2. the fire alarm (adjust)
- 3. the lights (replace)
- **4.** the plants (water)
- 5. the oven (fix)
- 6. the ceiling (paint)
- 7. the window (wash)
- 8. the light switch (change)
- The cupboards need cleaning.
 - OR
- The cupboards need to be cleaned.
- B PAIR WORK Think of five improvements you would like to make in your home. Which improvements will you most likely make? Which won't you make?

"First, the bedroom walls need painting. There are some small cracks. . . . "

WORD POWER Problems with electronics

- A Circle the correct gerund to complete the sentences. Then compare with a partner.
 - 1. My TV screen goes on and off all the time. It keeps flickering / sticking.
 - 2. The music player app jumps to the next song every 20 seconds. It keeps crashing / skipping.
 - 3. The battery in my new camera doesn't last long. It keeps freezing / dying.
 - 4. Something is wrong with my computer! It keeps crashing / jamming.
 - 5. I can't talk for long on my new phone. It keeps dying / dropping calls.
 - 6. This printer isn't making all the copies I want. It keeps jamming / flickering.
 - 7. My computer needs to be replaced. It keeps dropping / freezing.
 - 8. The buttons on the remote control don't work well. They keep skipping / sticking.
- **GROUP WORK** Describe a problem with an electronic item you own. Don't identify it! Others will try to guess the item.

"Some keys on my device keep sticking, and some are loose. . . ."

PRONUNCIATION Contrastive stress

0	Α	Listen and practice. Notice how a ch of each question and elicits a differe	•	the meaning
		Is the bedroom window cracked?	(No, the kitchen windo	ow is cracked.)
		Is the bedroom window cracked?	(No, the bedroom do	or is cracked.)
		Is the bedroom window cracked?	(No, it's stuck.)	
0	В	Listen to the questions. Check (🗸) th	ne correct response.	
		1. a. Are my jeans torn?	2. a.	Is the computer screen flickering?
		No, they're stained.		No, it's freezing.
		No, your shirt is torn.		No, the TV screen is flickering.
		b. Are my jeans torn?	b.	Is the computer screen flickering?
		No, they're stained.		No, it's freezing.
		No, your shirt is torn.		No, the TV screen is flickering.

LISTENING A throwaway culture

- Listen to a conversation between two friends. Answer the questions.
 - 1. What is wrong with Hayley's phone?
 - 2. What is Hayley's solution?
 - 3. What is Aaron's solution?
 - **4.** Why doesn't Hayley like Aaron's solution?
- Listen again. What is a "throwaway culture"?
 - **GROUP WORK** Do you agree that electronics aren't made as well as they used to be? Give an example to support your opinion.



11 WRITING A critical online review

A Imagine that you ordered a product online, but when you received it, you were unhappy with it. Write a critical online review. Explain all of the problems with the product and why you think others shouldn't buy it.

Best 4U promises a lot, delivers nothing.

I ordered a phone from Best 4U's website for my son's birthday. First, it took six weeks for the company to send it, and it arrived two weeks after his birthday. Now, the battery keeps dying very fast when he's just watching a movie or . . . READ MORE

GROUP WORK Read your classmates' reviews. What would you do if you read this critical online review and worked for the company that sold the product?

12 INTERCHANGE 6 Home makeover

Do you have an eye for detail? Student A, go to Interchange 6A on page 119; Student B, go to Interchange 6B on page 120.



A Skim the advice column. What problem did the reader have? How does the writer suggest solving the problem?

Home | Local | World | Entertainment | Advice column Ask the Fixer! Our problem-solver Marci Davis addresses a common problem with ride-sharing services. After a meeting downtown, I used my On the other hand, I do think something needs to phone to book a ride with a private car be fixed. Do you know anyone who reads all the way service in order to get home. As soon as through the terms of use for any app? There isn't the pick-up was confirmed, a friend came enough time in the day! I talked to a representative at out of the building, spotted me, and your ride-sharing company and made two suggestions. offered me a ride home. I immediately First, they need to highlight their cancellation policy canceled the car. But the next day I got an at the beginning of the terms, where people will see alert on my phone - the car service had it. Then, when you cancel a ride, a notification needs charged my credit card \$10! I contacted to be sent that the service, and they said it was for a late tells you about the cancellation. I didn't realize they were cancellation charge. going to charge me for that! Can you fix That way, riders this? - Lawrence, New York City won't keep getting this annoying The fact is, Lawrence, that you need to surprise. Let's hope read the terms of your ride-sharing app. the company pays It states clearly - somewhere in all those attention. thousands of words - that when you cancel What do you your ride less than ten minutes before think? Post your your car is scheduled to arrive, you have to comments, pay a fee. After all, the driver has already refused other possible passengers and is suggestions, complaints, and driving in your direction, so it's a loss when anecdotes. you cancel. oxtless Read the advice column. Find the words in italics in the article. Then check (\checkmark) the meaning of each word. 1. confirm make something available state that something will happen 2. cancellation act of stopping something act of delaying something 3. representative person who speaks for a company person who owns a company 4. terms rules of an agreement features of an app 5. notification act of giving information act of asking a question For each statement, check () True, False, or Not given. False Not given Lawrence booked a ride by mistake. 2. Lawrence did not expect to be charged for his ride. 3. The cancellation rule is available to read on the app. 4. Marci Davis thinks the cancellation fee is too expensive. 5. The company representative apologized for what happened. 6. Marci says ride-sharing agreements should be more clear.

Have you ever used a ride-sharing service? What do you think of this type of service?

Units 5-6 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

I can	Very well	ОК	A little
Talk about feelings and expectations (Ex. 1)			
Discuss cultural differences (Ex. 2)			
Understand problems and complaints (Ex. 3)			
Describe problems (Ex. 4)			
Discuss what needs to be improved (Ex. 5)			

SPEAKING Facing new challenges

PAIR WORK Choose a situation. Then ask your partner questions about it using the words in the box. Take turns.

moving to another city going to a new school

starting a new job getting married

anxious excited curious insecure embarrassed nervous enthusiastic worried

- A: If you were moving to another city, what would you be nervous about?
- **B:** One thing I'd be nervous about is not having any friends around. I'd be worried about feeling lonely!

SURVEY Cultural behavior

A What do you think of these behaviors? Complete the survey.

Is it acceptable to ?	"Yes	No	It depends
give money as a gift			
call older people by their first names			
greet friends with a kiss on the cheek			
ask how old someone is			
put your feet on the furniture			



- **B GROUP WORK** Compare your opinions. When are these behaviors acceptable? When are they unacceptable? What behaviors are never acceptable?
 - A: It's not acceptable to give money as a gift.
 - **B:** Oh, I think it depends. I think it's OK to give money to kids and teens, and as a wedding gift, but . . .

LISTENING I have a problem.

A Listen to three tenants complain to their building manager. Complete the chart.

	How the problem is solved
1.	
2.	
3.	

B GROUP WORK Do you agree with the solutions? How would you solve the problems?

ROLE PLAY Haggling

Student A: You want to buy this car from Student B, but it's too expensive. Describe the problems you see to get a better price.

Student B: You are trying to sell this car, but it has some problems. Make excuses for the problems to get the most money.

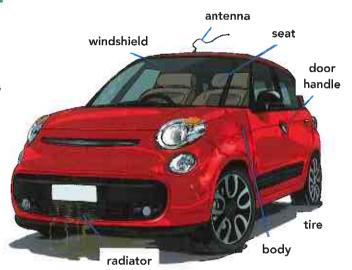
A: I'm interested in this car, but the door handle is broken. I'll give you \$. . . for it.

B: That's no big deal. You can fix that easily. How about \$. . . ?

A: Well, what about the windshield? It's . . .

B: You can't really see that. . . .

Change roles and try the role play again.



DISCUSSION School improvements

- A GROUP WORK Imagine you are on a school improvement committee. You are discussing changes to your school. Decide on the five biggest issues.
 - A: The Wi-Fi connection needs to be improved. It keeps disconnecting, and it's not fast enough.
 - B: Yes, but it's more important to replace the couch in the student lounge. It has a big hole and stains.
- B CLASS ACTIVITY Share your list with the class. What are the three most needed improvements? Can you think of how to accomplish them?



WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

What can we do?

- Discuss environmental problems
- Compare solutions to social problems

SNAPSHOT

WHAT A WASTE!



The United States generates
254 million tons of waste a year.
The average American produces
almost 2 kilograms of waste a day.



Americans throw away around 130 million cell phones a year. Much of this e-waste ends up in landfills.



Fifteen hundred plastic bottles are consumed every second in the United States.

It takes at least 500 years for a plastic bottle to decompose.



In the U.S., **30–40%** of the food supply is wasted. That could feed **millions** of hungry people.

How could we reduce the waste of each of these items?
What do you throw away? What do you tend to recycle?
What are two other environmental problems that concern you?

PERSPECTIVES Vote for a better city!

A Listen to an announcement from an election campaign. What kinds of problems does Grace Medina want to fix?

VOTE FOR GRACE MEDINA FOR CITY COUNCIL

Grace Medina's ideas for Riverside!

Have you noticed these problems in our city?

- Our fresh water supply is being contaminated by toxic chemicals.
- The roads aren't being repaired due to a lack of funding.
- Our community center has been closed because of high maintenance costs.
- Our city streets are being damaged as a result of heavy traffic.
- Many public parks have been lost through overbuilding.
- Low-income families are being displaced from their homes due to high rental prices.

GRACE MEDINA - THE CHANGE WE NEED



Which of these problems affect your city? Can you give specific examples?

Passive with prepositions

Present continuous passive

Our water supply is being contaminated

Our city streets are being damaged

The roads aren't being repaired

by toxic chemicals. as a result of heavy traffic. due to a lack of funding.

Present perfect passive

Our community center has been closed

Many public parks have been lost

because of high costs. through overbuilding.

GRAMMAR PLUS se libagi 138

A PAIR WORK Match the photos of environmental problems with the sentences below.













- 1. High emissions of carbon dioxide are causing climate changes. (by)
- 2. Rapid urbanization is depleting our natural resources. (through)
- 3. Water pollution has threatened the health of people all over the world. (due to)
- 4. Livestock farms have contaminated the soil and underground water. (because of)
- 5. The destruction of rain forests is accelerating the extinction of plants and wildlife. (as a result of)
- 6. Oil spills are harming birds, fish, and other marine life. (through)
- Rewrite the sentences in part A using the passive and the prepositions given. Then compare with a partner.
 - Climate changes are being caused by high emissions of carbon dioxide.
- C PAIR WORK Cover the sentences in part A above. Take turns describing the environmental problems in the pictures in your own words.

PRONUNCIATION Reduction of auxiliary verbs 💽 🔼 Listen and practice. Notice how the auxiliary verb forms is, are, has, and have are reduced in conversation. Food is being wasted. Our community center has been closed. Parks **Kave** been lost. Streets **are** being damaged. **B** PAIR WORK Practice the sentences you wrote in Exercise 3, part B. Pay attention to the reduction of is, are, has, and have.

LISTENING Saving the environment

0	Listen to three people describe some serious environmental problems.
	Check (✓) the problem each person talks about.

	Problem		What can be done about it?
1. Morgan	landfills	poor farmland	
2. Dalton	electricity	e-waste	
3. Kendall	air pollution	water pollution	

- Listen again. What can be done to solve each problem? Complete the chart.
 - GROUP WORK Which problem above worries you the most? What is being done to fix it?

WORD POWER Global challenges

PAIR WORK How concerned is your partner about these problems? Check (✓) his or her answers.

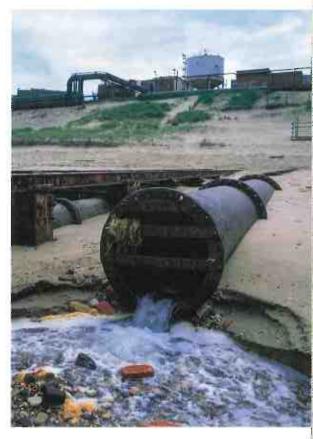
Problems	Very concerned	Fairly concerned	Not concerned
unemployment			
famine			RE
global warming			
government corruption			
infectious diseases			
political unrest			
poverty			
recession			
violence			



- **B GROUP WORK** Share your partner's answers with another pair. Which problems concern your group the most? What will happen if the problem isn't solved?
 - A: Many people have been affected by the high rates of unemployment.
 - **B:** We need to create more jobs and invest in education.
 - C: I agree. If we don't, young people won't have any opportunities in the future.

CONVERSATION What if it doesn't work?

- A Listen and practice.
 - Cindy: Did you hear about the dead fish that were found floating in the Bush River this morning?
 - Otis: Yeah, I read something about it. Do you know what happened?
 - Cindy: Well, there's a factory outside town that's pumping chemicals into the river.
 - Otis: How can they do that? Isn't that against the law?
 - **Cindy:** Yes, it is. But a lot of companies ignore those laws.
 - Otis: That's terrible! What can we do about it?
 - Cindy: Well, one way to change things is to talk to the company's management.
 - Otis: What if that doesn't work?
 - Cindy: Well, then another way to stop them is to get a news station to run a story on it.
 - Otis: Yes! Companies hate bad publicity. By the way, what's the name of this company?
 - Cindy: Believe it or not, it's called Green Mission Industries.
 - Otis: Really? My uncle is one of their top executives.
 - **B** CLASS ACTIVITY What else could Cindy and Otis do?
- 🕒 🖒 Listen to the rest of the conversation. What do Cindy and Otis decide to do?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Infinitive clauses and phrases

One way to change things is

to talk to the company's management.

Another way to stop them is

to get a news station to run a story.

The best ways to fight unemployment are

to create more jobs and invest in education.

GRAMMAR PLUS

A Find one or more solutions for each problem. Then compare with a partner.

Problems

- 1. The best way to fight poverty is
- 2. One way to reduce government corruption is _____ b. to create more jobs.
- **3.** One way to reduce unemployment is
- 4. The best way to stop global warming is _
- 5. One way to help the homeless is _____
- **6.** One way to improve air quality is

- a. to provide more affordable housing.
- c. to make politicians accountable for decisions.
- d. to have more vocational training programs.
- e. to increase the use of cleaner energy.
- f. to provide education to all children.
- g. to build more public shelters.
- h. to reduce deforestation.
- B GROUP WORK Can you think of two more solutions for each problem in part A? Agree on the best solution for each.

OISCUSSION What should be done?

A GROUP WORK Describe the problems shown in the photos. Then make suggestions about how to solve these problems.









What can be done . . . ?

- 1. to reduce crime
- 2. to keep our water supplies safe
- 3. to improve children's health
- 4. to improve traffic and mobility
- A: Our cities are being taken over by criminals.
- B: Well, one way to fight crime is to have more police on the streets.
- C: That's not enough. The best way to stop it is . . .
- B CLASS ACTIVITY Share your solutions. Which ones are the most innovative? Which ones are most likely to solve the problems?

10 INTERCHANGE 7 Take action!

Brainstorm solutions to some local problems. Go to Interchange 7 on page 121.

11 WRITING A post on a community website

A Choose one of the problems from the unit or use one of your own ideas.

Write a message to post on a community website.

NO MORE JUNK FOOD!

Our schools are serving poor quality food to our children. School cafeterias offer mostly fast food and soda to students. This has to change. One way to change this is . . .

PAIR WORK Exchange messages with a partner. Write a response suggesting another solution to his or her problem.



A Skim the article. What problem did the island face? What solution did the inhabitants come up with?

Home News Feature stories Sign in

Community

TURNING AN INVASION INTO AN ADVANTAGE

Lionfish are beautiful creatures. They are also one of the most invasive and destructive sea creatures on the planet, causing particularly serious problems in the Caribbean Sea. Their numbers have increased dramatically in a few years there, and they have already caused a great deal of damage to the ecosystem.

St. Lucia is a Caribbean island where action is being taken against the invasive species. The island is famous for its clear blue waters, and many tourists enjoy diving in order to explore the wonders of the extensive coral reefs. Unfortunately, lionfish eat the native fish that keep the reefs clean and healthy, putting the reefs at risk. It is estimated that lionfish can eat up to 80% of the small fish in a coral reef

in five weeks, and because the invasive fish reproduce very

quickly the problem could

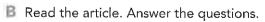
easily get worse in no time.

Instead of trying to trap or poison the destructive fish. islanders are turning the lionfish invasion to their advantage. They realized that one way to reduce the population of lionfish was to hunt them for sport and business, and

then use them for food. Although the fish have a very poisonous sting, they can be prepared so they are safe to eat. And Caribbean cooks were sure to find a way to turn these unwelcome fish into an unforgettable treat.

Unfortunately, the lionfish population has not been reduced by much, but at least the fish have been kept from multiplying too quickly. Jobs have also been provided for unemployed fishermen. who were unable to fish for other types of sea life in the protected waters. The lionfish

are still a problem, but the islanders are making the best of a bad situation - and they are making a living from it, too!



- 1. Why are the lionfish a concern?
- 2. Why is it important to protect the area around St. Lucia?
- 3. What characteristic makes the lionfish hard to control?
- 4. What solutions have the islanders come up with?
- 5. What have the results of the islanders' efforts been?
- GROUP WORK What environmental threats exist where you live? Can you think of any creative or unusual ways to deal with them?

SNAPSHOT

Learning: Anywhere, Anytime, for Any Reason

LEARNING PATHS

go to college
take online courses
take traditional training classes
study on your own
set up a study group
attend conferences
watch filmed lectures

det a degree

meet people and expand your network change jobs or career path get a raise or promotion at work get a professional license or certification learn something that makes your life easier have fun

Which learning paths have you tried? How was your experience? Which learning benefits do you consider the most important? Why? Are you planning to learn anything new this year? What?

PERSPECTIVES A survey

Listen to a survey that a school is conducting about student preferences. Check (✓) the student's answers.

Springfield Center for Continuing Education

New courses survey

- Would you rather study on your own or join a study group?
 - 📘 👞 l'd rather study on my own.
 - l'd rather join a study group.
 - c. I'd rather do both.
- Would you rather take an art course or a professional course?
 - I'd rather take an art course.
 - b. I'd rather take a professional course.
 - L'd rather not take either. I'd rather take a language course.

- 3. Would you prefer to take an online course or a traditional course?
 - a. I'd prefer to take an online course.
 - b. I'd prefer to take a traditional
 - l'd prefer not to take either. I'd prefer to hire a private tutor.
- **PAIR WORK** Take the survey. You can change the underlined information. Discuss your answers with a partner.

PRONUNCIATION Intonation in questions of choice

Listen and practice. Notice the intonation in questions of choice.

Would you prefer to study online or at a school? Would you rather learn something fun or useful?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Would rather and would prefer

Would rather takes the base form of the verb. Would prefer usually takes an infinitive. Both are followed by not in the negative.

Would you rather take an art course or a professional course?

I'd rather take an art course.

I'd rather not take either.

I'd rather take a language course than study art.

Let's join a study group.

I'd rather not join a group.

I'd rather not.

I'd prefer not to join a group.

I'd prefer not to.

Would you prefer to take an online course or a traditional course?

I'd prefer to take an online course.

I'd prefer not to take either.

GRAMMAR PLUS see p

-	e the conversations with <i>would</i> and the verbs in parentheses. Then prac	
1. A:	you rather	(take) a
tec	hnical course or an art course?	
B: I w	ould prefer (take) a	n art course. I'd
like	e to learn to paint.	-400 Miles
2. A:	you prefer	(get) a
pro	emotion or a new job?	
	tually, I'm not very happy at my pres	The state of the s
	her (get) a new job	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH
	you prefer	
	nething fun or something practical?	
	uess I'd prefer (stud	dy) something
· ·	ectical, like personal finance.	
		(learn) English in England or Canada?
	tell you the truth, I'd prefer	
ľ'd	rather (go) to Aust	ralia because it's warmer there.
	ou decided to learn to play an instr	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	(attend) a class or	•
		s than (hire) a tutor.
6. A:	you rather	(have) a job in an office or
	(work) outdoors?	
B: I'd	definitely rather (ha	ave) a job where I'm outdoors.

PAIR WORK Take turns asking the questions in part A. Pay attention to intonation. Give your own information when responding.

5 LISTENING Do what you love.

0	▲ Listen to a conversation between a student and his guidance counselor. Check (✓) the suggestions the guidance counselor gives.				
	talking to professors job shadowing	volunteer work informational interviews	more classes internships		

PAIR WORK If you could learn more about a job, what job would it be? Why? Which options above would you use?

SPEAKING Learn something new

A GROUP WORK Think of a personal or professional skill you would like to learn or improve. Discuss how you are planning to learn it. Use the ideas from the Snapshot on page 50, or use your own ideas.

A: I want to speak Italian. I think I'm going to take an online course.

B: It's hard to learn a language online. I think you should go to a language school.

A: I don't know. I'm really shy. I'd rather not have classes with other people.

C: You could . . .

B CLASS ACTIVITY Share your ideas with your classmates. Who is going to learn something unusual? How are they going to learn it?

INTERCHANGE 8 Making choices

What would you most like to learn? Take a survey. Go to Interchange 8 on page 122.

CONVERSATION It works for me.

Listen and practice.

Marta: So how's your Mandarin class going?

Kevin: Harder than I expected, actually. I'm finding the pronunciation very difficult.

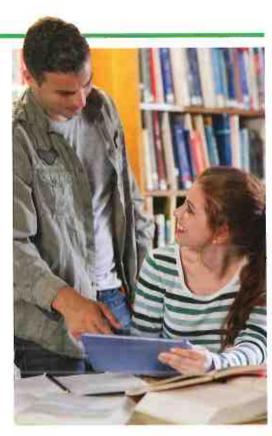
Marta: Well, I imagine it takes a while to get it right. You know, you could improve your accent by watching movies.

Kevin: That's a good idea. But how do you learn new vocabulary? I always seem to forget new words.

Marta: I learn new English words best by writing them down and reviewing them many times. I've been using this vocabulary-building app. It really works for me. Look.

Kevin: Hmm. Maybe I should try something like that!

- Listen to two other students, Rick and Nia, explain how they learn new words. Who uses technology to study? Who organizes words by category?
 - CLASS ACTIVITY How do you learn new words in a foreign language?



0

By + gerund to describe how to do things

You could improve your accent by watching movies.

I learn new words best by writing them down and reviewing them many times.

The best way to learn slang is not by watching the news but by watching TV series.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 139

Д	How can you improve your English? Complete the sentences with $b_{ m i}$	y
	and the gerund forms of the verbs. Then compare with a partner.	

- 1. A good way to learn idioms is ______ (watch) American sitcoms.
- 2. The best way to practice what you have learned is _____ (use) it in messages or conversation.
- 3. Students can become better writers _____ (read) more.
- 4. You can learn to use grammar correctly ______ (do) grammar exercises online.
- **5.** The best way to develop self-confidence in communication is _____ (talk) with native speakers.
- 6. You can improve your accent ______ (listen) to songs and singing along.
- 7. A good way to memorize new vocabulary is _____ (play) vocabulary games.
- **8.** You could become a more fluent reader ______ (read) something you're interested in every day.
- **GROUP WORK** Complete the sentences in part A with your own ideas. What's the best suggestion for each item?
 - A: In my opinion, a good way to learn idioms is by talking to native speakers.
 - B: I think the best way is not by talking to native speakers but by watching TV shows.

10 DISCUSSION Learning styles

Listen to James and Sophia describe how they developed two skills. How did they learn? Complete the chart.

	James	Sophia
1. become an effective public speaker	-	
2. learn to drive		

B GROUP WORK How would *you* learn to do the things in the chart?

GROUP WORK Talk about different ways to learn to do each of these activities. Then agree on the most effective method. take professional-looking photos manage your time cook become a good conversationalist break dance swim play a musical instrument



WORD POWER Life skills

A PAIR WORK How do we learn each of these things? Check (✓) your opinions.

	From parents	From school	On our ov
communication skills			
competitiveness			
concern for others		Bi	
cooperation			
creativity			
money management			
perseverance			
problem solving			
self-confidence			
self-discipline			
time management			
tolerance			
GROUP WORK How	w can vou deve	lop the skills i	n part A?

- **B GROUP WORK** How can you develop the skills in part A? Use the activities in the box or your own ideas.
 - **A:** You can develop communication skills by taking a public speaking class.
 - **B:** You can also develop them by trying to be a better listener.



using a daily planner
volunteering in a hospital
taking a public speaking class
performing in a play
going to museums
learning a martial art
playing a team sport
making a budget

WRITING Something I learned

A Think of a skill you have learned. Read these questions and take notes. Then use your notes to write about what you learned.

What is required to be successful at it?
What are some ways people learn to do it?
How did you learn it?
What was difficult about learning it?

I used to have serious problems managing my finances, and I never paid my bills on time. I have to admit I had very poor money management skills. Some people learn to manage their money at home or by taking courses at school, but I didn't.

When a friend told me about a personal finance course, I decided to take it. I first learned to keep track of my expenses by recording every penny I spent. Then . . .

B GROUP WORK Share your writing. Have any of your classmates' experiences inspired you to learn a new skill?





A. Have you ever had trouble focusing when you're studying? What did you do about it?



You may study differently from your friends, but your study habits are probably not wrong!

Kelly and Maria are best friends with a lot in common. They love doing things together, such as going to movies and concerts, shopping, or just sitting at a local café. Since they take a lot of the same school subjects, they would love to study together, but they find this impossible. Their working styles are so completely different that they can't be in the same room while they are studying!

Kelly would rather study in a clean, open space, whereas Maria works best by surrounding herself with books, papers, and other clutter. Kelly prefers to study in a totally silent room, but Maria loves to play music or even have the TV on. Kelly can sit for hours without moving, and often gets all of her homework done in one sitting. Maria, on the other hand, is constantly getting up, and claims that she thinks best when she's on the move.

You might be asking yourself, which way of studying gets better results? Many people assume that a silent, uncluttered setting is the way to go, but it seems that is not necessarily the case. Some research has even shown that outside noise and clutter help some people concentrate because it makes them form a mental "wall" around what they are doing and improves their focus. So, if you're a student who chooses to study while sitting at a table in a busy shopping mall, don't worry about it. And if you work in total silence, that's OK, too. Judging from Kelly and Maria's study habits, the best way to study is the way that works for you. With their very different approaches, both of them do extremely well in school, and both finish their work in about the same amount of time as well.

One curious fact about the two friends: Despite their opposing studying styles, they have almost identical ambitions. Both are planning to go to law school Kelly with the idea of becoming a human rights attorney and Maria hoping to become a public defender. But will they be study buddies? Not a chancel

ю	Read the article. Find the word	s in <i>italics</i> in the article. Then	match each word with its meaning.	
	1. clutter	a. focus attention on somet	hing	
	2. sitting	b. exactly the same		
	3. concentrate	c. period of activity without a	a break	
	4. approach	d. way of doing something		
	5. identical	e. objects in a state of disord	der	
(,,	Complete the summary with in Kelly and Maria are friends who		e one or two words in each blank. out they can't study	
	together because they have	Kelly likes a	that is	
	very quiet, and she can	for a long time. Mari	ia prefers a space that is	
	, and she likes t			
	studying is tha			
	for example. Despite their different habits, Kelly and Maria are both			
	students, and it is interesting th	at the friends have	plans for the future.	

GROUP WORK Whose studying style is closest to yours, Kelly's or Maria's? Why?

Units 7-8 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

I can	Very well	ОК	A little
Describe environmental problems (Ex. 1)			
Discuss solutions to problems (Ex. 2)			
Understand examples of personal qualities (Ex. 3)			
Discuss personal preferences (Ex. 4)			

1

SPEAKING Environmental issues

PAIR WORK Choose a probable cause for each of the problems and discuss possible solutions.



PROBLEM

- Forests are being destroyed.
- The quality of the air is being lowered.
- Marine life is being affected.
- Water is being contaminated.
- Landfills are overflowing.
- City streets are being damaged.

CAUSE

- · the lack of recycling
- · heavy traffic
- rapid urbanization
- climate changes
- fumes from cars
- factory waste

- A: Forests are being destroyed because of rapid urbanization.
- B: We need plans for urban development that don't . . .

DISCUSSION Tricky social situations

A PAIR WORK Read these problems that friends sometimes have with each other. Suggest solutions for each problem.

Your friend is always criticizing you and your other friends. Your best friend never pays for his or her share at group dinners. A friend is having a party and you weren't invited.

B GROUP WORK Agree on the best solution for each problem. "The best thing to do is to talk to your friend and say how you feel."

useful expressions

One thing to do is to . . . Another way to help is to . . . The best thing to do is . . .

LISTENING | got it!

- ullet ullet Listen to people talk about recent events and activities in their lives. What events and activities are they talking about? What two qualities does each person's behavior demonstrate? Complete the chart.
 - a. money management

c. creativity

e. perseverance

b. competitiveness

d. concern for others

f. self-confidence

	Event or activity	Qualities	
1. Kate		е,	
2. Mark			
3. Iris			

PAIR WORK Describe a time when you demonstrated one of the qualities above. Can your partner guess the quality?

QUESTIONNAIRE Learning styles

- A PAIR WORK Interview your partner. Circle the ways your partner prefers to improve his or her English.
 - When you don't understand a word, would you prefer to . . . ?

a. look it up in a dictionary

b. try to guess the meaning

If you don't understand what someone says, would you rather . . . ?

a. ask the person to repeat it

or

b. pretend you understand

When you hear a new word in English, would you rather...?

a. write it down

b. try to remember it

When you make a mistake in English, would you prefer someone to . . . ?

a. correct it immediately

b. ignore it

When you meet a native English speaker, would you prefer to . . . ?

a. try to talk to the person

b. listen while he or she speaks

When you have to contact someone in English, would you rather . . . ?

a. call him or her on the phone

"I'd prefer to try to guess the meaning of a new word."

- **B GROUP WORK** Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each option in part A. Are there better options for each situation?
 - A: When I try to guess the meaning of a new word, it takes less time, so I can read faster.
 - **B:** Yes, but if you look it up, you learn a new word.
 - C: I think the best way to deal with a new word is to try and guess the meaning, and then check if it makes sense.



WHAT'S NEXT?

Getting things done

- Discuss professional services
- ▶ Make suggestions

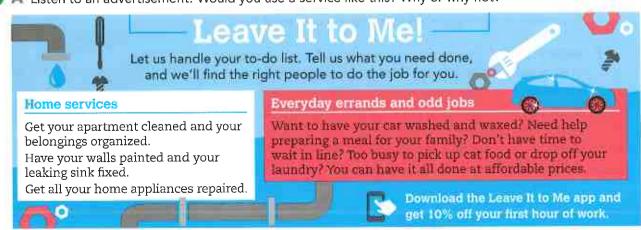
SNAPSHOT



Why would someone need these services? Have you ever used any of them? How do you choose a company or person to do any of these services?

PERSPECTIVES Get the job done!

A Listen to an advertisement. Would you use a service like this? Why or why not?



B What services do you need or want? What questions would you ask before hiring a person to do these services for you?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Get or have something done

Use get or have, the object, and the past participle of the verb to describe a service performed for you by someone else.

Do something yourself

I clean my house every week.

He is painting his bedroom.

They fixed the sink.

Did you paint your bedroom?

Where can I wash my car?

Get/have something done for you

I get my house cleaned (by a cleaner) every week.

He is having his bedroom painted.

They got the sink fixed.

Did you have your bedroom painted?

Where can I have my car washed?

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 140

 $oldsymbol{\mathbb{A}}$ Complete the sentences to express that the services are performed by someone else.

- 1. My parents didn't paint their house before they moved in. They had it painted . (have)
- 2. I didn't repair my own laptop. I ______ at the electronics store. (get)
- **3.** Many people don't wash their cars. They _______. (have)
- 4. My bedroom carpet is very dirty, but I'm not cleaning it. I'm ______ next week. (get)
- **5.** My brother isn't repairing his bike. He ______. (have)
- **B** PAIR WORK Take turns describing the services in the pictures.









PAIR WORK Tell your partner about three things you've had done for you recently. Ask and answer questions for more information.

PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

- 🕟 🗛 Listen and practice. Notice that when the object becomes a pronoun (sentence B), it is no longer stressed.
 - A: Where can I have my car washed?
- A: Where can I get my nails done?
- B: You can have it washed at the auto shop.

 B: You can get them done at a salon.
- **B GROUP WORK** Ask questions about three things you want to have done. Pay attention to sentence stress. Other students give answers.

[&]quot;Jessica is having her nails done."

5 DISCUSSION On demand

PAIR WORK Are these services available in your city? For those

that aren't, do you think they would be a good idea?

Can you . . . ?

get groceries delivered to your door
have a five-star meal cooked at your home by a chef
have your home organized by a professional organizer
have your portrait drawn by a street artist
get your pet vaccinated at home
get your blood pressure checked at a pharmacy
have your shoes shined on the street
get your car washed for less than \$15
have a suit made in under 24 hours
have pizza delivered after midnight

A: Can you get groceries delivered to your door?

B: Sure! You can have it done by . . .



[6] INTERCHANGE 9 Absolutely not!

What do parents and teenagers usually argue about? Go to Interchange 9 on page 123.

WORD POWER Three-word phrasal verbs

A Match each phrasal verb in these sentences with its meaning.

Then compare with a partner.

Phrasal verbs

- 1. Polly has **broken up with** her boyfriend.
- Lin came up with a great idea for a new app for meeting people.
- My brother is looking forward to getting married. He really loves his fiancée.
- **4.** I can't **keep up with** all the new technology. It changes so fast.
- Luisa doesn't get along with her roommate. They argue over every little thing.
- **6.** My doctor says I'm overweight. I should **cut down on** sweets. _____
- 7. I can't **put up with** the noise on my street! I'll have to move.
- **8.** I don't like to **take care of** my own finances. I have an accountant manage my money.

Meanings

- a. reduce the quantity of
- b. end a romantic relationship with
- c. continue to learn about
- d. tolerate
- e. be excited for
- f. have a good relationship with
- g. be responsible for
- h. think of; develop

PAIR WORK Take turns making sentences with each phrasal verb in part A.

CONVERSATION I can't carry a tune.

A Listen and practice.

Emma: Are you going to Lina's party tonight?

Alice: No, I don't think so. I don't really feel up to it.

Emma: You haven't been going out much since you broke up with Carter.

Alice: I guess not. He's friends with all my friends, you know.

Emma: You need to meet new people. Have you thought about joining a running club? You love running.

Alice: I've thought about that, but they meet at 6 A.M. I'm not really a morning person.

Emma: Well . . . maybe you could take part in our singing group. I've made a lot of good friends there.

Alice: Um, I don't think so. Remember when we did karaoke? I can't carry a tune to save my life!

Emma: Yeah, I remember. . . . Well, I guess you'd better get used to waking up early. Just think of all the cute guys who go running in the park in the morning.



B CLASS ACTIVITY What are some other good ways to meet people?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Making suggestions

With modals + verbs

Maybe you could take part in a singing group.

With gerunds

What about joining a running club?

Have you thought about asking your friends to

introduce you around?

With negative questions

Why don't you do some volunteer work?

With infinitives

One option is to join a club.

It might be a good idea to check out the cultural events at the university.

GRAMMAR PLUS and place 14th

A Circle the correct answers. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: What can I do to keep up with all my assignments in college?
 - B: Maybe / One option you could stay in on weeknights.
- 2. A: What can I do to get in shape?
 - B: Why don't you / Have you thought about working out at the gym?
- 3. A: How can I save money?
 - B: Why don't you / What about come up with a budget?
- 4. A: How can I learn to dance?
 - B: Have you thought about / It might be a good idea to take dance classes.
- 5. A: How can I build self-confidence?
 - B: What about / Why don't you participating in more social activities?
- **GROUP WORK** Take turns asking and answering the questions in part A. Answer with your own suggestions.

LISTENING Resolutions

🔼 🔈 Listen to a conversation between three friends on New Year's Eve. Check 🗸 the resolution each person makes and write their friends' suggestions.

	New Year's resolutions		Suggestions
1. Edward	get a better job	start a project	
2. Selena	have more energy	go back to school	
3. Hannah	fix her relationship problems	spend more time on social media	

B GROUP WORK Decide on your own suggestion for each person. Then vote as a class on the best suggestions.

SPEAKING Breaking a habit

GROUP WORK Make three suggestions for how to break each of these bad habits. Then share your ideas with the class. Which ideas are the most creative?

How can I stop . . . ?



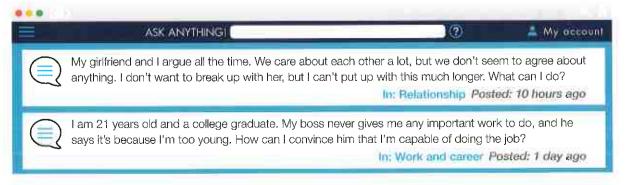




"One thing you could do is carry a bottle of water with you all the time. And why don't you . . . ?"

WRITING Sound advice

A Read the posts from a question and answer website. Choose one of the posts below and make a list of suggestions. Then write a reply.



B GROUP WORK Take turns reading your advice. Whose advice do you think will work? Why?

A Scan the article. Who is the article about? What idea did he have?

Improving the world







[1] Jack Andraka was 15 when he came up with an idea for a new way to test for pancreatic cancer. When Andraka was 14, a family friend died of the disease, and this affected him deeply. This kind of cancer is particularly lethal because there is no test you can have done to find it in the early stages. By the time standard tests determine you have the disease, it is often too late. Realizing that this was the case, Andraka decided to try to develop a test that might catch problems at the earliest stages.

[2] The road ahead looked difficult for Andraka. He was still a high school student, and he wanted to create something that no one else had done. But Andraka read endlessly about the disease, wrote a proposal for his idea, and sent it out to 200 cancer researchers. Only one professor, Dr. Anirban Maitra, responded positively. Dr. Maitra agreed to work with Andraka on his idea, giving him guidance and access to a laboratory.

[3] The next big reward for Andraka's perseverance was winning the grand prize at the Intel International Science and Engineering Fair. This prestigious award is given to young innovators who have

> developed a world-changing idea. Developing the test is likely to take many years, but Andraka hopes the test will eventually improve people's lives - and maybe save them.

[4] Jack Andraka is not alone as a young innovator. After all, there were 1,499 other contestants

for the Intel award, and all of them had ground-breaking ideas. For Andraka, having a family that loves science and encourages creative thinking gave him an advantage. But the key for Andraka is that reading, research, and discovery are just plain fun - and the chance to improve the world around him in the process makes it even better.

В	Read the article. Write the number of each paragraph next to its summary sentence.
	One doctor's help makes the unlikely become possible.
	A personal experience creates a groundbreaking idea.
	Family support and a passion for discovery can lead to great things.
	Although he won a big prize, there's plenty of work ahead.

- Choose the correct answers.
 - 1. Pancreatic cancer is so serious because there is no treatment / it is hard to diagnose early.
 - 2. Andraka was inspired to find a solution by an upsetting experience / reading about a disease.
 - 3. The response to Andraka's proposal was fairly positive / largely negative.
 - 4. Andraka's test for pancreatic cancer is in use now / being developed now.
 - 5. Andraka's family helped him by encouraging him / working on his idea.
- **D GROUP WORK** If you could come up with an idea to help humanity, what would it be?

SNAPSHOT



Have any of these fads ever been popular in your country?

Can you think of other fads from the past or present?

Is there anything popular right now that you think is just a fad?

PERSPECTIVES Quiz show

A Read the questions from a quiz show. Do you know the answers? Check (✔) your guesses.

When was the first home vide	eo game console released?	
a. in 1967	b. in 1972	c. in 1981
2. How long has Washington, D	.C., been the capital of the United	States?
a. since 1776	b. since 1783	c. since 1800
3. How long were the Beatles to a. for 8 years	gether? b. for 10 years	C. for 15 years
4. When did World War I take a. during the 1910s	b. during the 1920s	c. during the 1940s

Now listen and check your answers. What information is the most surprising?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

	_	
	D _A -f	í
9	Me I	Š

erring to time in the past

A point or period of time in the past

When was the first video game console released? During the 1970s. In the 1970s. Over 40 years ago. How long were the Beatles together? From 1960 to 1970. For 10 years.

A period of time that continues into the present

How long has Washington, D.C. been the capital of the United States?

Since 1800. For about 220 years.

GRAMMAR PLUS see mage 141

A Complete the paragraphs with the **bold** words from the grammar box. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. The Olympic Games originated in ancient Greece about 3,000 years _____. ___ the eighth century BCE _____ the fourth century CE, the games took place in Olympia. The first modern Olympics were held _____ 1896 in Athens, with male participants from 14 nations. Women have only competed in the Olympics _____1900.
- 2. Although no one knows for sure, it's likely that the Chinese invented ice cream about 4,000 years ___. It was probably brought to Italy ___ the thirteenth century by Marco Polo, but the ice cream we enjoy today was probably created in Italy _____ the seventeenth century and spread through Europe _____ the eighteenth century. ____ that time, different flavors have been created, but vanilla is still America's favorite.





- **GROUP WORK** Write two true and two false statements about world events. Then take turns reading your statements. Others give correct information for the false statements.
 - A: The United Nations was founded about 50 years ago.
 - B: That's false. It was founded in 1945, after the end of World War II.

PRONUNCIATION Syllable stress

Listen and practice. Notice which syllable has the main stress in these fourand five-syllable words. Notice the secondary stress.

9	0	•	0
id	en	tif	fy

			•
disa	ad	van	tage

•	0	•	•	
		:	 :	

	catastrophe
1	consideration

conversation revolution

appreciate

assassination

🕟 📙 Listen to the words in the box. Which syllable has the main stress? Write the words in the correct column in part A.

WORD POWER Historic events

A Match each word with the best example. Then compare with a partner.

1.	achievement
2.	assassination

- 3. discovery
- 4. election
- 5. epidemic ____
- 6. natural disaster
- 7. revolution
- 8. terrorist act

- a. In 2015, an earthquake hit Nepal and killed over 8,000 people.
- b. Fidel Castro established a communist government in Cuba in 1959.
- c. In 2015, scientists confirmed the existence of water on Mars.
- d. Since the early 1980s, HIV has infected more than 70 million people.
- e. Barack Obama became the first African American US president in 2009.
- f. John Lennon was killed by a fan on December 8, 1980.
- g. In 2003, scientists completed the Human Genome Project.
- **h.** Two men invaded and killed the journalists of the *Charlie Hebdo* newspaper in Paris in 2015.
- **B** PAIR WORK Give another example for each kind of event in part A.

"The invention of writing was a very important achievement for humankind."

6 DISCUSSION A major impact

GROUP WORK Choose two or three historic events (an election, an epidemic, an achievement, etc.) that had an impact on your country. Discuss the questions.

What happened (or what was achieved)? When did it happen?

What was the immediate effect on your country? the world? your family?

Did it change things permanently? How is life different now?

"The recent economic crisis has had a major impact on our lives . . . "

WRITING A biography

Find information about a person who has had a major influence on the world or your country. Answer these questions. Then write a biography.

What is this person famous for?

How and when did he or she become famous?

What are his or her important achievements?

MALALA YOUSAFZAI

Activist for Women and Children's Rights

Malala was born in 1997 in Pakistan where she spoke out for girls' right to education. When she was 15, she suffered an attack on her life and almost died. She was flown to England, recovered from her injuries, and continued her fight. When she was 17, she became the youngest winner of the Nobel Peace Prize . . .



B PAIR WORK Exchange biographies. What additional details can your partner add?

INTERCHANGE 10 History buff

Find out how good you are at history.

Student A, go to Interchange 10A on page 124; Student B, go to Interchange 10B on page 126.

ONVERSATION I'll be their first guest!

Listen and practice.

Hazel: Would you want to spend a vacation in space?

Oscar: No, thanks. I'd rather go to the beach. Would you?

Hazel: Of course I would! I'd stay longer, too. Do you think we'll have colonies on Mars in 20 or 30 years?

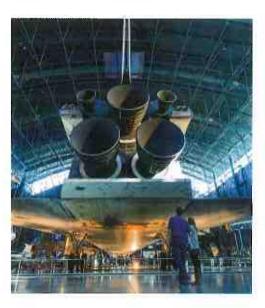
Oscar: I don't know. Considering how fast we're destroying Earth, we won't be living here for much

longer.

Hazel: I'm serious! You know, international space agencies are investing a lot of money in research to develop more powerful rockets.

Oscar: Well, I guess that within 50 years, we'll have set up a research center on Mars, but not a colony.

Hazel: You're probably right. But I'm sure some company will have built a resort on the moon by then. And I'll be their first quest!



B CLASS ACTIVITY Do you think Hazel and Oscar's predictions are correct?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Predicting the future with will

Use will to predict future events or situations.

We will spend vacations in space. We won't have colonies on Mars.

Use future continuous to predict ongoing actions.

Human beings will be living on another planet. We won't be living here.

Use future perfect to predict actions that will be completed by a certain time.

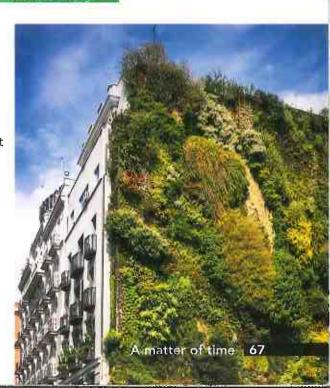
Within 50 years, we will have set up a research center on Mars.

By 2050, a company will have built a resort on the moon.

GRAMMAR PLUS and plage 141

Д	(M	omplete these predictions with the correct verb forms. ore than one answer is possible.) Then compare with partner.
	1.	Sometime in the future, buildings (have) green walls and roof gardens to help retain carbon dioxide.
	2.	By the end of this century, half of the Amazon rain fores (be) deforested.
	3.	In 50 years, the world population (reach) 9 billion.
	4.	In the future, most of the population (live) in cities.
	5.	Soon, computers (become) more intelligent than humans.
	6.	In less than 20 years, scientists(discover) a cure for cancer, but we

(suffer) from new diseases.



- **GROUP WORK** Discuss each prediction in part A. Do you agree or disagree?
 - **A:** Sometime in the future, buildings will have green walls and roof gardens to help retain carbon dioxide. What do you think?
 - **B:** Oh, I totally agree. That's also a good way to keep the temperature inside cooler in the summer.
 - C: I'm not so sure that will happen. Green walls are pretty expensive to maintain.
- C CLASS ACTIVITY Discuss these questions.
 - 1. What three recently developed technologies will have the greatest impact on our lives in the next 20 years?
 - 2. What are the three most important changes that will have occurred on Earth by 2050?
 - 3. Which three jobs will people not be doing in 50 years? Why?

11 LISTENING Not in our lifetime

Listen to people discuss changes that will affect these topics in the future. Write down two changes for each topic.

	Future changes
1. crime	
2. space travel	
3. environment	
4. energy	
5. money	

B PAIR WORK Which changes do you agree will happen? Which ones would most affect you? Why?

DISCUSSION Time will tell.

A Think about your dreams and goals for the future. Write down an idea for each category.

an activity you'd like to try an experience you'd like to have a skill you'd like to develop a city where you would like to live

a job you'd like to have

a person you'd like to meet

B GROUP WORK Talk about these questions. Use your ideas from part A.

What do you think you'll be doing a year from now? five years from now?

Do you think you'll still be living in the same city? same country? What are three things you think you'll have accomplished within the next 10 years?

What are three things you won't have done within the next 10 years?

In what ways do you think you'll have changed by the time you retire?

A: A year from now, I think I'll have a new hobby, like slacklining.

B: I'd like to try that, but I'm more interested in traveling.

C: Me too! I think in five years, I'll be living abroad.





A Skim the article. Which sentence below could be another title for the article? Why? Professionals Who Can Change the Future An Unhappy View of the Future Good Guesses About the Future



- \square Read the article. Check (\checkmark) the predictions futurists made about the year 2050.
 - 1. Computers will be as powerful as they are today.
 - 2. Tiny computers will help people with physical problems.
 - 3. Travel will be faster than it is now.
 - 4. People will be able to explore places without leaving home.
 - 5. People will need less food.
 - 6. Many people will live together in eco-friendly buildings.
 - 7. People will not get sick anymore.
 - People will fight with each other over food and water.
- GROUP WORK Do you agree that the predictions in the article are likely? What changes would you like to see in the future?

Units 9-10 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

I can	Very well	ОК	A little
Discuss professional services (Ex. 1)			
Give advice and make suggestions (Ex. 2)			
Understand and discuss historic events (Ex. 3)			
Make predictions about the future (Ex. 4)	П		

11 DISCUSSION Professional services

GROUP WORK Take turns asking questions about these services. When someone answers "yes," find out why and when the service was performed, and who performed it.

have a piece of clothing tailor-made for you get your carpet cleaned have your home redecorated or remodeled get something translated have your cell phone repaired

A: Have any of you ever had a piece of clothing tailor-made for you?

B: Yes, I have. I had a suit tailor-made when I got married.

C: Really? Why didn't you buy one in a store? . . .



ROLE PLAY Advice needed

Student A: Choose one of these problems. Decide on the details of the problem. Then tell your partner about it and get some advice.

I want to move to my own place, but I don't make enough money.

I never have time to do any of the things I enjoy doing. I'm always busy with . . .

I have a job interview in English, and I'm feeling nervous about it.

My in-laws are coming to dinner, but I can't cook at all.

Student B: Your partner tells you about a problem.

Ask questions about it.

Then consider the situation and offer

two pieces of advice.

Change roles and choose another situation.

useful expressions

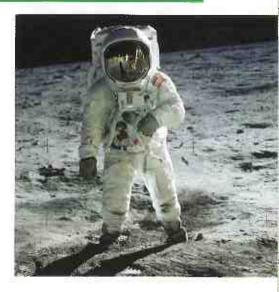
Have you thought about . . . ?

It might be a good idea to . . .

Maybe you could . . . ? Why don't you . . . ?

LISTENING Important world events

- Listen to people discuss the questions. Write the correct answers.
 - 1. What date did people first land on the moon?
 - 2. When was the first World Cup? __
 - **3.** When was the Chernobyl disaster?
 - **4.** How long did it take to build the *Titanic*?
 - 5. When did the Indian Ocean tsunami occur?
 - B PAIR WORK Which of these events would you like to learn more about? Why?
 - GROUP WORK Write three more questions about historic events. (Make sure you know the answers.) Then take turns asking your questions. Who has the most correct answers?



SURVEY What will happen?

A CLASS ACTIVITY How many of your classmates will have done these things in the next 5 years? Write down the number of "yes" and "no" answers. When someone answers "yes," ask follow-up questions.

	"Yes" answers	"No" answers
1. get a (new) job		
2. develop a new skill		
3. move to a new home		
4. learn another language		
5. travel abroad		
6. get a college or master's degree		

- A: Five years from now, will you have moved to a new home?
- **B:** Yes, I think I will be living in a new place.
- A: Where do you think you'll be living?
- B: I'd like to live in a bigger place. Our current apartment is too small.
- A: Really? Would you rather live in a house or an apartment?
- **B GROUP WORK** Tally the results of the survey as a group. Then take turns telling the class any additional information you found out.

"Most people think they will have moved to a new home. Only three people think they'll be living at their current address. One person thinks she'll be living in a big house in the suburbs, and . . . "



WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

SNAPSHOT

UNFORGETTABLE FIRSTS

Some moments that matter

- first sleepover
- losing your first tooth
- first day at school
- first pet
- first swim in the ocean
- first crush

- first trip with friends
- high school graduation
- first paycheck
- getting your driver's license
- entering college
- first heartbreak



How did you feel when you had these experiences?

What other first experiences have you had that you will never forget?

CONVERSATION I was so immature.

A Listen and practice.

Jim: Congratulations, graduate! What's next for my favorite nephew?

Luke: I'm your only nephew, Uncle Jim!

Jim: But you're still my favorite! Anyway, what are your plans?

Luke: I'm looking for a job, so I can make some money before I go to college.

Jim: Ah! After I graduated, I went to Alaska to work as a fisherman. It was a tough job, but it helped me grow up.

Luke: How do you mean?

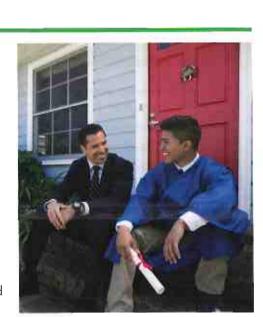
Jim: Until I started working, I'd never had any important responsibilities. I was so immature. But once I moved away from home, I learned to take care of myself.

Luke: So you became independent.

Jim: Yeah, but not for very long, actually. After two months, I moved back home . . . and got a job at your grandfather's store.

Luke: Hey, I think my search just ended. I'm going to talk to Grandpa about a job.

Listen to the rest of the conversation. What was an important turning point for Jim? for Luke?



a sleepover

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Time clauses

Before I graduated from high school, I had never worked.

After I graduated, I went to Alaska to work as a fisherman.

Once I moved away from home, I learned to take care of myself.

The moment I moved away from home, I felt like a different person.

As soon as I got my own bank account, I started to be more responsible.

Until I moved to Alaska, I had never been away from home.

By the time I went to college, I had already lived away from home.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page

A Match the clauses in column A with appropriate information in column B. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. Until I went to college,
- 2. Before I became a parent,
- 3. Once I joined a sports team, _____
- 4. The moment I had a car accident, _____
- 5. As soon as I got my first paycheck, _____
- 6. By the time I was 15,
- 7. After I began a relationship, _____
- 8. Until I left home,

- a. Hearned the importance of teamwork.
- **b.** I understood why you shouldn't text and drive.
- c. I realized that I wasn't a child anymore.
- d. I learned that love can hurt!
- e. I had never taken school very seriously.
- f. I began to understand the value of money.
- g. I had never cooked a real meal.
- h. I had never worried about the future.
- Which of the clauses in column A can you relate to your life? Add your own information to those clauses. Then compare with a partner.

"Until I left home, I had never bought my own clothes."

- GROUP WORK What do you think people learn from these events? Write sentences using time clauses in the present. Then take turns reading and talking about them.
 - 1. moving in with roommates
 - 2. buying your own home
 - 3. having a pet
 - 4. getting a credit card
 - 5. getting your first paycheck
 - 6. getting your driver's license
 - 7. getting married
 - 8. becoming a parent
 - "Once you move in with roommates; you have to learn to work together."



A LISTENING Turning points

Listen to three people describe important events in their lives. Complete the chart.

	Turning point	How it affected him or her
1. Nari		
2. Anthony		
3. Karina		

- Listen again. What do these three people have in common?
 - PAIR WORK What has been a turning point in your life? Discuss with a partner.

SPEAKING Milestones

A PAIR WORK In your country, how old are people when these things typically happen?

get a driver's license
move out of their parents' home

graduate from college get married

retire

GROUP WORK Choose three milestones. What do you think life is like before and after each one? Join another pair and discuss.

"Before you get a job, you depend on your family for everything. The moment you get your first paycheck, you . . ."



WORD POWER Personal characteristics

A PAIR WORK At what age do you think people possess these traits? Check (✓) one or more ages for each trait.

	In their teens	In their 20s	In their 30s	In their 40s	In their 60s
ambitious					
argumentative					
carefree					
dependable					
naive					
pragmatic					
rebellious					
sophisticated					
wise					

B GROUP WORK Use the words in part A to describe people you know. "My mother is dependable. I can always count on her when I need help."

PERSPECTIVES That was a mistake.

Listen to two recent college graduates talk about their regrets.

Do you have any similar regrets?



If I'd listened to my professors, I would have taken some additional courses. If I'd been more ambitious in college, I could have learned to speak another language.

> I shouldn't have taken out a student loan to pay for college.



If I hadn't wasted so much money last year, I would have saved enough to start graduate school.

B GROUP WORK What advice would you give to these recent grads?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Expressing regret and describing hypothetical situations

Use should have + the past participle to express regret.

I should have done an internship while I was in college.

I shouldn't have taken out a student loan.

Use would have + the past participle to express probable outcomes in hypothetical situations.

Use could have + the past participle to express possible outcomes.

If I'd listened to my professors, I would have taken additional courses.

If I hadn't been so irresponsible, I could have gotten better grades.

GRAMMAR PLUS SEL F ag 14

- A For each statement, write a sentence expressing regret. Then talk with a partner about which statements are true for you.
 - 1. I didn't play any sports when I was younger.
 - 2. I was carefree with money when I was a teenager.
 - 3. I didn't stay in touch with my school friends after I graduated.
 - 4. I was naive when I first started working.
 - 5. I didn't study hard in school.

B Match the clauses in column A with appropriate information in column B.

Α	
1.	If I hadn't gone to so many parties,

2. If I'd been more careful, _____

3. If I'd been wiser, _____4. If I'd listened to my financial advisor, _____

5. If I hadn't been so rebellious, _____

В

- a. I would have been nicer to my parents.
- **b.** I wouldn't have borrowed money for a new car.
- c. I would have done better in school.
- **d.** I wouldn't have lost all my documents.
- e. I wouldn't have argued with my boss.
- 🕻 Add your own information to the clauses in column A. Then compare in groups.

I should have played sports

when I was a teenager.

INTERCHANGE 11 Good choices, bad choices

Imagine if things were different. Go to Interchange 11 on page 125.

10 PRONUNCIATION Reduction of have and been

Listen and practice. Notice how have and been are reduced in these sentences.

I should **have been** less selfish when I was younger.

If I'd been more ambitious, I could have gotten a promotion.

B PAIR WORK Complete these sentences and practice them. Pay attention to the reduced forms of **have** and **been**.

I should have been . . . when I was younger.

If I'd been more . . ., I could have . . .

I should have been . . . in school.

If I'd been less . . ., I would have . . .

11 LISTENING My biggest regret

Listen to a conversation between three friends about regrets. Write two regrets that each person has.

	Regrets
1. Ariana	
2. Ray	
3. Kira	

- Listen again. Which friend feels differently about regrets? How does he or she feel?
 - PAIR WORK Do you agree with the attitude about regrets in part B? Why or why not?

WRITING An apology

A Think about something you regret doing that you want to apologize for. Consider the questions below. Then write a message of apology.

What did you do? What were the consequences?

Is there any way you can undo those consequences?



A Skim the advice column. What is Paul's problem? What does he ask Stella?

	STELLA'S	ANSWE	S			D Q		
	HOME ABOUT	ADVICE	ASK STELLA	COMMUNITY	FOLLOW	STELLA		
	Dear Stella, I have a problem, and I'm not sure what to do about it. I was studying with my friend Karl, and he let me use his lapto for a minute to look so He had been busy typi so I opened the docum when I was done. But s the wrong button, and document. All of his wi It was a total accident, "Sorry," just so he wou But he got really angry me of doing it on purp is acting really cold tow can tell he's still angry, my fault, but I still feel apologize anyway just feel better? Paul in Philadelphia	pomething up. Ing an essay, Inent again Isomehow I hit I deleted the I deleted the I did say, I din't yell at me. I and accused I ose. Now Karl I vards me, and I I treally wasn't I bad. Should I I to make him	Dear Paul, When you've de hurt a friend, ever can be really un obviously feel be Karl's essay, and for it to happen sounds like Karl you'd apologize had offered to have smoothed of sabotage, he apologize again What should you an apology is not anything wrong apology has to effective. Second like a friend bed a form of emotion believe your apologize your apology is not a form of emotion believe your apologicussion is ofto think you need badly you feel, blame him, and still won't forgive such a great friends.	one something that een by accident, it comfortable. You ad about deleting I you didn't mean. Unfortunately, it has a pretty short furthings over. After be wever, I understand under the sincere and heart it wouldn't mean verbe sincere and heart id, if someone stops cause you made a misonal blackmail – they ology anyway. Third, en more effective that to sit down with Kalavoid making excuse get on with your fried e you after that, may and after all.	se. Sure, it and if you work, it miseing accuse why you do yourself if feel you cory much. If feel to be treating you stake – who probably a two-way an an apolarl, tell him is or trying endship. If you he's not yo	f ught ed lidn't did An ou sich is won't yogy. how to he		
3	Read the advice column. Find the words in <i>italics</i> in the text. Match the definitions to the words. 1. short fuse a. act of demanding something from someone in exchange for a benefit 2. sabotage b. quick or violent temper 3. heartfelt c. decide not to be angry at someone 4. blackmail d. act of destroying something to get an advantage 5. forgive e. very sincere							
Ç (Check (🗸) True, False, oi	Not given for ea	ch statement.					
3 2 5	 The two boys are best Paul mistakenly delet Karl reacted very calr Stella thinks Paul cou Stella believes that b Stella thinks even an Karl's behavior shows Stella says that Paul a 	ted some of Karl's mly at the time. Id have improved oth friends need to insincere apology at that he is not ver	work. the situation at the spologize. is helpful. ry forgiving.	True	False	Not given		

PAIR WORK Do you agree with the advice Stella gave Paul? If not, what advice would you give him?

- Give personal views and describe qualities for success
- ▶ Give reasons

SNAPSHOT

HOW SOME MAJOR COMPANIES GOT THEIR NAMES

Nike The company got its name from the ancient Greek goddess of victory.



Google Google comes from googal, which is the math term for the number 1 followed by 100 zeros.

Facebook The name was taken from the term for a list with students' names and photos found at American universities.

Samsung In Korean, sam means "three" and sung means "star," so the name means "three stars." It represents the idea that the company should be everlasting, like stars in the sky.

Skype The original concept for the name was Sky-Peer-to-Peer, which became Skyper, and then Skype.



Häagen-Dazs The name of the American ice cream brand was invented to sound Danish and traditional, but it has no meaning in any language.

Pepsi The soft drink got its name from the word dyspepsia, which means indigestion, because its inventor believed it helped treat an upset stomach.



Which of these brands exist in your country? Are they successful? Do you know the origin of the names of other companies or brands?

PERSPECTIVES Business strategies

Listen to the survey. What makes a business successful? Number the choices from 1 (most important) to 3 (least important).

What makes a business successful?

- In order for an app to succeed, it has to be:
 - easy to use

- Inexpensive
- original

- To attract talented professionals, a company should offer: competitive salaries
 - flexible working schedules
- a good career plan
- For a small company to be profitable, it should have:
 - a good marketing plan
- a great product
- excellent professionals

- 4. To build a successful start-up, it's important to:
 - have a great product
- have a clear business plan
- control costs
- 5. In order to finance a new business, it's a good idea to:
 - try a crowd-funding platform
- get a bank loan
- borrow money from family
- For people to work from home, they need to have:
 - self-discipline

- a separate working space
- a daily schedule
- **B** GROUP WORK Compare your answers. Do you agree on the most important success factors?

PRONUNCIATION Reduced words

- A Listen and practice. Notice how certain words are reduced in conversation. In order for a hotel to be successful, it needs to have friendly service and reasonable prices. Før øn entrepreneur tø be successful, they have tø invest in ø good marketing campaign.
 - B PAIR WORK Take turns reading the sentences in Exercise 2 aloud. Use your first choice to complete each sentence. Pay attention to reduced words.

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Describing purpose Infinitive clauses To attract talented professionals, a company should offer competitive salaries. (In order) to finance a new business, it's a good idea to get a bank loan. Infinitive clauses with for For a small company to be profitable, it should have a good marketing plan. (In order) for an app to succeed, it has to be easy to use.

A Match each goal with a suggestion. Then practice the sentences with a partner. (More than one answer is possible.)

Goals

- 1. To run a popular convenience store, _
- 2. In order to run a profitable clothing boutique,
- 3. To establish a successful language school,
- **4.** In order for a health club to succeed,
- **5.** For a restaurant to attract more customers,
- **B** PAIR WORK Give another suggestion for each goal in part A.
- GROUP WORK What kind of business would you like to have? Talk to your classmates and get suggestions on how to make your business successful.
 - A: I think I'd like to set up a coffee shop.
 - B: For a coffee shop to succeed, it's important to choose a good location.
 - C: And in order to attract customers, you have to offer some tasty desserts, too.

Suggestions

- a. it has to offer friendly service.
- **b.** it's a good idea to know the competition.
- c. you need to choose the right location.
- d. you have to train your staff well.
- e. it's important to understand your customers' needs.



WORD POWER Qualities for success

A PAIR WORK What qualities are important for success? Rank them from 1 to 5

Transcription Telephone	0)	6.	AWA .
A personal trainer	A politician	A news website	
athletic	clever	affordable	
passionate	charming	attractive	
industrious	knowledgeable	entertaining	
muscular muscular	persuasive	informative	2
experienced	tough	well written	



B GROUP WORK Add one more adjective to each list.

"For a personal trainer to be successful, he or she needs to be . . ."

ROLE PLAY The job is yours!

Student A:

Interview two people for one of these jobs. What qualities do they need for success? Decide who is more qualified for the job.

Students B and C:

You are applying for the same job. What are your best qualities? Convince the interviewer that you are more qualified for the job.

sales associate at a trendy boutique

public relations specialist

tour guide

- A: To be a good sales associate, you need to be persuasive. Are you?
- **B:** Oh, yes. I'm very good at convincing people. And I'm industrious.
- C: I've worked at other stores before, so I'm experienced. And I'm fashionable, too.

CONVERSATION It's always packed.

A Listen and practice.

Kyle: What's your favorite club, Lori?

Lori: The Firefly. They have fabulous music, and it's never crowded, so it's easy to get in.

Kyle: That's funny. There's always a long wait outside my favorite club. I like it because it's always packed.

Lori: Why do you think it's so popular?

Kyle: Well, it just opened a few months ago, everything is brand-new and modern, and lots of trendy people go there. It's called the Dizzy Lizard.

Lori: Oh, right! I hear the reason people go there is just to be seen.

Kyle: Exactly! Do you want to go some night?

Lori: I thought you'd never ask!

B CLASS ACTIVITY What are some popular places in your city? Do you ever go to any of these places? Why or why not?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

-	-	
-4		a
ш	₽	а
- 4		7

Giving reasons

The Firefly is famous for its fantastic music.

I like the Dizzy Lizard because it's always packed.

Since it's always so packed, there's a long wait outside the club.

It's popular because of the trendy people.

Due to the crowds, the Dizzy Lizard is difficult to get into.

The reason (that/why) people go there is just to be seen.

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 143

Complete the paragraphs with because, since, because, due to, and the reason. Then compare with a period (More than one answer is possible.) 1. Apple is considered one of the most innovative companies in the world. The company is known introducing original products, also admired its ability to preduce the market will need in the future. Apple has been so successful is that it has beconsymbol of status and high-end technology. 2. McDonald's is popular worldwide customers know what to expect when they eat the world with the same. The company is also known the same.	bu dict me Ma	t it's what a a re. ac is
its ability to adapt to different markets the company adjusts some items to local tastes,		u can
eat a pineapple pie in Thailand or a shrimp burg Japan.	-	
PAIR WORK Match the situations with the reasons Then give two more reasons for each success.	foi	success. Compare ideas with a partner.
Situation	Re	eason
1. FedEx is famous	a.	because of its ability to attract new customers.
2. Samsung is a successful company	b.	for its fast and reliable service.
3. Online stores are becoming very popular		for its innovative athletic wear.
4. Netflix has expanded quickly		for its wide selection of products.
5. People buy Levi's jeans		since prices are generally more affordable.
6. Many people like Amazon		due to its high investment in research.
7. Nike is known	-	since it's advertised worldwide.
8. People everywhere drink Coca-Cola	h.	because they appeal to people of different ages and lifestyles.
A: FedEx is famous for its fast and reliable service.		
B: I think another reason why FedEx is famous is		

GROUP WORK What are some successful companies in your country?

Why are they successful?

LISTENING What have you got to lose?

A Listen to radio commercials for three different businesses. What are two special features of each place?

	Fitness For Life	Beauty To Go	Like-New Repair Services
1.			
2.			

- DE Listen again. Complete the slogan for each business.
 - 1. "Fitness For Life, where
 - 2. "Beauty To Go. When and where you want, beauty_____."
 - 3. "Like-New Repair Services. Don't let your phone _____."
 - **GROUP WORK** Which business do you think would be the most successful in your city? Why?

10 INTERCHANGE 12 Advertising taglines

How well do you know the slogans companies use for their products? Go to Interchange 12 on page 127.

11 DISCUSSION Ads and commercials

GROUP WORK Discuss these questions.

When you watch TV, do you pay attention to the commercials? Why or why not?

When you're online, do you click on any ads that you see?

What ads attract your attention?

What are some effective commercials or ads you remember?

What made them effective?

What is the funniest commercial you've ever seen? the worst? the most shocking?

Which celebrities have been in commercials or ads?

Has this affected your opinion of the product?

Has it affected your opinion of the celebrity?

WRITING A commercial

Choose one of your favorite products. Read the questions and make notes about the best way to sell it. Then write a one-minute TV or online commercial.

What's good or unique about the product? Why would someone want to buy or use it? Can you think of a clever name or slogan?

GROUP WORK Take turns presenting your commercials. What is good about each one? Can you give any suggestions to improve them?

Do you want a car that is dependable and economical? Do you need more space for your family? The new Genius SUV has it all. Genius offers the latest safety technologies and ...





A Scan the article. What does "sticky" mean in the advertising world?

BRAIN INVASI

Advertisements: They're all over our social media pages; they arrive as text messages; they interrupt our favorite shows; and they bombard us in the streets. In order to survive the constant barrage of advertising, we learn to ignore most of what we see. But what is it that makes certain ads "sticky"? In other words, why do we remember some ads while managing to completely forget others?

According to advertising experts, an ad needs three key elements to make it unforgettable. In the first place, it needs to be clear and simple. TV commercials usually last about 30 seconds, so a complicated or confusing presentation will not do the job. For an ad to be "sticky," it has to be obvious enough that we can pick up the message in a split second.

More importantly, ads should appeal to our senses and emotions. When we really feel something, it tends to stick in our brains much longer than if we simply understand it. This is the reason why so much advertising depends on emotional music and images of family, romance, or success that relate directly to our own hopes and dreams.

One more element necessary to make an ad successful is surprise. When we see something out of the ordinary, it makes us take notice whether we want to or not. A talking animal, a beautifully dressed model diving into a swimming pool, a car

zooming through an ever-changing landscape - these are the types of things that grab our attention.

But do "sticky" ads actually make us buy the products? That's another story. Sometimes the most memorable ads make people laugh or mention them to their friends, but they don't actually convince people to buy anything. Still, after watching a "sticky" ad, we usually remember the name of the company it promotes. And in a world with so many brands and products, that is almost as important as sales.



В	Read the article. Check (\checkmark) the three things that make an ad memorable.						
	an uncomplicated concept		a sensual or emotional appeal				
	a puzzle or mystery		a familiar scene or situation				
	a short time span		something unexpected or strange				

Read these descriptions of two ads. According to the article, are these "sticky" ads? Explain why.

A family of four is having breakfast together, and they're all looking tired. The father pours each of them a glass of "Super Juice," and as they all drink it, they are transformed into costumed superheroes. As they leave, the mother says, "Ready to save the world, team?"

A young couple are in a luxurious car; the woman is driving. They are driving quickly through lush countryside. They glance at other and smile. A voiceover says: "The Eternity: a car that feels like home."

PAIR WORK Describe an advertisement that has stuck in your mind. Why do you think you remember it? Has it influenced what you buy in any way?

Units 11–12 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

l can	Very well	ОК	A little
Describe important life events and their consequences (Ex. 1)			
Describe and explain regrets about the past (Ex. 2)			
Describe hypothetical situations in the past (Ex. 2)			
Understand and give reasons for success (Ex. 3, 4)			
Give reasons (Ex. 4)			

SPEAKING Important events

A What are two important events for each of these age groups? Complete the chart.

Children	Teenagers	People in their 20s	People in their 40s

- **B GROUP WORK** Talk about the events. Why is each event important? What do people learn from each event?
 - A: Learning to drive is an important event for teenagers.
 - B: Why is learning to drive an important milestone?
 - A: Once they learn to drive, . . .

useful expressions

after	once
as soon as	before
the moment	until
by the time	

GAME Regrets

- A Write three regrets you have about the past.
 - I wish I hadn't argued with my boss.
- **B GROUP WORK** What if the situations were different? Take turns. One student expresses a regret. The next student adds a hypothetical result, and so on, for as long as you can.
 - A: I shouldn't have argued with my boss.
 - **B:** If you hadn't argued with your boss, she wouldn't have fired you.
 - C: If she hadn't fired you, you could have . . .



LISTENING The road to success

Listen to a career coach discuss some factors necessary to work for yourself. Write down the three factors that you hear.

	Factor	Why is it important?
1.		
2.		
3.		

- 🔘 🖺 Listen again. In your own words, write why each factor is important.
 - PAIR WORK If you could work for yourself, what would you do? Why?

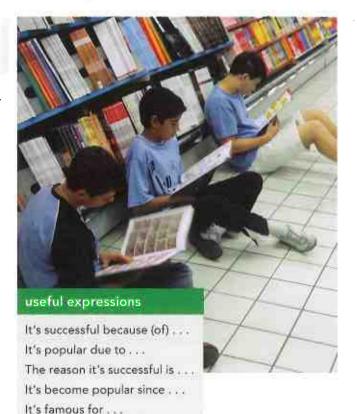
DISCUSSION Effective strategies

- A PAIR WORK Choose two businesses and discuss what they need to be successful. Then write three sentences describing the most important factors.
 - a convenience store a gourmet supermarket
- a dance club a beach hotel
- a juice bar a used clothing store

In order for a convenience store to be successful, it has to be open 24 hours.

- **GROUP WORK** Join another pair. Share your ideas. Do they agree?
 - A: We think in order for a convenience store to be successful, it has to be open 24 hours.
 - B: Really? But many convenience stores close at midnight.
- GROUP WORK Now choose a popular business that you know about. What are the reasons for its success?

"I think Mark's Comics is successful because their comic books are affordable and they don't mind if people hang out there and read."



WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

13 What might have been Suggest explanations and reasons Give opinions and advice about past situations

SNAPSHOT

PET PEEVES

T DRIVES ME CRAZY WHEN

- people push too close to me on the subway.
- someone borrows my things without asking.
- people keep interrupting me.
- a couple starts arguing in public.
- people don't pay for their share at a restaurant.
- a friend criticizes another friend.
- someone is late for no reason.
- people chew with their mouths open.
- a friend constantly asks me for favors.
- someone cuts in line in front of me.



Which of the pet peeves do you have about people you know? Which one is the worst? What other pet peeves do you have? Do you do any of these things? When and why?

CONVERSATION He might have gone out.

A Listen and practice.

Chris: Didn't Tyler ask us to come at 7:30?

Ava: Yes, and it's almost 8:00 now. Why don't we ring the bell again? He must not have heard it.

Chris: That's impossible. We've been ringing the bell for more than 10 minutes.

Ava: He must have fallen asleep. You know Tyler has been working so hard on his new project.

Chris: Or he might have forgotten about our dinner and just gone out.

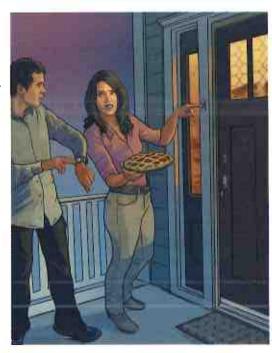
Ava: No, he couldn't have forgotten. I just talked to him about it this morning. Besides, the lights are on. He could have had an emergency. He might not have had time to call us.

Chris: Yeah, maybe. I'll call him and find out.

Ava: And?

Chris: He's not answering. . . . Now I'm getting worried.

Listen to the rest of the conversation. What happened?



PRONUNCIATION Reduction in past modals

Listen and practice. Notice how have is reduced in these sentences.

He may **háve** fallen asleep.

She might **have** gone out.

B Listen and practice. Notice that not is not contracted or reduced in these sentences. He might **not** have had time to call us. She must **not** have heard the doorbell.

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Past modals for degrees of certainty It's almost certain. It's possible. He must have fallen asleep. He may/might have gone out. He must not have heard the doorbell. He may/might not have had time to call us. It's not possible. He could have had an emergency. He couldn't have forgotten about it.

A Read each situation and choose the best explanation. Then practice with a partner. (Pay attention to the reduced forms in past modals.)

Situation

- 1. Marcia seems very relaxed.
- 2. Claire is packing her things.
- Jeff got a bad grade on his test.
- **4.** Rodrigo looks very tired today. _____
- 5. Julia didn't talk to her friends in the cafeteria. ______e. He might not have studied very hard.
- **6.** Ahmed got a call and looked worried.

Explanation

GRAMMAR PLUS see page 144

- a. She must have gotten fired.
- **b.** He might have worked late last night.
- c. She may have just come back from vacation.
- d. He couldn't have heard good news.
- f. She must not have seen them.
- PAIR WORK Suggest different explanations for each situation in part A.

LISTENING What could have happened?

A GROUP WORK Look at the pictures. What do you think happened? Offer an explanation for each event.





🚺 🖟 Listen to the explanations for the two events in part A and take notes. What did happen? How similar were your explanations?

6 SPEAKING What's your guess?

- A PAIR WORK What do you think were the reasons for these events? Suggest two different explanations for each.
 - 1. The bride didn't show up for her wedding. She sent a bunch of flowers to the groom with a note: "Thank you."
 - **2.** A man arrived at the airport with a suitcase and saw his brother. He grabbed a cab and went back home.
 - **3.** It was a hot, sunny day. A man arrived home. He was soaking wet.
- **GROUP WORK** Each student thinks of two situations like the ones in part A. Others suggest explanations.
 - **A:** A man went around town and bought all the copies of the latest issue of a specific magazine.
 - B: Well, the magazine might have had an article about him.



INTERCHANGE 13 Think of the possibilities!

What's your best explanation for some unusual events? Go to Interchange 13 on page 128.

8 PERSPECTIVES I'm going nuts!

Listen to a person complaining about her family members. Check (🗸) the response you think is best for each problem.

Last night, my sister borrowed my car without asking. She did call me a couple of times, but I was in a meeting and couldn't answer the phone. We had a big fight, and now we're not speaking. She shouldn't have used your car without permission, no matter what, You could have been more understanding. After all, she tried to call you first. My nephew is so inconsiderate. He called me at 3:00 in the morning to talk about his problems with his best friend, and I had to get up very early to work. I was really mad. You could have told him that you had to get up early the Your nephew is always doing that. You shouldn't have answered his call. My brother came over for the weekend with his wife and three kids. They made such a mess of the apartment! I'll never invite them over again. I would have asked them to help clean up the place. I wouldn't have invited them to spend the weekend. Having overnight guests can be really stressful.

B Do you talk about pet peeves with your friends? Do they give you advice?

	-
A	-
и	

Past modals for judgments and suggestions

Judging past actions

You should have asked your sister to help. He shouldn't have used your car.

Suggesting alternative past actions

You could have told her that you had to get up early. I would have asked them to help clean up the place. I wouldn't have invited them to spend the weekend.

A Complete the conversations using past modals with the verbs given. Then practice with a partner.

1.	A:		e to help her choose a gift for her			
		husband, and I er	nded up spending all day at the mall.			
	B:	You	(make up) an excuse not to help			
			(not ask) for such a personal			
		favor in the first p	lace.			
2.	A:	I lent my sister-in- never paid it back	law some money a year ago, and she «.			
	B:	She	(pay) it back already! Well,			
			_ (not lend) money to her anyway.			
		I never lend mone				
3.	A:	Austin invited me out to dinner, but when the check				
		came, he said he was broke!				
	B:	l	_ (not pay) for him. I			
			(tell) him to wash the dishes. He			
			(not invite) you if he didn't have			
		enough money.	•			
4.	A:	I can't believe my	cousin came over and stayed until			
		1:00 in the morning!				
	B:	He	(not stay) so late. You			
			(start) yawning. Maybe he would			



PAIR WORK Think of another suggestion or comment for each situation above.

WORD POWER Reactions

have gotten the hint!

A Helena's boyfriend forgot their anniversary. How does she react? Match each reaction with the best example.

Reaction Example 1. an assumption _____ a. "Sometimes you're so selfish." 2. a criticism _____ b. "You could take me out to dinner." 3. a demand c. "You must have wanted to break up with me." 4. an excuse d. "I bet you went out with your friends." 5. a prediction e. "Now you'll have to get me a really nice gift." 6. a suggestion ____ f. "I know you've been busy lately. It just slipped your mind." 7. a suspicion _____ g. "If you ever forget another important date, I'll never talk to you again." 8. a warning _____ h. "You'll probably forget my birthday, too!"

GROUP WORK Imagine that someone was late for class, or choose another situation. Give an example of each reaction in the list above.

111 LISTENING What should they have done?

O A	Listen to descriptions of three situations. What would have been the situation? Check (🗸) the best suggestion.	best thing to do in each
	Simon should have kept the ring for himself.He should have called the police.He did the right thing.	
	Jana shouldn't have mentioned her last job at all in her applies She should have been honest in her application and admitted She did the right thing.	
	3. Martin should have reported what his boss did as soon as he He should have withdrawn more money and blamed it on his He did the right thing.	

B PAIR WORK What would you have done in each situation in part A?

12 DISCUSSION How would you have reacted?

GROUP WORK Read each situation. Say what the person could have or should have done, and what you would have done.

- It was my friend's birthday, and he had invited a few close friends out to celebrate. I forgot all about it, so I called him the next day and pretended I'd had to take my mother to the hospital. —Warren
- My sister got a new haircut, and I thought it looked a little dated. I didn't want to hurt her feelings, so I told her I liked it. —Sonia
- I didn't have any money to buy my cousin a birthday present, so I gave her something I had received previously as a gift. My brother told my cousin about my regifting, and now she's mad at me. 9—Chase
- Went to my in-laws' house for dinner last night. My husband thinks his mother is a great cook, but the food was awful! I didn't know what else to do, so I ate it. —Fay
- A: Warren should have told his friend the truth.
- B: I agree. He could have taken his friend out to make up for it.
- C: I think I would have . . .

RITING A tricky problem

A Think of a complicated situation from your own experience. Write a paragraph describing the situation, but don't explain how you resolved it.

I have a close friend who doesn't get along with my other friends. He's a nice guy; friendly and funny, but every time we all go out, he makes a fuss over how much everyone should pay. Last week, my friends were going to dinner, and he wanted to come along. I didn't want to hurt his feelings...

- **PAIR WORK** Exchange papers. Write a short paragraph about how you would have resolved your partner's situation.
- PAIR WORK Read your partner's resolution to your situation. Tell your partner how you resolved it. Whose resolution was better?

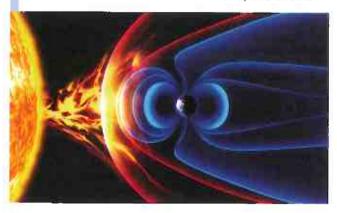
A Skim the article. What do the two unexplained events have in common?

Messages from Outer Space, or a Leaking Pipe?

Home | Sciencenews | Technology | Articles | Blog | Community

Even though we know so much about the world around us, unexplained events still take place. Read about these two events. What do you think may have happened?

Since 2008, people around the world have been reporting a mysterious sound that seems to come from the sky. Some people say it sounds like trumpets playing. Others say it is like sound effects from sci-fi movies. The phenomenon has caused both fear and fascination, and many people have been looking for explanations. One popular idea is that the sound is an announcement of the end of the world, and another



suggests that it's the sound of spaceships. But there may be a more scientific explanation. It involves flares from the sun and energy from the center of the earth. Which explanation do you think might be right?



Of course, there are some strange events that still baffle both the general public and experts. Take the high-pitched noise that has been driving people crazy in Forest Grove, Oregon. To some people, it sounds like a giant flute being played very badly, and to others, it sounds like a train slowing down or truck brakes squealing. The sound is coming from under the street, but gas, water, and sewer inspectors have said there is nothing wrong down there. One resident was so sure it was a serious gas leak that he was ready to flee. However, experts say that a leak would make a different sound, and people would definitely smell gas. How would you explain this mysterious and annoying event?

Fact Opinion

- Read the article. Then answer the questions.
 - 1. To what two things have people compared the first sound?
 - 2. What non-scientific explanations have been offered?
 - 3. What sort of sound are people in Forest Grove hearing?
 - 4. What explanation has been proven untrue?
 - 5. If there had been a gas leak, what would be different?
- Which of these statements are facts? Which are opinions? Check (✓) Fact or Opinion.
 - 1. Science has not explained everything that happens.
 - 2. Some sounds mean the end of the world is coming.
 - 3. The first sound is caused by energy from planets.
 - 4. The sound in Forest Grove is very annoying.
 - 5. The Forest Grove sound comes from under the street.
 - 6. Gas lines and other systems in Forest Grove have no problems.
 - 7. No local problems can explain the Forest Grove noise.
- PAIR WORK Which explanations of the events in the article do you think are the most likely? least likely? Can you think of any other possible explanations?

Creative careers

- Describe steps in a process
- Discuss jobs in entertainment and the media

SNAPSHOT

MILESTONES IN CONTEMPORARY CINEMATOGRAPHY

THE FIRST

movie with Dolby Digital sound. - Batman Returns (1992)

computer-animated feature film. - Toy Story (1995)

major movie shot entirely in digital video. - Star Wars Episode II: Attack of the Clones (2002)

computer-animated motion-captured film. - The Polar Express (2004)

movie to be released simultaneously in theaters, on DVD, and on the Internet. - EMR (2005)

film directed by a woman to win the Oscar for Best Picture. - The Hurt Locker (2008)

full-length feature film shot on a phone. - Olive (2011)

major movie filmed at 48 frames per second, instead of the standard 24 fps. - The Hobbit: An Unexpected Journey (2012)

Have you seen any of these movies? Did you enjoy them? What's the most popular movie playing right now? Have you seen it? Do you plan to? Are there many movies made in your country? Name a few of your favorites.

CONVERSATION I have more control.

🚺 🗛 Listen and practice.

Clara: Thanks for coming to the film festival! Directing this film was amazing, and I'm happy to answer your questions about it.

Diego: Yes, hi. What is it like to direct an animated movie? Is it different from live action?

Clara: Well, for one thing, I have a lot more control. There are no actors to argue with me!

Diego: I guess not! But how do you direct cartoon characters?

Clara: Well, after a screenplay is chosen, many drawings of the characters are presented to me . . .

Diego: And you get to choose which ones to use?

Clara: Even better: I can change them if I want. The characters have to be drawn just right - like I see them in my mind.

Diego: So you decide a lot about the characters early on.

Clara: Definitely. By the time the voice actors are picked, the characters feel like old friends!





Listen to the rest of the conversation. Who helps Clara choose the voice actors?

he passive to describe pro	cess
Is/are + past participle	Modal + be + past participle
A screenplay is chosen.	The characters have to be drawn just right.
Many drawings are presented.	The drawings might be changed 10 times.
	GRAMMAR PLUS met page 145
	be how an animated movie is made. First, complete sive. Then compare with a partner.
Storyboard and animation	steps
	(draw) by story artists. For some ryboards might (draw).
2. Next, the storyboards ne	ed to(place) in order.
After the storyboarding p directors must	orocess (complete), technical (hire).
4. Then, the scenes and cha the computer by the tech	racters have to (create) on inical directors.
	(add) to the scenes by animators.
In addition, the scenes characters.	(populate) with background
Voice-over steps	
	' voices (record). Sometimes d that they (not replace).
7. Later, professional actors voices. For some movies,(use)	(hire) to record the character studios hire famous actors so their names can as a marketing tool.
	(rehearse) and the same line
	(choose) for the final movie.





LISTENING It was too predictable.

"After all that, the movie is sent to theaters."

Listen to Casey and Grant talk about things that often happen in movies. Number the parts of a movie in the order they are mentioned.

	Movie example
A new plan is put into action.	Luke planned to destroy the Death Star.
A problem is presented.	
Something bad happens, and all hope is lost.	
The main character is introduced.	
The bad guy is defeated.	

💽 🖹 Listen again. For each movie part above, write an example from the movies the friends discuss.

SPEAKING Tutorials

A PAIR WORK What do you think is required to make a short movie? Put the pictures in order and describe the steps. More than one order may be possible. Use the vocabulary to help you.













A: Making a short movie requires many steps. First, the script needs to be written.

B: Right! And after that, a location must be found.

A: I agree. Then . . .

B PAIR WORK Choose one of these topics. Come up with as many steps as you can.

preparing a school party organizing a trip abroad

organizing a fundraising campaign planning a wedding

developing a mobile app putting on a school musical

GROUP WORK Share your information from part B with another pair.

WRITING Describing a process

Write about one of the topics from Exercise 5, part B or use your own idea. Describe the different steps in the process.

> Developing a mobile app requires a lot of work. First, the objective of the app must be defined. Then, a prototype should be built. After that, the prototype can be tested by potential users or friends. Then a developer needs to be hired, and ...



B PAIR WORK Read your partner's description. Can you think of any more steps?

NORD POWER Creative jobs

A What kind of jobs are these? Complete the chart with the compound nouns. (More than one answer is possible.)

band manager game animator songwriter talk show host club DJ storyboard artist quality assurance analyst gameplay programmer editorial director news photographer stunt person web content manager

Film/TV jobs	Publishing jobs	Gaming jobs	Music jobs

	,,		

B GROUP WORK Choose four jobs from part A. Describe each job.

"A band manager negotiates contracts for artists and helps promote their careers."

PERSPECTIVES Career questions

💽 🛝 Listen to the career questions that people have. How would you answer them?



I have a degree in journalism, and I'm an amateur photographer. I'm considering a career as a news photographer who covers conflicts around the world. Do you think that's too dangerous?

Videographers like me, who shoot weddings and other social events, often work evenings and weekends. I want to have a nine-to-five job, so I'm looking for a job with a major studio. Is that a good move?





I love movies and I love action, so I'm thinking of becoming a stunt person you know, the person who takes the place of an actor in dangerous scenes. What do you think?

A talk show host, who interviews artists, politicians, and celebrities, gets to meet lots of people. I love to meet new people. Do you think that would be a good job for me?



PAIR WORK Which of these careers do you think would be the most interesting? Why?

PRONUNCIATION Review of stress in compound nouns

Listen and practice. Notice how the first word in a compound noun usually receives greater stress.

band manager talk show host game animator news photographer stunt person

Practice the sentences in Exercise 8. Pay attention to the word stress in the compound nouns.

0	Defining and non-defining relative clauses					
	Defining relative clauses are used to identify p	eople.				
	I want to become a photographer. I want to cover conflicts.	er. I want to become a photographer who/that covers conflicts.				
	Non-defining relative clauses give further info	Non-defining relative clauses give further information about people.				
	the state of the s		ohers, who shoot ents, work evening	And the state of t		
	non-defining clauses. Then compare with a	partner.	$=\infty$	***		
	Do these sentences contain defining (D) or (ND) clauses? Write D or ND. Add commas non-defining clauses. Then compare with a	to the	=	***		
	 The art editor who creates the look of a should make it attractive. A game programmer is the person who computer code that runs and controls a The extras are the people who appear in 	writes the game.	14			
	background scenes4. The producer who is responsible for the big boss in an animation studio	budget is the	The same of the sa			
	Add the non-defining relative clauses in particle sentences.	rentheses to				

1.	A game designer works closely with the programmers. (who creates new games)
2.	A lead vocalist is the main voice on stage. (who may also be a songwriter)
3.	A news reporter collects information about news and events. (who should be impartial)
4.	A photo editor selects the photos that go into magazines. (who is responsible for the quality and content of images)

Write three sentences with relative clauses about jobs you know. Compare with a partner.

INTERCHANGE 14 Celebrities

Can you guess who the celebrities are? Go to Interchange 14 on page 129.



...

A Scan the title and first paragraph of the article. Who do you think it was written for? Why?

Home | News | Entertainment | Articles | Blog | Community

THE TRUTH ABOUT BEING A FILM EXT

When people discover that I work as a

film and TV extra, they always ask me the same questions: Is it easy to get work? Isn't it boring? Do you get to meet famous actors? Does it pay well? My answers are pretty standard as well: yes, sometimes, once in a while, and . . . kind of. The life of an extra is both more

interesting and more boring than you might imagine.

Extras, who play the people in crowds, on streets, or in the background of indoor scenes, can come from all walks of life. Unlike many extras, I'm a trained actor. I do get real speaking roles, but work can be hard to come by if you're not an in-demand star. I'm registered with an agency that deals exclusively with extras, so I get calls all the time. The agency explains who I'll be - someone in a crowd, a member of a jury, a clerk - and tells me where to go. Call time is usually bright and early, so I try to get to bed at a reasonable hour.

Sometimes being an extra is a "hurry up and wait" job. In my first extra role, I was one of a group of office workers who come out of a building just as a car explodes in the street. We waited for hours for the scene to be shot, and then went in and out of the building about fifty times, trying to act horrified by a nonexistent explosion. Then we had lunch, changed clothes, and spent the afternoon as customers in a department store.

It may sound like I don't enjoy the work, but I do. Being part of the background in a convincing way is challenging, and being on a film or TV set is always fascinating. A lot of famous actors don't even notice the extras, but the ones who do make the job a lot of fun for everyone. As for the money, it's nothing compared to what the big actors make, but it pretty much pays the bills. And, as a bonus, I've beaten my high scores on all my phone games, thanks to all the time I spend sitting around, waiting for something to happen.



- B Read the article. Underline a sentence in the article that answers each question below.
 - 1. What training has the writer had?
 - 2. How does she get work as an extra?
 - 3. What was her first role as an extra?
 - 4. What unexpected advantage of the work does she mention?
- 🕻 Find words or phrases in the article that mean the same as the following.
 - 1. have very different jobs and life experiences
 - 2. wanted or needed by many people
 - 3. first thing in the morning
 - 4. imaginary
- 5. difficult
- PAIR WORK What job would you most like to have on a film or TV show? Why?

Units 13-14 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (✓) the boxes.

1 can	Very well	OK	A little
Speculate about past events (Ex. 1)			
Give opinions and advice about past events (Ex. 2)			
Describe steps in processes (Ex. 3)			
Use relative clauses to give information about people (Ex. 4)			

LISTENING Something's not right.

A Listen to three conversations. Where do you think each conversation takes place? What do you think might have happened? Take notes.

	Location	What might've happened	What could've happened next
1.			
2.			
3.			

PAIR WORK Decide what happened with your partner. Then decide what could have happened next in each situation. Complete the chart.

DISCUSSION Bad moves

- A PAIR WORK React to these situations. First, make a judgment or suggestion using a past modal. Then add another statement using the reaction in parentheses.
 - 1. Samantha didn't get to work on time today. (a suggestion)
 - Pat took a vacation, and now he doesn't have money for rent. (a warning)
 - Jim didn't study for the test, but he got all the answers correct. (a suspicion)
 - 4. Nick was driving too fast, and the police stopped him. (an excuse)
 - 5. Carl spent the night playing his favorite game online. (a prediction)

"Samantha should have left home earlier. She could have set an alarm."

B GROUP WORK Join another pair and compare your comments. Who has the most interesting reaction to each situation?



GAME Step by step

A GROUP WORK Look at these topics. Set a time limit. Talk with your group and write as many steps as you can between the first and last parts of each process.



	1
organizing a party	
First, the guests have to be chosen.	

First, the bread has to be sliced.

Finally, the sandwich is served on a plate.

Finally, the guests are welcomed.

B CLASS ACTIVITY Compare your answers. Which group has the most steps?

SPEAKING Your social circle

	IS a		who
	My teacher, who	. is	
	My mother is someone that		
	My neighbor, who	, always	
	My best friend is a person who		•
1	Complete these statements about peop	le in your life.	

- B PAIR WORK Compare your answers. Ask two follow-up questions about each of your partner's statements.
 - A: My best friend is a person who always listens to me when I have a problem.
 - **B:** Does she give you good advice?



WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

A law must be passed

- Make recommendations about social issues
- Give opinions about laws and social issues

SNAPSHOT

1. A law prohibits unmarried women from parachuting on Sunday in Florida. 2. In Switzerland, it's illegal to keep only one pet if it's a social animal. 3. It's against the law to feed the pigeons in Venice. 4. In some states in Australia, you may not leave the car keys inside an unattended vehicle. 5. In the U.K., women aren't allowed to eat chocolate on public transportation. 6. Businesses must provide rails for tying up horses in Canada. 7. In the state of Washington, it's illegal to pretend your parents are rich. 8. In Finland, taxi drivers must pay royalties if they play music for customers.

Adapted from www.dumblaws.com

Which of these laws would you like to have in your city or country? Why? Can you think of reasons for these laws?

Do you know of any other unusual laws?

PERSPECTIVES Rules and regulations

 \bigcirc A Listen to people make recommendations at a city council meeting. Would you agree with these proposals if they were made in your community? Check (\checkmark) your opinion.

BRISTOL			
MEETING NOTES	STRONGLY AGREE	SOMEWHAT AGREE	DISAGREE
 Clubs should be required to install soundproof walls. Riding a bike on the sidewalk mustn't be permitted. Pet owners shouldn't be allowed to walk dogs without a leash. Something has got to be done about littering. A law must be passed to control the pollution from vehicles. Children ought to be required to wear a helmet when riding a bi Schools should only be permitted to serve organic food. 	ike.		

B GROUP WORK Compare your opinions. Try to get your classmates to agree with you.

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Giving recommendations and opinions

When you think something is a good idea

Clubs should be required to install soundproof walls.

Pet owners shouldn't be allowed to walk dogs without a leash.

People ought (not) to be required to wear a helmet when riding a bike.

When you think something is absolutely necessary

A law must be passed to control the pollution from vehicles.

Riding a bike on the sidewalk mustn't be permitted.

A rule has to be made to require bike lanes on city streets.

Something has got to be done to stop littering.



Complete the sent	ences positively or n	egatively. Choose a	a modal that shows	how strongly you feel
about these issues.				

- 1. Young people _____ (permit) to vote before age 21.
- 2. Laws _____ (pass) to protect people's online privacy.
- 3. People _____ (allow) to use offensive language in social media.
- 4. Governments _____ (require) to provide health care to all their citizens.
- **5.** Children (allow) to play violent video games.
- **6.** Scientists _____ (permit) to use animals for research.
- 7. The sale of fur products (prohibit).
- 8. Something _____ (do) to stop the pollution of rivers and oceans.

GROUP WORK Compare your statements. Do you agree with one another? If not, why not?

- A: Young people shouldn't be permitted to vote before age 21. They're not prepared.
- **B:** You may have a point, but they could be better informed.
- C: Maybe, but in my opinion, . . .

DISCUSSION Controversial topics

A GROUP WORK Think of three reasons for, and three reasons against, each idea below. Then discuss your views. As a group, form an opinion about each idea.

requiring employers to offer workers 12 weeks of parental leave

paying teachers less when their students fail banning private cars from the downtown areas of big cities

- A: What do you think about requiring employers to offer workers 12 weeks of parental leave?
- B: I think it's a good idea. Parents should be allowed to stay with their babies . . .

offering a different opinion

That sounds interesting, but I think . . .

That's not a bad idea. On the other hand, I feel . . .

You may have a point. However, I think . . .

B CLASS ACTIVITY Share your group's opinions and reasons. Who has the most persuasive reasons for and against each position?

5 LISTENING Something has got to be done!

AB	Listen to people discuss annoying situations. Number the situations they describe in the correct order from 1 to 3. (There are three extra situations.) using the phone on speaker in public places using a cell phone on a plane posting selfies on social media taking selfies in crowded places not having signs about cell phones in public places texting in a movie theater Listen again. What solutions do they suggest for each situation? 1.	
	2	
	3.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

GROUP WORK Do you agree or disagree with the solutions? What do you think should be done about each problem?

6 INTERCHANGE 15 On the wrong side of the law

What if you could make the rules? Go to Interchange 15 on page 130.

WORD POWER Community issues

A PAIR WORK Which of these issues are

	olems in your community? Check (🗸) copriate boxes.
appi	opilate boxes.
	bullying
	homelessness
	inadequate health care
	irregular trash collection
	lack of affordable child care
	noise pollution
	overcrowded classrooms
	stray animals
	street crime
	vandalism

B GROUP WORK Join another pair of students. Which three problems concern your group the most? What should or can be done about them?



CONVERSATION It's not easy, is it?

A Listen and practice.

Mara: I need to find a new apartment. I can't stand the noise from all those bars and clubs in my neighborhood anymore.

Ted: I can imagine. But it isn't easy to find a nice apartment in a quiet neighborhood, is it?

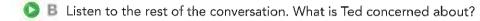
Mara: No, it's not! And my rent is already sky-high. I'm having a hard time making ends meet.

Ted: I know. Everything is really expensive nowadays, isn't it?

Mara: It sure is. You know, I'm looking for child care for my baby, but I just can't find anything affordable in the area.

Ted: The city should provide free child care to working families.

Mara: I think so, too. But unfortunately, the mayor doesn't.





GRAMMAR FOCUS

Tag questions for opinions

Affirmative statement + negative tag

Everything is really expensive nowadays, isn't it? There are lots of clubs around, aren't there? Mara likes her apartment, doesn't she? The city should provide child care, shouldn't it?

Negative statement + affirmative tag

It isn't easy to find a nice apartment, is it? There aren't any noise pollution laws, are there? Her neighbors don't make much noise, do they? You can't sleep because of the noise, can you?

- A Add tag questions to these statements. Then compare with a partner.
 - 1. There aren't enough shelters for the homeless, ...?
 - 2. Vandalism makes a neighborhood very unpleasant, . . . ?
 - 3. In overcrowded classrooms, teachers can't give enough attention to students, . . . ?
 - 4. School bullying is a major problem in most schools, . . . ?
- 5. There are more street crimes in big cities than in small towns, . . . ?
- 6. The government should provide adequate health care to everyone, . . . ?
- 7. The city doesn't do enough for stray animals...?
- 8. It isn't easy to save money these days, . . . ?
- What are some things you feel strongly about in your school or city? Write six statements with tag questions.
- GROUP WORK Take turns reading your statements. Other students respond by giving their opinions.
 - A: Public transportation isn't adequate, is it?
 - **B:** No, it isn't. There should be more bus lines.
 - C: On the other hand, the subway system is very efficient . . .

PRONUNCIATION Intonation in tag questions

Listen and practice. Use falling intonation in tag questions when you are giving an opinion and expect the other person to agree.

Noise pollution is a serious problem in our city, isn't it?

Governments should offer child care to all working families, shouldn't they?

PAIR WORK Take turns reading the statements with tag questions from Exercise 9, part A. Give your own opinions when responding.

11 LISTENING Let's face it.

A Listen to people give their opinions about issues in the news. What issues are they talking about?

**********	Issue	Opinions for	Opinions against
1.			
2.			

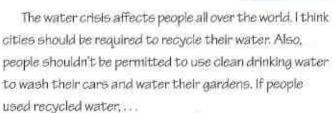
- Listen again. Write the different opinions that you hear.
 - GROUP WORK What do you think about the issues in part A? Give your own opinions.

WRITING There ought to be a law.

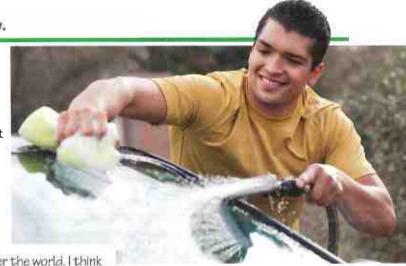
A Think about a local problem that needs to be solved, and write a persuasive essay suggesting a new law to help solve it. Be creative! Use these questions to help you.

What is the problem, and how does it affect your community?

What can be done to help solve it? Who might disagree with you, and how will you convince him or her that your law is a good idea?



GROUP WORK Try to convince your classmates to pass your new law. Then vote on it.





A Look at the title and the picture. What do you think plagiarism is?

HOME

NEWS

ARTICLES

COMMUNITY

THAT'S PLAGIARISM

POSTED AUGUST 21

If a teacher or your boss called you aside and said that he or she suspected you of plagiarism, how would you react? You'd probably be honestly confused. Nowadays, there are so many sources of information available that you can copy from with a single click. Many people don't even realize that they're committing plagiarism. Whether it's intentional or not, using someone else's information is stealing, and stealing is definitely a big deal.

The confusion about ownership comes from the fact that articles. photos, blogs, and social media posts are so easy to access - and just as easy to copy. When you see the same article on various websites, it's fairly natural to assume that it's public property. If a resource like Wikipedia offers material that can be critiqued and changed by its readers. that must be free for the taking, right? But that simply is not the case. Everything that has been written, drawn, photographed,



or recorded, and released to the public, belongs to someone. Even your friends' comments on your social media page belong to them, not to you.

To avoid plagiarism, here are a few basic points to keep in mind. When writing a paper, if you get ideas or wording from someone else's writing, you must include the name of the writer or the source. If you find a few articles that you want to use, and you

think taking a few points from each article and combining them makes the content yours, it's just not the case. This kind of "masked" plagiarism is very easy to spot, and it will get you into trouble. But really, just asking yourself a simple question should be enough: "Are all of these words my own?" If the answer is yes, you're in the clear.

In the end, the best approach is to write down the source for any material you quote from directly, and to assume that if it's public, it isn't yours. Plagiarism is a serious problem and can have serious consequences - even if it's totally accidental. Besides, putting ideas into your own words can make you a better writer, and a better thinker as well.

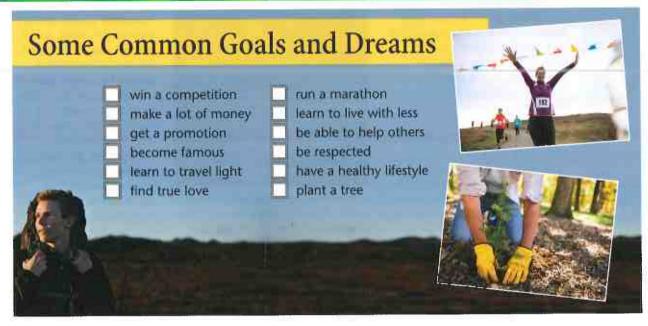
- Read the article. Then answer the questions.
 - 1. What is the author's main purpose in writing the piece?
 - 2. Why might it be easy to commit plagiarism by accident?
 - 3. What question should you ask yourself in order to avoid plagiarism?
- ${\mathbb C}$ Look at the following situations. Do you think they are describing plagiarism or not? If they are, do you think it was accidental or intentional?
 - 1. Stacy copied a paragraph from a travel website and pasted it into her essay about Aruba. She put it into quotation marks and included the name and link for the website.
 - 2. John works for a bank. He copied a paragraph from a website. He changed some words and rearranged some of the sentences. He did not indicate where it came from. He used it in a brochure for the bank.
 - 3. Julie read an article online and later wrote her own essay about the same subject. Some of her wording was exactly the same as the online article.
 - 4. Mitch borrowed a friend's essay to get some ideas for his own. Their teacher said that their essays were almost identical.
- PAIR WORK Sometimes famous musicians get in trouble for putting out songs that sound like someone else's. Do you think this is plagiarism? What, if anything, should be done about it?

Reaching your goals



- Discuss personal accomplishments
- ▶ Discuss goals

SNAPSHOT



Which of these goals do you think are the most difficult to achieve? Which are the easiest? Why? Do you have the same goals? Check () them.
What other goals or wishes do you have?

PERSPECTIVES Personal accomplishments

- Listen to people talk about their accomplishments. Match the statements and the people.
 - For me, my greatest accomplishment is the feeling that I've been able to help kids develop their potential and achieve their goals.
 - I worked hard in school, but I never managed to get good grades. However, I've just published my first book – and it's a best seller!
 - Last year, I ran my first marathon. I didn't win, but I was able to finish it, and I was very proud of myself.
 - No one believed in me in the beginning, but I've managed to make a living from my music for the past 5 years.
 - I felt I had reached one of my lifetime goals when I managed to quit my nine-to-five job to make a living traveling and sharing my experiences.

- a. an amateur athlete
- b. a teacher
- c. a writer
- d. a travel blogger
- e. a musician

B GROUP WORK Do you share any similar accomplishments? Which ones?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Talking about past accomplishments

With the simple past

I managed to quit my nine-to-five job two years ago. I didn't manage to get good grades in school. I was able to finish the marathon last year.

I wasn't able to travel much on my last job.

With the present perfect

I've managed to make a living with my music. I haven't managed to record an album yet. I've been able to help kids achieve their goals. I haven't been able to achieve many of my goals.

GRAMMAR PLUS of alloge 147

A What are some of your latest accomplishments?
Complete the statements with have, haven't,
was, or wasn't to make them true for you.

- 1. I _____ managed to eat a healthy diet.
- 2. I _____ been able to help others.
- 3. I _____ met the person who's right for me.
- **4.** I _____ made an important career move.
- 5. I _____ able to get a degree.
- **6.** I learned important life skills.
- B PAIR WORK Compare your sentences in part A. What accomplishments do you have in common?
- **GROUP WORK** Complete the statements with your own information. Then share them with your classmates.

I have been able to	
I have managed to	

- A: I've managed to take a trip abroad.
- **B:** What countries did you visit?
- A: I went to New Zealand three years ago.
- C: Really? I've always wanted to go to New Zealand. How did you like it?



haven't been able to	
haven't managed to	

PRONUNCIATION Stress and rhythm

- D 🔼 Listen and practice. Notice how stressed words and syllables occur with a regular rhythm.
 - I managed to accomplish a lot while I was in college.
 - I haven't managed to get a promotion yet.
 - I was able to share my experiences with the world.
 - **PAIR WORK** Take turns reading the sentences in the grammar box in Exercise 3. Pay attention to stress and rhythm.

S LISTENING A different perspective

Listen to two people answer two interview questions. Write the obstacles they faced and what they did about them in the chart.

***************************************	Mr. Sandberg	Ms. Rowe
Obstacle		
What he or she did		
What he or she learned		

- E Listen again. What did each person learn from his or her experience? Complete the chart.
 - C PAIR WORK Discuss an obstacle that you managed to overcome. What did you learn?

WORD POWER Antonyms

A Complete the pairs of opposites with the words in the box. Then compare with a partner.

	compassionate		cynical	dependent	rigid	timid	unimaginative		
1	. adaptable	≠	*****************			4.	. resourceful	≠	
2	. courageous	#	***************************************			5.	. self-sufficient	#	
3	. insensitive	#	***************************************			6.	. upbeat	≠	

- B GROUP WORK How many words or things can you associate with each word in part A?
 - A: What words or things do you associate with resourceful?
 - B: Capable.
 - C: Good at solving problems.

DISCUSSION Inspirational sayings

- A Read the quotes. Which one inspires you the most?
 - 1. The greatest pleasure in life is doing what people say you can't do.
 - 2. Discipline is the bridge between goals and achievements.
 - 3. No matter what you have achieved, somebody helped you.
 - 4. Fall down seven times, stand up eight.
 - 5. Success isn't about how much money you make. It's about the difference you make in people's lives.
- **B GROUP WORK** Discuss and justify your choices.
 - A: I like the first quote because, even though my friends weren't sure I could do it, I managed to graduate from high school early. That felt great!
 - B: You must have been resourceful! But someone helped you, too, didn't they?
 - C: That's why I like the third quote. No one achieves anything all on their own.



CONVERSATION Where do you see yourself?

A Listen and practice.

Interviewer: Tell me a bit more about yourself. What's your

greatest accomplishment?

Mike: I think my most important accomplishment was the

development of a mobile app during my internship

last summer.

Interviewer: And did you manage to finish the project?

Mike: Yes, I was able to deliver the app before the end

of my internship, and it has already received lots of

positive reviews from customers.

Interviewer: That's interesting. And where do you see yourself in

five years?

Mike: Well, I know your company already hires remote

workers, and that's one of my goals for the future. So, five years from now, I hope I'll be working from my laptop in some tropical country . . . a true digital

nomad.

Interviewer: I see. And what do you hope you'll have achieved

by then?

Mike: I'd like to have developed many other successful

apps. And I hope I'll have seen more of the world.

B CLASS ACTIVITY What do you think of Mike's answers? How would you have answered the interviewer's questions?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Describing goals and possible future accomplishments

With the future perfect With would like to have + past participle

What do you hope you'll have achieved?

What would you like to have achieved?

I hope I'll have seen more of the world.

I'd like to have developed many successful apps.

GRAMMAR PLUS see place 147

A What are some goals you would like to have accomplished in the future? Complete the sentences.

- 1. By this time next year, I hope I'll have . . .
- 2. Three years from now, I'd like to have . . .
- **3.** In 10 years, I'd like to have . . .
- 4. By the time I'm 60, I hope I'll have . . .
- PAIR WORK Compare your sentences. What goals do you have in common?
 - A: By this time next year, I hope I'll have finished my English course.
 - **B:** Me, too. And I'd like to have spent some time in an English-speaking country, like . . .



LISTENING My dream career

Listen to three young people describe their plans for the future. What do they hope they will have achieved by the time they're 30?

	1. Hugo	2. Erin	3. Danny
What they hope they'll have achieved			
Their reasons			

- D 鴡 Listen again. Why does each person have his or her specific dream? List one reason for each person.
 - PAIR WORK Who do you think has the most realistic expectations? the least realistic? Why?

INTERCHANGE 16 A digital nomad

Are you ready to work remotely? Take a quiz and find out. Go to Interchange 16 on page 131.

WRITING A personal statement for an application

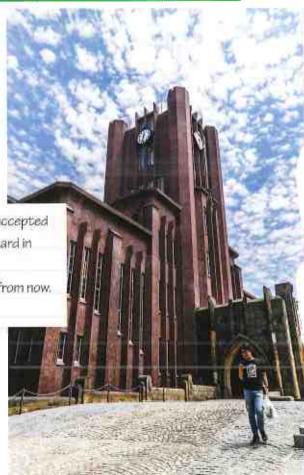
- A Imagine you are applying to a school or for a job that requires a personal statement. Use these questions to organize your ideas. Make notes and then write a draft.
 - 1. What has your greatest accomplishment been? Has it changed you in any way? How?
 - 2. What are some interesting or unusual facts about yourself that make you a good choice for the job or school?
 - 3. What is something you hope to have achieved 10 years from now? When, why, and how will you reach this goal? Will achieving it change you? Why or why not?

I think my greatest accomplishment has been getting accepted at a top university in my country. I've always worked very hard in school, and I've had some truly amazing teachers who ...

There are two things I'd like to have achieved 10 years from now.

First, I hope I'll have made a good start on my career...

B GROUP WORK Share your statements and discuss each person's accomplishments and goals. Who has the most unusual accomplishment or goal? the most realistic? the most ambitious?



A Scan the article. Where is Michael Edwards from? What sport did he participate in?

Soaring Like an Eagle

Being highly successful in any field is pretty rare. It takes a combination of natural talent, luck, determination, and plenty of outside support for someone to make it big in sports, entertainment, or business. But what if competing is all that matters to you, whether you are likely to succeed or not? This was the goal of Michael "Eddie the Eagle" Edwards, and that he reached

that goal was an amazing achievement.

Born in the U.K. in 1963, Michael was an enthusiastic downhill skier whose dream was to compete for Britain in world-class competitions. He would have liked to represent his country in the 1984 Winter Olympics, but there was a large number of downhill competitors, and Edwards didn't qualify. Seeing his chance elsewhere, he switched to ski jumping. Ski jumping training didn't cost nearly as much, and there was no competition for a place on the British team.

But a number of hurdles could have meant the end of Edwards's dream. He weighed more than most competitors. which put him at a disadvantage. He had no financial support for his training. Poor eyesight meant that he had to wear glasses. under his goggles - not a good thing when they steamed up at high altitudes. But he didn't let any of this discourage him. He saw himself as a true lover of the sport who simply wanted the chance to compete. Winning wasn't the point, Having the opportunity to try was all he cared about. And nothing could stop him from trying.

In the end, Edwards took 55th place in the 1987 World Championships. He then went on to the Calgary Olympics in 1988, where he finished last in both of his events. Many athletes would have been embarrassed by this result, but he is proud of his achievement to this day. His determination to persevere against all the odds made him a global hero, and in 2016, the inspiring film Eddie the Eagle was made about his life.



- Read the article. Answer the questions.
 - 1. According to the writer, how often do people become highly successful?
 - 2. What were two disadvantages that Michael Edwards overcame?
 - 3. How did Edwards do at the Calgary Olympics in 1988?
- Choose the correct answers.

- 1. Michael Edwards chose ski jumping instead of downhill skiing because . . .
 - a. it took less skill.
- **b.** the equipment was cheaper.
- c. there were few British ski jumpers.

- 2. After the Calgary Olympics, Edwards . . .
 - a. felt he had reached his goal.
- **b.** was embarrassed by his results.
- c. was glad it was over.

- 3. Michael Edwards is outstanding because of . . .
 - a. his determination to win.
- **b.** his ability to overcome physical disabilities.
- c. his enthusiasm for the sport.
- PAIR WORK Would you compete in something if you knew you were likely to lose? Why or why not?

Units 15-16 Progress check

SELF-ASSESSMENT

How well can you do these things? Check (\checkmark) the boxes.

I can	Very well	ОК	A little
Give recommendations and opinions about rules (Ex. 1)			
Understand and express opinions, and seek agreement (Ex. 2)			
Describe qualities necessary to achieve particular goals (Ex. 3)			
Ask about and describe personal achievements and goals (Ex. 4)			

DISCUSSION It's the rule.

A PAIR WORK What kinds of rules do you think should be made for these places? Talk with your partner and make three rules for each. (Have fun! Don't make your rules too serious.)

office public pool

a health club an apartment building

- **GROUP WORK** Join another pair. Share your ideas. Do they agree?
 - **A:** Office workers should all be required to wear the same outfit.
 - **B:** That sounds interesting. Why?
 - **A:** Well, for one thing, people wouldn't need to spend so much money on clothes.



LISTENING My city

O A	Listen to people give op	inions about their	city. Check (✔) t	he correct responses
	to agree with their state	ments.		

- **1.** Yes, it should.
 - No, it shouldn't.
- 3. Yes, they are.
- . 🔲 Yes, we do.
- No, there aren't.
- No, we don't.

- Yes, it is.
 No, it isn't.
- 4. Yes, it does. Yes, they do.
- 6. No, there isn't.
 Yes, it is.
- **PAIR WORK** Come up with three more opinions about your city with a partner. Ask your classmates and see if they agree or disagree.
 - A: There aren't enough nightlife options for teenagers, are there?
 - B: No, there aren't!

DISCUSSION Do you have what it takes?

A GROUP WORK What qualities are needed if you want to accomplish these goals? Decide on two qualities for each goal.

Goals		Qualities					
start your own business	adaptable	dependent	self-sufficient				
live abroad for a year	compassionate	insensitive	timid				
make a low-budget movie	courageous	resourceful	unimaginative				
hike across your country	cynical	rigid	upbeat				

- A: To start your own business, you need to be resourceful.
- B: Yeah, and you should be courageous too.
- **B** PAIR WORK Does your partner have what it takes to accomplish the goals in part A? Interview him or her and find out.
 - A: Do you think you're resourceful?
 - B: Yes, I think so. I'm usually good at solving problems.



ROLE PLAY Students' profiles

Student A: Student B is going to interview you for the school website.

Think about your accomplishments and goals.

Then answer the questions.

Student B: You are interviewing Student A for the school website.

Add two questions to the notebook paper below.

Then start the interview.

Change roles and try the role play again.

What have you managed to accomplish in school?

What would you like to have achieved by the time you graduate?

Are you happy with your home?

Do you hope you will move someday?

Where would you like to live?

Have you been able to accomplish a lot in your career?

Where do you hope you'll be in 5 years?

WHAT'S NEXT?

Look at your Self-assessment again. Do you need to review anything?

Interchange activities

INTERCHANGE 1 Personality quiz

A PAIR WORK What is your personality type? Take turns using the quiz to interview each other. Then tally your answers and find out which category best describes you.



What's your personality type?



1. When you fail a test, do you:

- a. get really upset and decide to try much harder next time?
- **b.** go over your answers and learn from your mistakes?
- c. not care much about it?

2. When you work on a big project, do you:

- a. try to finish it as quickly as possible?
- b. work at it over a long period of time?
- c. put it off as long as possible?

3. When you do an assignment, do you:

- a. try to do a first-class job so people will notice?
- **b.** do it as well as you can without worrying too much?
- c. do only what you must to get it done?

4. When faced with a difficult challenge, do you:

- a. look forward to facing it?
- b. worry about dealing with it?
- c. try to avoid it?

Do you think the best way to get the most out of a day is to:

- a. do as many things as possible?
- b. take your time to get things done?
- c. do only those things you really have to?

When something doesn't work out the way you want it to, do you:

- a. get angry with yourself and others?
- **b.** think calmly about what to do next?
- **c.** give up, because it wasn't important anyway?

When people take a long time to finish something, do you:

- a. get impatient and do it yourself?
- b. gently ask them to do it more quickly?
- c. let them take their time?

8. When you are learning a new skill, do you:

- a. work very hard to master it quickly?
- b. do your best and often ask for help?
- **c.** take your time and enjoy the learning experience?

If you compare your goals with your friends' goals, do you:

- **a.** want to accomplish greater things than they do?
- b. hope to achieve similar things in life?
- **c.** not care if they set higher goals for themselves than you do?

10. When people are late for appointments, do you:

- a. get angry and stressed out?
- **b.** remember that you are sometimes late, too?
- c. not worry, because you are usually late, too?

11. When people are talking to you, do you:

- a. not listen and think about other things?
- b. listen and participate in the conversation?
- c. let them talk and agree with everything they say?

Scoring

Count how many a, b, and c answers your partner has. If there are . . .

mostly a answers: This person is a high achiever but can get very stressed.

mostly **b** answers: This person is the cool and steady type.

mostly c answers: This person is the easygoing or carefree type.

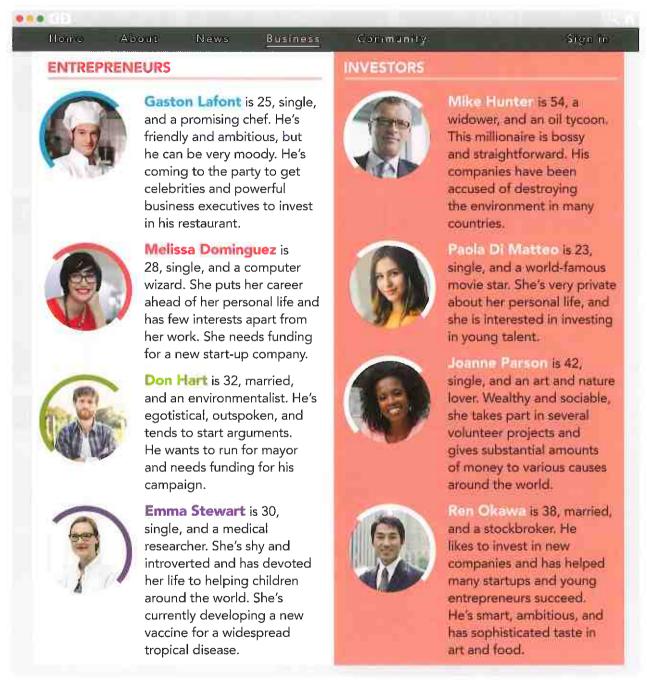
B GROUP WORK Compare your scores. Then suggest four characteristics of each personality type.

"A high achiever is the kind of person who He or she can't stand it when . . . "

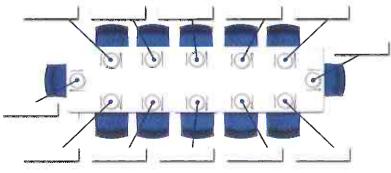
INTERCHANGE 2 Networking

A PAIR WORK Imagine you and your partner are organizing a dinner party for new entrepreneurs and potential investors.

Read about each person on the guest list.



- **B** PAIR WORK Discuss the possible seating arrangements for the party. Then complete this seating plan.
 - A: Let's seat Gaston next to Ren. Gaston is interested in finding investors for his new restaurant.
 - **B:** It might be better to put Ren next to Melissa. Ren likes to invest in start-ups, so . . .



Beg and borrow

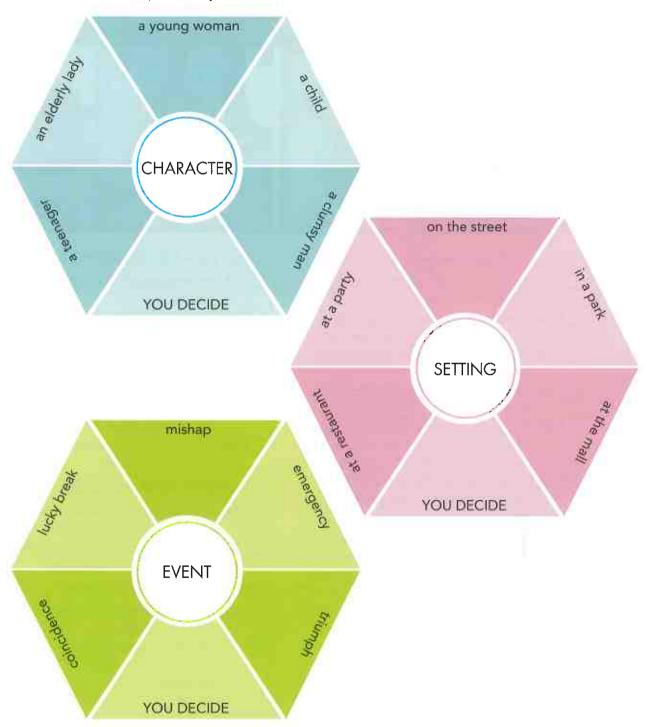
A Imagine you own these items. Which ones would you be willing to lend to a friend? Which ones wouldn't you lend? Check (✓) a response for each item.



- B CLASS ACTIVITY Go around the class and take turns asking to borrow each item in part A. Explain why you want to borrow it. When responding, say if you are willing to lend the item or not. If you won't lend something, say why.
 - A: Would you mind lending me your tent for the weekend? I want to go camping, but I got a hole in my tent.
 - B: I'm sorry, but I don't think I can. I might want to go camping this weekend, too!
 - B: Sure. Just come over tonight and pick it up.
- CLASS ACTIVITY Who was able to borrow the most items?

INTERCHANGE 4 Spin a yarn

A GROUP WORK Place a pen on the CHARACTER spinner and spin it. Repeat for the other two spinners. Use the elements the pen points at to create a story. If the pen points at YOU DECIDE, you can use any element from that spinner, or you can invent a new one.



"One day a clumsy man was having dinner at a restaurant when . . ."

CLASS ACTIVITY Share your group's stories with your classmates. Who created the most interesting story? the most unexpected? the most creative?

INTERCHANGE 5 Cultural dos and taboos

A These statements are generally true about cultural behavior in the United States. Check () those that are true in your country.

COMPARING CULTURES Find out how typical U.S. cultural behavior compares to yours! SOCIALIZING AND ENTERTAINING DINING AND SHOPPING 9. It's acceptable to eat while walking 1. It's OK to start a conversation with a outside. stranger when waiting in line. 10. Eating is not allowed while shopping 2. People aren't supposed to stand too close to other people when talking. in most stores. 11. When eating in a restaurant, friends 3. In general, people wear outdoor shoes either split the cost of the meal or inside their homes. take turns paying. Women often hug their female friends 12. It's the custom to leave a 15-20% when they meet. tip for the server at a restaurant. 5. It's not acceptable to ask people how much money they earn or how much It's uncommon to bargain when you buy things in stores. they paid for things. 6. People are expected to call or text AT WORK AND SCHOOL before dropping by a friend's house. 14. In an office, people usually prefer to 7. When invited to be called by their first names. someone's home Students remain seated when the for dinner, people teacher enters the classroom. usually arrive on DATING AND MARRIAGE time. 16. It's acceptable for most teenagers. 8. Gifts are normally opened when to go out on dates. received. 17. People usually decide for themselves who they will marry.

B PAIR WORK Compare your answers with a partner. For the statements you didn't check, why do you think these behaviors are different in your country?

INTERCHANGE 6A Home makeover

Student A

A Look at this apartment. What's wrong with it? First, make a list of as many problems as you can find in each room.



- B PAIR WORK Compare your lists. What are the similarities and differences in the problems between your picture and your partner's picture? Ask questions to find the differences.
 - A: What's wrong in the bedroom?
 - B: Well, in my picture, the walls need painting. And the curtains . . .
 - A: Oh, really? In my picture, the walls need to be painted, but the curtains . . . , and the window . . .

INTERCHANGE 6B Home makeover

Student B

🔔 Look at this apartment. What's wrong with it? First, make a list of as many problems as you can find in each room.



- PAIR WORK Compare your lists. What are the similarities and differences in the problems between your picture and your partner's picture? Ask questions to find the differences.
 - A: What's wrong in the bedroom?
 - B: Well, in my picture, the walls need painting. And the curtains . . .
 - A: Oh, really? In my picture, the walls need to be painted, but the curtains . . . , and the window . . .

NTERCHANGE 7 Take action!

A Read about these issues. Which one would you most likely protest?

0 0 0 CH

A baby food company has been using genetically modified fruit and vegetables in their recipes to lower costs.

Congress is discussing a law that allows the government to shut down any website it considers inappropriate.

The city is going to close a public park to build a new bus terminal.

B GROUP WORK Find other students who chose the same issue. Then look at methods of protest. Which are the most effective for the issue you chose? Complete the chart.

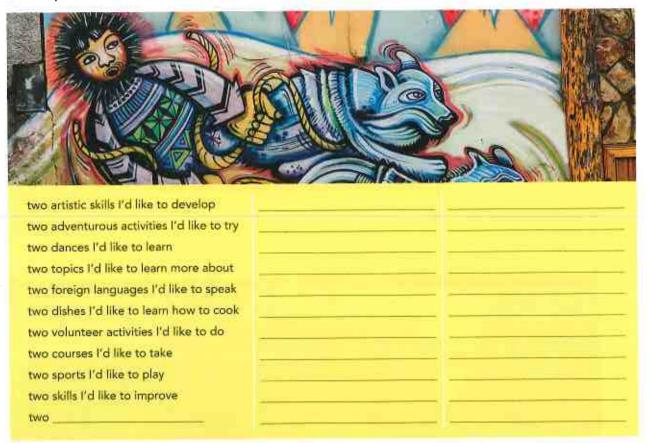


Develop a strategy to make your voices heard using the above methods or your own ideas.

CLASS ACTIVITY How did you decide to deal with the issue? Present your group's strategy to the class.

MONEY THE THE TANK THE PARTY OF
Making choices

A Complete this chart with information about yourself. Add one idea of your own.



B CLASS ACTIVITY Ask three classmates to help you choose between the things you wrote down in part A. Write their recommendations in the chart.

Names:			
artistic skill			
adventurous activity			
dance			
topic			
foreign language			
dish			
volunteer activity			
course			
sport			
skill			

- A: I don't know if I'd rather be a graffiti artist or a painter. What do you think?
- B: Hmm. If I were you, I'd choose graffiti.
- A: Why graffiti and not painting?
- B: Well, that kind of street art is very popular nowadays. You could become famous, and . . .
- GROUP WORK What are your final choices? Who gave the best advice? Why?

TERCHANGE 9 Absolutely not!

A PAIR WORK Read these comments made by parents. Why do you think they feel this way? Think of two arguments to support each point of view.





- A: Why do you think they won't let their son go camping with his friends?
- B: They probably think he's too young to take care of himself.
- A: They may also feel that he . . .
- B PAIR WORK Discuss the parents' decisions. Think of arguments for and against their points of view.
 - A: I think the parents should let their son go camping with his friends.
 - B: Why?
 - A: Because his friends are going, and he needs to learn to take care of himself.
 - B: I don't agree. I think he's too young. Teens shouldn't travel without an adult.
- CLASS ACTIVITY Take a vote. Do you agree with the parents? Why?

INTERCHANGE 10A History buff

Student A

A PAIR WORK Ask your partner these questions. Put a check () if your partner gives the correct answer. (The correct answers are in **bold**.)







Frida Kahlo

Volkswagen Beetle

Alexander Fleming

test your knowledge 🐾 🏩 6. When did the British return What nationality was the painter Frida Kahlo? Was she Spanish, Hong Kong to China? Was it in 1987, 1997, or 2007? Mexican, or Argentinian? Who discovered penicillin? What was the first capital of Was it Alexander Fleming, the United States? Was it Charles Darwin, or Albert Philadelphia, New York, or Einstein? Boston? Nhich planet is closest to Who played 007 in the first the sun? Is it Mars, Mercury, James Bond movie? Was it or Venus? Roger Moore, Sean Connery, or Pierce Brosnan? 🔲 🔾 What Italian astronomer invented the thermometer When was the first Volkswagen in 1593? Was it Copernicus, Beetle car built? Was it during Isaac Newton, or Galileo? the 1920s, 1930s, or 1940s? When did the first MP3 player Was Nelson Mandela a political hit the market in the US? Was activist from India, Angola, or it in 1978, 1988, or 1998? South Africa?

- **PAIR WORK** Answer the questions your partner asks you. Then compare quizzes. Who has the most correct answers?
- CLASS ACTIVITY Think of three more questions of your own.
 Can the rest of the class answer them?

NTERCHANGE 11 Good choices, bad choices

- A PAIR WORK Play the board game. Follow these instructions.
 - 1. Use small pieces of paper with your initials on them as markers.
 - 2. Take turns tossing a coin:



Move one space.

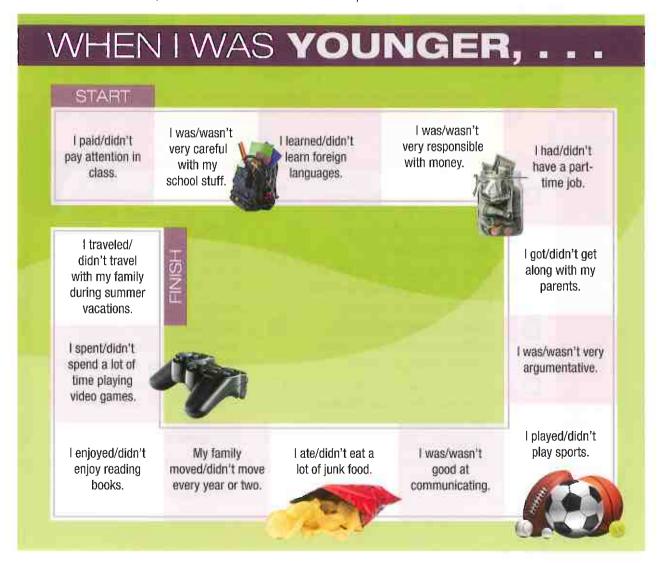


Move two spaces.

Heads

3. When you land on a space, tell your partner what is true. Then say how things would have been different. For example: "When I was younger, I didn't pay attention in class. If I had paid attention in class, I would have gotten better grades." OR

"When I was younger, I paid attention in class. If I hadn't paid attention in class, I wouldn't have won a scholarship."



B CLASS ACTIVITY Who was responsible when they were younger? Who was rebellious? Tell the class.

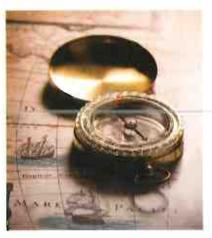
INTERCHANGE 10B History buff

Student B

A PAIR WORK Answer the questions your partner asks you.

B PAIR WORK Ask your partner these questions. Put a check (1) if your partner gives the correct answer. (The correct answers are in **bold**.) Then compare quizzes. Who has the most correct answers?







Mona Lisa

a compass

Berlin Wall

TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE When did the Berlin Wall What was the former name of come down? Was it in 1979, New York City? Was it New 1989, or 1999? England, New London, or New Amsterdam? Where was Marie Curie, the What artist painted the Mona first woman to receive a Nobel Lisa? Was it Leonardo da Vinci, Prize, born? Was it in Poland, France, or England? Michelangelo, or Raphael? When did Walt Disney make Who was the first human in space? Was it Yuri Gagarin, his first cartoon movie? Was it in 1920, 1937, or 1947? Neil Armstrong, or John Glenn? Who used the first magnetic What did Thomas Edison compass? Was it the Chinese, invent in 1879? Was it the the Portuguese, or the Dutch? television, the telephone, or

the lightbulb?

In which year did Mexico gain

its independence? Was it in 1721, **1821**, or 1921?

CLASS ACTIVITY Think of three more questions of your own. Can the rest of the class answer them?

Constantinople was an earlier name of what city? Was it

Cairo, Mumbai, or Istanbul?

INTERCHANGE 12 Advertising taglines

A PAIR WORK Read these popular slogans for products. Match the slogans with the product types.

1.	Think different.
2.	Unforgettable happens here
3.	Taste the feeling
4.	All the news that's fit to print
5.	Impossible is nothing
6.	Bet you can't eat just one
7.	Stay with us, and feel like home
8.	Reach out and touch someone
9.	I'm loving it.
10.	Live in your world. Play in ours
11.	Melts in your mouth, not in your hands

- a. a soft drink
- **b.** a technology company
- c. an amusement park
- d. sports clothing
- e. potato chips
- f. a daily newspaper
- q. fast food
- h. automobiles
- i. a game console
- j. a hotel
- k. a telephone service
- I. chocolate candy
- **B** PAIR WORK Join another pair and compare your answers. Then check your answers at the bottom of the page.
- C GROUP WORK Think of a product. Then create your own slogan for it and add a logo. Consider a design and colors that are suitable for the product.
 - A: Any ideas for a product?

12. Built for the road ahead.

- B: What about an online store for used toys?
- C: Sounds interesting. Let's try to think of some catchy slogans.
- D: How about, "Play again!"? Or maybe . . .
- CLASS ACTIVITY Present your slogans to the class.

Who has the catchiest ones?

THE TANK OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF



1. b; 2. c; 3. a; 4. f; 5. d; 6. e; 7. j; 8. k; 9. g; 10. i; 11. l; 12. h

Think of the possibilities!

A PAIR WORK What do you think might have happened in each situation? Talk about possibilities for each situation.





Pete made a fortune in the stock market. He's now working at a burger joint.





Lisa went grocery shopping yesterday afternoon. She hasn't come back home yet.





Jim was the best salesperson in the company for the past 10 years. He just got fired.





Clara had everything ready for her dream vacation in Tahiti. She's on the bus heading to her parents' home.

- A: Maybe Pete made some bad investments.
- B: Or he might have spent all his money on . . .

useful expressions

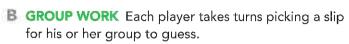
Maybe he/she was . . . when . . . He/She may have . . . when . . . He/She might have . . . Or perhaps he/she was . . .

B GROUP WORK Agree on one explanation for each situation and share it with the class. Be ready to answer any questions.

TERCHANGE 14 Celebrities

- A Prepare to play a guessing game.
 - Write the names of five celebrities on slips of paper. Names can include people in history, movie stars, singers, politicians, writers, etc.
 - Mix all the slips in a bag.





A: She's a celebrity who was born in London.

B: Is she a movie star?

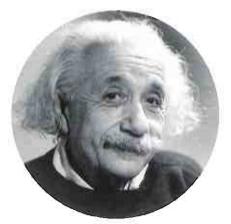
A: No, she's a singer and songwriter who has a beautiful voice.

C: I think I know the answer. It's . . .

CLASS ACTIVITY Which celebrities were easier to guess? Which were the most difficult? Who gave the best clues?



Nico Rosberg



Albert Einstein



Sofia Vergara



Sally Ride

On the wrong side of the law

A PAIR WORK What punishment (if any) is appropriate for each possible offense? Why? Complete the chart.







PUNISHMENT OFFENSE

- parking in a disabled parking space without a permit
- posting offensive comments online
- leaving trash on public streets
- riding the subway without paying the fare
- failing to clean up after a dog
- pickpocketing
- scratching paint off another person's car
- crossing the street in dangerous places
- driving without a seat belt
- riding a motorcycle without a helmet
- hacking into a government computer
- (your own idea)
- A: What do you think should be done about people who park in a disabled parking space without a permit?
- B: They should be required to pay a heavy fine because it may cause problems for people with disabilities.
- A: I don't agree. I think . . .
- **GROUP WORK** Join another pair of students. Then compare and discuss your lists. Do you agree or disagree? Try to convince each other that you are right!

-		
_		

possible punishments

receive a warning spend some time in jail pay a fine lose a driver's license get suspended do community service be banned from using the Internet

INTERCHANGE 16 A digital nomad

A PAIR WORK Interview your partner. Would he or she be a happy digital nomad?

Is the digital nomad lifestyle right for you? Do you dream of working from a beach paradise? Are you ready to hit the road and make a living while traveling the world? Take our guiz and find out. 1. Have you traveled much before? 5. Have you ever traveled all by yourself? a. I've traveled with my family in our a. Of course not. I need family and friends around at all times. b. Not yet, but I hope to have seen more **b.** No, but I think I'd enjoy it. of the world by the time I retire. c. Sure. I often take vacations alone. c. I've been to a couple of continents It's a great opportunity to meet new and seen some amazing things! people. 2. Are you resourceful? 6. Are you ready to give up a fixed salary? a. Well, I can always count on my friends a. No. I need to have a steady income. to help me when I need it. It's important for me to know how much money I'll be making for the b. Yes, and I can always find the answers next 12 months. I need on the Internet. b. Well, I can live on very little money c. Yes, I'm good at finding opportunities I've done it before. everywhere. c. I'm good at managing my money, and 3. When you pack for a long weekend, what do I always have some savings, so that you take with you? wouldn't be a problem. a. A big suitcase with everything I might 7. Are you self-motivated, or do you depend on need - you never know what might others to get you going? happen. a. I need to know that my boss or my b. A small bag with the essentials. teachers are around and that I can c. A toothbrush and a change of clothes. count on them. I like to travel light. b. It depends. If I'm really involved with 4. Are you flexible and adaptable? a project, I'm more independent; a. I try to be, but I don't always succeed. if not . . . b. Yes, if you give me some time to c. Definitely. I know what I have to do, and I always finish the work on time. c. Definitely. I've managed to survive 8. How do you feel about changes? under the most challenging a. I like to have a set routine. Changes circumstances. make me feel uncomfortable. **b.** They can be a challenge, but they also help me grow. c. Changes are always welcome. New things inspire and motivate me. Score the quiz by counting the number of a's, b's, and c's. Mostly a's: The digital nomad lifestyle is not for you. Mostly b's: You'd probably be happy being a digital nomad, but you might miss your current life. Mostly c's: What are you doing here? Go grab your things and hit the road!

B CLASS ACTIVITY Compare your findings. Who is ready to become a digital nomad?

Grammar plus

UNIT 1

A relative pronoun – who or that – is necessary when the pronoun is the subject of the clause: I'd love to meet someone who/that is considerate. (NOT: I'd love to meet someone is considerate.) When the pronoun is the object of the clause, who and that can be left out: I'd like a roommate who/that I have a lot in common with. OR I'd like a roommate I have a lot in common with. Complete the conversation with who or that. Put an X when a relative pronoun isn't necessary. A: Ana, have you met Clint – the guy X Laurie is going to marry? B: Oh, Clint and I have been friends for years. In fact, I'm the one introduced Laurie and Clint A: Do you think they're right for each other? B: Definitely. They're two people have a lot in common – but not too much. A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily If clauses + adverbial clauses with when eage 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when, the word it necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough tim		
like a roommate who/that I have a lot in common with. OR I'd like a roommate I have a lot in common with. Complete the conversation with who or that. Put an X when a relative pronoun isn't necessary. A: Ana, have you met Clint – the guyX Laurie is going to marry? B: Oh, Clint and I have been friends for years. In fact, I'm the one introduced Laurie and Clint A: Do you think they're right for each other? B: Definitely. They're two people have a lot in common – but not too much. A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when people I tould talk to easily. It clauses + adverbial clauses with when the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) it really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) it really bothers me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)		of the clause: I'd love to meet someone who/that is considerate. (NOT: I'd love
A: Ana, have you met Clint – the guyX Laurie is going to marry? B: Oh, Clint and I have been friends for years. In fact, I'm the one introduced Laurie and Clint A: Do you think they're right for each other? B: Definitely. They're two people have a lot in common – but not too much. A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when Dage 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) it really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)		like a roommate who/that I have a lot in common with, or I'd like a roommate
B: Oh, Clint and I have been friends for years. In fact, I'm the oneintroduced Laurie and Clint A: Do you think they're right for each other? B: Definitely. They're two people have a lot in common – but not too much. A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when page 6 I In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) it really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	Со	mplete the conversation with who or that. Put an $oldsymbol{x}$ when a relative pronoun isn't necessary.
A: Do you think they're right for each other? B: Definitely. They're two people have a lot in common – but not too much. A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when page 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me)	A:	Ana, have you met Clint – the guy X Laurie is going to marry?
A: What does that mean? B: Well, you don't want a partner doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples do everything together usually don't last very long. A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when page 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)		
A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when Page 5 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)		
I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl I could talk to easily. B: Well, you can talk to me easily It clauses + adverbial clauses with when Page 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 a.m. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	B:	
It clauses + adverbial clauses with when Page 6 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: 1 hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: 8 others me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	A:	
 In sentences with an it clause + an adverbial clause with when, the word it refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 a.m. (it really bothers me) it really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me) 	B:	Well, you can talk to me easily
refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Bothers me when people) Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses. 1. I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. 2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	lt d	clauses + adverbial clauses with when page 6
 I can't stand it when people call me before 8:00 A.M. (it really bothers me) It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me) 	•	refers to and means the same as the adverbial clause with when. The it in these sentences is necessary and cannot be left out: I hate it when people talk on a cell phone in an elevator. (NOT: Hate when people) It bothers me when
 It really bothers me when people call me before 8:00 a.m. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me) 	Re	write the sentences using the words in parentheses.
2. It upsets me when I don't have enough time to study for an exam. (I hate it) 3. I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me) 4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	1.	
4. I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)	2.	
	3.	I don't mind it when friends talk to me about their problems. (it doesn't bother me)
5. It makes me happy when my friends send me videos. (I love it)	4.	I don't like it when I forget a co-worker's name. (it embarrasses me)
	5.	It makes me happy when my friends send me videos. (I love it)

6. I hate it when I have to wait for someone. (it upsets me)



2

1 Gerund phrases page 9

- A gerund phrase as a subject takes a singular verb: Taking care of children is a rewarding job. (NOT: Taking care of children are a rewarding job.)
- There are some common verb + preposition expressions (for example, dream about, feel like, talk about, think about) and adjective + preposition phrases (for example, good/bad at, excited by/about, interested in, tired of, used to) that are followed by a gerund: I'm thinking about looking for a new job. I'm tired of working long hours.

Complete the sentences with the correct gerund forms of the verbs in the box.

100	ecome hange	have learn	make solve	stand take	travel work
1. M	ly brothe	er's very ir	nterested i	n	becomina
	-	-			to ne
					a Jap
3. Yo	ou would	dn't like		vour feet	in a re throughou
					unougnoe
					areers to l
5	•••••••	<u></u>	a liv	/ing as a p	hotograp
				mpressive	e portfolio
ne	ew clien	ts and em	ployers.		
Com	narison	s page	11		
COM	parison	5 page			
		The second secon			ount nouns,
					nore than a
	arn more ttendants		t attendan	ts. (NOT: +	he pilots e
Make	e compa	ırisons wit	h the info	mation b	elow. Add
			ucation / h	-	
					<u>than a hai</u>
2. co	ollege p	rofessor /	earn more	e / elemen	itary schoo
3 r:	ureae / w	vorse hour	rs / psychia		
3. III	urses / w	vorse nour	s / psycill	3111212	
4. w	orking a	s a police	officer / a	s dangero	ous / being
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
5. ta	axi drive	r / not as v	well paid /	electricia	n
	~~~~~~~~~~~~				************
<b>6.</b> be	eing a to	our guide	/ less inte	resting / b	eing an ac



#### 1 Requests with modals, if clauses, and gerunds page 17

■ Use the simple past form – not the gerund or simple present form – after if with Would you mind . . . ? and Would it be all right . . . ?: Would you mind if I used

	your car? Would it be all right if I used you using your car? OR Would it be all right if I u			
	Read the situations. Then complete the requ	uest	S.	
	<ol> <li>You want to borrow a friend's underwate</li> <li>A: I was wondering if I could borrow you</li> <li>B: Sure. That's fine. Just please be careful.</li> <li>You want to use your roommate's computer to the original of the original origi</li></ol>	ur ur ul wi uter.	derwater camera. th it.	
	A: Is it OK			
;	3. Your neighbor has a car. You need a ride A: Would you mind	to c	lass.	
	<b>B:</b> I'd be glad to. What time should I pic			
ı	<ul><li>4. You want your brother to help you move</li><li>A: Can you</li></ul>		•	
	<b>B:</b> I'm sorry. I'm busy all weekend.			
	<ul><li>5. You would like a second piece of your au</li><li>A: Would it be all right</li></ul>			
	B: Yes, of course! Just pass me your plat			
,	A: Could you			
	<b>B:</b> Sorry. I don't like it when other peopl	le we	ear my clothes.	
2	Indirect requests page 20			
	In indirect requests with negative infinitives, the infinitive: Could you tell Allie not to be I to not be late?)			
	Complete the indirect requests. Ask someo	ne t	o deliver the messages to Susic	÷.
	1. Are you busy this weekend?	<b>→</b>	Could you ask Susie if she's	busy this weekend?
	2. Do you want to hang out with me?	<b>→</b>	Can	
	3. Text me.	<b>→</b>	Can	

1.	Are you busy this weekend?	$\rightarrow$	Could you ask Susie if she's busy this weekend?
2.	Do you want to hang out with me?	$\rightarrow$	Can
3.	Text me.	$\rightarrow$	Can
4.	Do you know my address?	$\rightarrow$	Can
5.	Don't forget to write.	$\rightarrow$	Could
6.	What are you doing Saturday?	$\rightarrow$	Can
7.	Do you have plans on Sunday?	$\rightarrow$	Could



### Past continuous vs. simple past page 23

Verbs for non-actions or states are rarely used in the past continuous: I wanted to stop, but I couldn't. (NOT: I was wanting to stop . . . )

Circle the best forms to complete the conversations.

- 1. A: How did you break / were you breaking your arm?
  - B: It's a crazy story! Ramon and I rode / were riding our bikes in the park when a cat ran / was running out in front of me. I went / was going pretty fast, so when I tried / was trying to stop, I went / was going off the road and fell / was falling.
  - A: That's terrible! Did you go / Were you going to the hospital after it happened / was happening?
  - B: Yes. Luckily, we weren't / weren't being too far from City Hospital, so we went / were going there.
- 2. A: You'll never guess what happened / was happening to me this morning!
  - B: What?
  - A: Well, I brushed / was brushing my teeth when suddenly the water went / was going off. I had / was having toothpaste all over my mouth, and I couldn't wash it off.
  - B: So what did you do / were you doing?
  - A: Fortunately, I had / was having a big bottle of water in the refrigerator, so I used / was using that water to rinse my mouth.
- 2 Past perfect page 25

past act	on:		
	71.0		
wasn't	able to pay for lunch becaus	e I <b>had left</b> my wallet	at work.
PAST -	x	x	NOW

Combine the two ideas into one with a past event and a past perfect event. Use when or because.

- 1. The museum closed. A thief stole a famous painting earlier. The museum closed because a thief had stolen a famous painting earlier.
- 2. We finished cleaning the house. Then our guests arrived.
- 3. Someone robbed my house yesterday. I left the window open.
- **4.** There was no food in the house. We forgot to stop at the supermarket.
- 5. I called her three times. She finally answered.
- 6. I knew about the problem. Your brother told me about it.



### 1 Noun phrases containing relative clauses page 31

The relative pronoun who or that can be left out in noun phrases as subjects and as objects. These four sentences have exactly the same meaning: One thing I'd be nervous about is getting lost. One thing that I'd be nervous about is getting lost. Getting lost is one thing I'd be nervous about. Getting lost is one thing that I'd be nervous about.

	lost. Getting lost is one thing i'd be nervous about. Getting lost is one thing that I'd be nervous about.
	Answer the questions using the words in parentheses. Write each sentence two ways. Leave out the relative pronouns.
	If you went to live in a foreign country,
	1. Who would you miss a lot? (person: my best friend)
	a. One person I'd miss a lot is my best friend.
	<b>b.</b> My best friend is one person I'd miss a lot.
	2. What would you be very interested in? (things: the food and the music)
	a
	<ul><li><b>3.</b> What would you be worried about? (something: not understanding the customs)</li></ul>
	a
	b
	4. Who would you stay in touch with? (people: my brother and sister)
	a
	<ul><li>b</li><li>5. What would you feel insecure about? (thing: speaking a new language)</li></ul>
	a
	b
2	Expectations page 33
	■ Use the base form of a verb – not the gerund – after these expressions for
	expectations: be the custom to, be supposed to, be expected to, be acceptable
	to: It's the custom to arrive a little late. (NOT: It's the custom to arriving a little late.)
	ittle late.)
	Complete the sentences with the clauses in the box.
	it's not acceptable to show up without calling first.
	it's the custom for them to sit across from each other.
	you're expected to reply within a few days.
	you're supposed to bring a gift.
	✓ you're supposed to shake his or her hand.
	1. When you meet someone for the first time, you're supposed to shake his or her hand.
	2. When a friend sends you an email,
	3. If you want to visit someone,
	4. If you invite a married couple to dinner,
	5. When you go to a birthday party,



### 1 Describing problems 1 page 37

■ The simple past and the past participle of regular verbs are the same: I chipped the vase. The vase is chipped, But Many irregular verbs have different simple past and past participle forms: I tore my jacket. My jacket is torn.

Complete the conversations with the correct words from the box.

are s	stained	has a dent	√ have a tear	is broken	is scratched	
has	a chip	has a stain		is leaking	some damage	
Tros (	a cinp	ilda d Staill	is a noie	is leaking	some damage	
1. A:	: Oh, no	! These jeans	have a tea	r in the	em.	
B:	And th	ey	, to	0.		
			g out of that glass			n it.
			nat's why it			
			today. Look! The			in it.
			light			
			nat's not the only p			
	1001001	ly cate, but th	ides not the only p	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		Off it, too.
Desc	ribing p	roblems 2 🔏	page 39			
- 11						
■ US	e the par	st participle – n	ot the present partic	ciple or gerund	- with passive form	is:
	(7)		ot the present particed. (NOT: The oven n		10	151
Th	ie oven n	eeds to be fixe	ed. (NOT: The oven n	eeds to be fixing	10	ns:
Comp	e oven n	eeds to be <b>fixe</b> conversation	ed. (NOT: The oven not with the verbs in	eeds to be fixing parentheses.	ng.)	ns:
Comp Use r	olete the	eeds to be fixe conversation assive infinitiv	ed. (NOT: The oven n with the verbs in we in A's lines and	eeds to be fixing parentheses.  need + gerun	ng.) d in B's lines.	
Comp Use r	olete the need + p	eeds to be <b>fixe</b> e conversation assive infinitivitis is place! A lot	with the verbs in vering in A's lines and of work <u>need</u>	parentheses. need + gerun 5 to be done	ng.) d in B's lines. (do) before we	e move in.
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo	ne oven notes the over the ove	eeds to be <b>fixe</b> conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work <u>need</u> s make a list. First,	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls	ng.) d in B's lines (do) before weneed painting	e move in. (paint).
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig	ne oven no olete the need + p ook at th ou're not ght. And	eeds to be fixe conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's I the windows	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work <u>need</u> s make a list. First,	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was	d in B's lines. (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to	e move in. (paint). o your list:
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig	olete the need + p ook at th ou're not ght. And really	eeds to be fixe e conversation assive infinitivities is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows	with the verbs in ve in A's lines and of work <u>needs</u> make a list. First, (clean).	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines. (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to	e move in. (paint). o your list: (dry-clean)
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Right B: No	olete the need + p ook at th ou're not ght. And really o, I think	eeds to be fixe e conversation assive infinitivities is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows	with the verbs in ve in A's lines and of work need make a list. First, (clean).	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines. (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to	e move in. (paint). o your list: (dry-clean)
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No	olete the need + p ook at th ou're not ght. And really o, I think e can re	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it nt a machine	with the verbs in ve in A's lines and of work need make a list. First, (clean).	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to it  (shampoo	e move in. (paint). o your list: (dry-clean)
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar	ne oven no lete the need + pook at the ou're not ght. And reallyo, I think ie can re	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it nt a machine	with the verbs in ve in A's lines and of work needs make a list. First, (clean). ourselves. It for that.	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to it  (shampoo	e move in. (paint). o your list: (dry-clean)
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Ol	polete the peed + peok at the pure not ght. And reallyo, I think le can reall what ans aren'	e conversation assive infinitivities place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it a machine about the ceit too expensive dded it to the	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work needs make a list. First, (clean). ourselves. It for that. ling fan? I think it we.	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting. h). Add the rug to it (shampoo (replated)	e move in(paint). o your list:(dry-clean) ). ace).
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Ol	polete the peed + peok at the pure not ght. And reallyo, I think le can reall what ans aren'	e conversation assive infinitivities place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it a machine about the ceit too expensive dded it to the	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work needs make a list. First, (clean). ourselves. It for that. ling fan? I think it we.	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting. h). Add the rug to it (shampoo (replated)	e move in(paint). o your list:(dry-clean) ). ace).
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Ol A: It	polete the need + pook at the pu're not ght. And reallyo, I think to can really what ans aren' K. I've ad	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it at a machine about the ceit too expensive dded it to the	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work need a list. First, (clean). ourselves. It for that. ling fan? I think it we (throw out)! I	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think build we do wi	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting. h). Add the rug to it	e move in(paint). b your list:(dry-clean). ). ace). siture? care of that, though.
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Ol A: It	polete the peok at the pure not ght. And reallyo, I think is can really what ans aren' K. I've according to be the polete the	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it a machine about the ceit too expensive dded it to the	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think  buld we do withink the land	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to it (shampoo (replate th all this old furn llord should take overb in parenthes	e move in(paint). o your list:(dry-clean). ). ace). siture? care of that, though.
Comp Use r A: Lo B: Yo A: Rig It B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Ol A: It	polete the need + pook at the purre not ght. And really	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it a machine about the ceit too expensive ded it to the blog with the having	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work (clean). ourselves. It (throw out)! I e correct form of A (have) technical p	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think build we do wi think the land keep and the	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting. h). Add the rug to it (replaying the following the following the following the following should take overb in parenthes computer	e move in(paint). b your list:(dry-clean). cace). siture? care of that, though. es(cr
Compuse r A: Lo B: Yo A: Right B: No A: Ar Fa B: Ol A: It Computation	olete the need + pook at the pook at the pook at the pook at the need the need the need what ans aren't K. I've according to be the need t	eeds to be fixed assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's at the windows are can do it int a machine about the ceit too expensive deed it to the eblog with the having	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think  build we do wi think the land keep and the roblems. My on). I have to	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting. h). Add the rug to it (replated and the function of the following should take of the computer	e move in(paint). o your list:(dry-clean). ace). siture? care of that, though. es(cr
Compuse r A: Lo B: Yo A: Right B: No W A: Ar Fa B: Of A: It Computation	polete the peok at the polete the peok at	e conversation assive infinitive is place! A lot kidding. Let's the windows we can do it a machine about the ceit too expensive ded it to the blog with the having er	with the verbs in we in A's lines and of work	parentheses. need + gerun to be done the walls (was Do you think  build we do wi think the land keep and the roblems. My ch). I have to	d in B's lines.  (do) before we need painting h). Add the rug to it  (shampoo  (replate the all this old furn llord should take overb in parenthes computer  (die). The letter	e move in(paint). b your list:(dry-clean). cace). siture? care of that, though. es(cr



### 1 Passive with prepositions Page 45

The prepositions by, as a result of, because of, though, and due to have similar meanings. They are used in sentences that describe cause and effect; they introduce the cause.

Match phrases from each column to make sentences. (More than one answer may be possible.)

Subject	Effect	Cause
1. The environment	is being contaminated due to	improper disposal of medical waste.
2. Our soil	is being harmed by	deforestation to make paper products.
3. Infectious diseases	are being endangered due to	hybrid cars.
4. Many different species	has been affected because of	the use of pesticides on fruits and vegetables.
5. Our air quality	has been reduced as a result of	the destruction of their habitats.
6. Smog pollution	have been spread through	climate changes like global warming.

### 2 Infinitive clauses and phrases page 47

- The form of be that follows the first infinitive must agree with the subject: The best way to reduce pollution is to improve public transportation. But The best ways to reduce homelessness are to build more public housing and provide free health care.
- A Match the phrases.
  - 1. What are the best ways to make <u>e</u>
  - 2. And the best way to do that is _____
  - 3. The best ways to reduce _____
  - 4. One way to improve _____
  - 5. Another way to make _____

- a. people safer is to make the air healthier.
- **b.** to create a larger police force.
- c. people's quality of life is to help them feel safe.
- d. air pollution are to ban cars and control industry.
- e. this city a better place to live?
- Complete the conversation with the sentences above.
  - A: What are the best ways to make this city a better place to live?
  - **B:** Well, _____
  - A: That's right.
  - B: I agree.
  - **B:** Maybe it's time to share our ideas with the mayor. Get out your phone.

A: Yes. Good air quality is key.



### 1 Would rather and would prefer page 51

In negative statements with would rather and would prefer, the word not comes after the verbs: I'd rather not/I'd prefer not to take any courses this semester. (NOT: I wouldn't rather/I wouldn't prefer to . . .)

W	rite questions and responses using the words in parentheses.
1.	A: Would you prefer to take classes during the day or at night?
	(prefer / take classes / during the day / at night)  B:
	(rather / take classes / at night)
2.	A:
	(rather / study / business / education)
	(prefer / become / a teacher)
3.	A:
	A:(prefer / sign up for / an art course / a computer course)
	(prefer / not / take / any classes this semester)
4.	
	A: (rather / take up / an individual sport / a team sport)
	B:
	(rather / not / take up / either)
Ву	+ gerund to describe how to do things page 53
	In negative sentences that express comparison with by + gerund and but, not
	comes before by: A good way to improve your accent is <b>not by watching</b> TV
	<b>but by talking</b> to native speakers. In negative sentences with by that give advice without a comparison, not comes after by: A good way to improve your accent is
	by not imitating non-native speakers.
Сс	ombine the two ideas into one sentence using by + gerund.
1.	You can build your vocabulary. Write down new words and expressions.
	One way to build your vocabulary is by writing down new words and expressions.
2.	There is a good way to improve your accent. You can mimic native speakers.
3.	Students can improve their listening skills. They can listen to English-language podcasts
4.	Hardworking students improve their grammar. They don't repeat common mistakes.
5.	You can become fluent. Don't translate everything. Try to think in English.
6.	You can become a good conversationalist. Don't just talk with others.  Talk to yourself when you're alone, too.



### Get or have something done page 59

 Sentences with get/have + object + past participle are passive. But Don't use any form of be before the past participle: Where can I have my watch fixed? (NOT: Where can I have my watch be fixed?)

Rewrite the statements as questions with Where can I get/have . . . ? Then complete B's answers with the information in parentheses. 1. I want to have someone shorten these pants. A: Where can I have these pants shortened? B: You can have them shortened at Tim's Tailoring. (at Tim's Tailoring) 2. I need to get someone to repair my computer. (at Hackers Inc.) 3. I need to have someone prepare my taxes. B: ______ (by my accountant) **4.** I'd like to get someone to cut my hair. A: _____ B: (at Beauty Barn) **5.** I need to have someone paint my apartment. A: _____ B: _____ (by Peter the Painter) 2 Making suggestions page 61 ■ Use the base form of a verb – without to – after Maybe you could . . . and Why don't you . . . ?: Maybe you could join a book club. (Not: Maybe you could to join a book club.) Why don't you join a book club? (NOT: Why don't you to join a book club?) Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. A: I'm having trouble meeting people here in the city. Any ideas? B: I know it's hard. Why don't you ______ (join) a gym? That's usually a good place to meet people. Or maybe you could ______ (take) a class at the community college. A: What about _____ (check out) the personal ads? Do you think that's a good way to meet people? B: I wouldn't recommend doing that. People never tell the truth in those ads. But it might be a good idea _____ (find) a sports team. Have you thought about _____(play) a team sport – maybe baseball or volleyball? A: I'm not very good at most sports, but I used to play tennis. B: There you go! One option is ______ (look up) tennis clubs in the city

and see which clubs have teams people can join.

A: Now, that's a great idea. And I could always use the exercise!



### Referring to time in the past page 65

- Use since with a particular time: The UN has been in existence since 1945. Use for with a duration of time: The UN has been in existence for about the last 70 years.
- Use in and during with a specific period of time: Rock 'n' roll became popular in/during the 1950s.
- Use from and to to describe when something began and ended: World War II lasted from 1939 to 1945.

Complete the conversation with the words in the box. (Use some of the words more than once.)

a	go	during	for	from	in	since	to								
	M0000	TO SHALL SHEET													
۹:	Неу	, Dad. D	id you	use to	lister	n to the	Beatl	es?							
3:	Of	course. Ir	n fact,	l just lis	stene	d to or	ne of th	neir recor	ds a	few da	ys		ag	0	
	Dο	you reali	ze tha	t the Be	eatles	s's mus	ic has i	nfluence	d oth	er mus	icians				
	ove	r 50 year	rs? The	ey were	the	greates	st!								
۹:	We	ll, I just fo	ound s	some in	teres	ting inf	ormat	ion about	t ther	n. I'll re	ead it	to y	you:	: "The	
	Bea	itles were	e a we	ll-know	n Brit	tish bar	nd			the '	1960s.	Th	ey p	perfor	med
	tog	ether			1	0 years	s <b>–</b>			_ 1960					_
	197	'0			2003	B, the B	eatles	released	Let i	t Be, e	ven th	ouç	gh c	one of	
	the	original	memb	ers hac	l bee	n dead				1980 a	and an	oth	ier h	nad di	ed
								n had be							
	and	l was in t	he stu	dio safe	≥			34 yea	ars be	efore th	ne nev	v, re	emix	ked al	bum
	was	released	∄.″												
B:	Tha	it <i>is</i> intere	esting	. It's pre	etty a	mazing	that p	people ha	ave lis	stened	to the	е В∈	eatle	es	
	*******			_ both :	the tv	ventiet	h and	the twent	ty-firs	st centi	uries, i	isn'	t it?	,	

### 2 Predicting the future with will page 67

In sentences referring to time, the preposition by means "not later than." Don't confuse by with within, which means "some time during." Use by with points in time; use within with periods of time: By 2050, we will have eliminated starvation. around the world. (NOT: Within 2050, . . .) Within the next five years, people will have invented mobile phone apps for nearly everything! (NOT: By the next five years, . . .)

Circle the correct verb forms to complete the conversation.

- A: What do you think you will do / will be doing five years from now?
- B: I'm not sure. Maybe I will get / will have gotten married by then. How about you?
- A: I will be finishing / will have finished medical school, so I will be doing / will have done my internship five years from now.
- B: So you won't be living / won't have lived around here in five years, I guess. Where do you think you will live / will have lived?
- A: Wherever I get my internship.



### Time clauses page 73



Use the past perfect in the main clause with until and by the time. This shows that one of the past events happened before the other: Until I got my driver's license, I had always taken public transportation. By the time I got my driver's license, all of my friends had already gotten theirs.

Circle the correct time expression to complete each sentence.

- 1. After / (Until) I traveled overseas, I hadn't known much about different cultures.
- 2. After / Before I got a full-time job, I had to live on a very limited budget.
- 3. By the time / Once I finished high school, I had already taken three college courses.
- 4. As soon as / Before I left for college, my mother turned my room into her office.
- 5. Once / Until I left home, I realized how much my family meant to me.
- 6. By the time / The moment you have a child, you feel totally responsible for him or her.

2	Expressing regret an	d describing hypothetical situations	page 7

(Not: If I'd finished college, I'd have had a better job now.)

 Conditional sentences describing hypothetical situations often refer to both the present and the past: If I'd finished college, I'd have a better job now. present

١	VVI	rite sentences with should (not) have to express regret about each person's situation.
	1.	Sarah was very argumentative with her teacher, so she had to stay after school.  Sarah shouldn't have been argumentative with her teacher.
	2.	Ivan didn't save up for a car, so he still has to take public transportation.
	3.	Jon was very inactive when he was in college, so he gained a lot of weight.
	4.	Lisa didn't stay in touch with her high school classmates, so now she has very few friends
	5.	Tony didn't study Spanish in school, so he's not bilingual now.
	Re	ewrite your sentences in part A, changing them to hypothetical situations.

Rev	vrite your sentences in part A, changing them to hypothetical situations.
1.	If Sarah hadn't been argumentative with her teacher, she wouldn't have had to stay after school.
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	



### 1 Describing purpose Page 79

- Don't use for immediately before an infinitive: To have a successful business, you need a lot of luck. (Not: For to have a successful business, you need a lot of luck.)
- A Complete the sentences with in order to or in order for. 1. <u>In order for</u> a supermarket to succeed, it has to be clean and well organized. 2. _____stay popular, a website needs to be accurate and visually attractive. 3. _____ run a profitable furniture store, it's important to advertise on TV. **4.** _____ a restaurant to stay in business, it needs to have "regulars" – customers that come often. **5.** _____ establish a successful nail salon, it has to have a convenient location. **6.** _____ an online business to survive, it needs to have excellent pictures of the merchandise it's selling. Rewrite the sentences in part A without In order. 1. For a supermarket to succeed, it has to be clean and well organized.

### 2 Giving reasons page 81

The state of the s

- Because and since have the same meaning, and they can begin or end a sentence: Because/Since the food is always fantastic, Giorgio's is my favorite restaurant. = Giorgio's is my favorite restaurant because/since the food is always fantastic.
- Don't confuse because and because of. Because introduces an adverb clause and is followed by a subject and verb, while because of is a preposition and is followed by a noun object: Because Giorgio's is so popular, we should get there early. Giorgio's is popular because of its food and service.

Circle the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A: I had to go downtown today because / because of / due to I needed to mail a package at the post office. **Due to / For / Since I** was only a few blocks from Main Street, I went over to Martin's. Did you know that Martin's has gone out of business? I'm so upset!
- B: That's too bad, but I'm not surprised. A lot of family-owned shops are closing because / because of / since the construction of shopping malls.
- A: Yeah, and don't forget about all the megastores that are popping up everywhere. Because / For / The reason why people prefer to shop there is to save money. Everyone loves a megastore because / due to / since the low prices and the huge selection.
- B: Not me! I loved Martin's for / since / the reason that their beautiful clothes and friendly salespeople. When you were there, you almost felt like family. You'll never get that at a megastore!



### 1 Past modals for degrees of certainty page 87

■ Use the past modal could have to express possibility. BUT Use couldn't have when you are almost 100% sure something is impossible: I suppose he could have gotten stuck in traffic, but he couldn't have forgotten his own birthday party.

Complete the conversations with past modals must (not) have, could (not) have, or may/might (not)

have. Use the degrees of certainty be possible.)	and the verbs in parentheses. (More than one answer may
1. A: Yoko still hasn't called me b	ack.
	n_your message. (it's possible – not get)
2. A: What's wrong with Steven?	
•	the news. His dog ran away. (it's almost
certain – not hear)	
3. A: I went to see the Larsens to	day, but they didn't answer the door.
<b>B:</b> Was their car there? If so, the (it's possible – be)	ney in the backyard.
4. A: Fabio said he was going to	the party last night, but I didn't see him.
<b>B:</b> Neither did I. He	there then. (it's not possible - not be)
5. A: I can't find my glasses, but	
<b>B:</b> You	them at the office. (it's possible – leave)
6. A: Marc's new car looks really	expensive.
B: Yes, it does. It	a fortune! (it's almost certain – cost)
■ In advice with would have, the sp Read each situation and choose t an alternative past action.	
Situation	Judgment/Suggestion
1. Sue forgot her boyfriend's birt	
2. Tim got a speeding ticket.	
3. Ruth still hasn't paid me back.	<b>c.</b> He should have told the truth.
4. Bill lied to us.	<b>d.</b> He shouldn't have gone over the limit.
5. I spent an hour making Joe dir	nner, <b>e.</b> She should have brought something.
and he didn't even thank me.	
6. Carol came over for dinner em	pty-handed

### 1 The passive to describe process page 93

The modals have to and need to must agree with the subject; other modals, like may be, have only one form: Each character has to/needs to be drawn by the animators.

Pu	t the words in the correct order to make sentences.
1.	overnight / business / A / started / small / isn't / . <u>A small business isn't started overnight.</u>
2.	to / plan / business / a / written / First, / be / has / .
3.	research / Next, / done / be / market / should / .
4.	needs / competition / to / the / Then / identified / be / .
5.	online / ads / posted / be / Classified / may / .
6.	work / are / employees / hired / can / start / the / so / Finally, / .

### 2 Defining and non-defining relative clauses page 96

- Use either who or that in defining relative clauses about people: A set designer is an artist who/that makes important contributions to a theater production, But Use only who in non-defining relative clauses about people: A set designer, who makes important contributions to a theater production, has to be very creative. (NOT: A set designer, that makes . . . )
- Use commas before and after a non-defining clause: A gossip columnist, who writes about celebrities and scandals, often gets to go to fabulous parties.

Combine these sentences with who or that. Add a comma wherever one is necessary.

1. A cartoon animator creates animated scenes for movies and games. He or she needs to have a high level of technical know-how.

A cartoon animator, who needs to have a high level of technical know-how, creates animated scenes for movies and games.

- 2. A screenwriter is a talented person. He or she develops a story idea into a movie script. A screenwriter is a talented person that develops a story idea into a movie script.
- 3. Voice-over actors are usually freelancers. They give voice to characters in animated movies and video games.
- 4. Casting directors choose an actor for each part in a movie. They have usually been in the movie business for a long time.
- 5. High-budget movies always use big stars. The stars are known around the world.
- 6. Movie directors are greatly respected. They "make or break" a film.



### 1 Giving recommendations and opinions page 101

Ought to has the same meaning as should, but it's more formal: Traffic signs ought to be obeyed. = Traffic signs should be obeyed.

	student committee is discussing rules for their school. Complete speaker B's sentences th appropriate passive modals. (More than one answer is possible.)
1.	<ul><li>A: Students must be required to clean off the cafeteria tables after lunch.</li><li>B: I disagree. Students <u>shouldn't be required</u> to do that. That's what the cafeteria workers are paid to do.</li></ul>
	A: Teachers shouldn't be allowed to park in the student parking lot.  B: Why not? Teachers to park wherever a space is available.  After all, they're here for us.
	A: A rule has to be made to ban the use of cell phones in school.  B: I don't think a rule Students may need their phones for emergency purposes.
	A: Students mustn't be permitted to use calculators during math exams.      B: Sometimes we to use them, especially when we're being tested on more complicated concepts than simple arithmetic.
	A: Something has got to be done to control the noise in the hallways.  B: Students to talk to each other between classes, though.  They aren't disturbing anyone when classes aren't in session.
6.	A: Teachers must be required to remind students about important exams.  B: That's unnecessary. On the contrary, students to follow the syllabus and check important dates on the course websites.
	Tag questions added to statements in the simple present and simple past use the corresponding auxiliary verb in the tag: You agree with me, don't you? You don't agree with me, do you? You paid the rent, didn't you? You didn't pay the electric bill, did you?
	neck (🗸) the sentences if the tag questions are correct. If they're incorrect, rite the correct tag questions.
1.	Food is getting more and more expensive, is it?isn't it
3. 4. 5.	People don't buy as many fresh fruits and vegetables as they used to, don't they?  We have to buy healthy food for our children, don't we?  Many children go to school hungry, won't they?  Some people can't afford to eat meat every day, don't they?
7.	We can easily live without eating meat every day, can we?

2

### 1 Talking about past accomplishments Page 107

When talking about past accomplishments and including a specific time, use the simple past - not the present perfect: I was able to complete my degree last year. (NOT: Ifve been able to complete my degree last year.)

Complete the sentences about people's accomplishments. Use the verbs in parentheses. (More than one answer is possible.)

In the last 5 years, Ana	
1. <u>managed to finish</u>	(finish) college.
2	(pay) all her college loans.
3.	(start) her own company.
4.	(move) to the city.
5	(make) some new friends.
In the past year, Bill	
6	(buy) a new car.
7	(take) a vacation.
8.	(get) a promotion at work.
9	(learn) to cook.
10	(visit) his grandparents in the south.

### 2 Describing goals and possible future accomplishments **page=109**

■ When talking about future accomplishments and goals, use in to refer to a period of time: I hope I'll find a new job in the next two months. Use by to talk about a time limit in the future: I hope I'll find a new job by the end of September. = I hope I'll find a new job not later than the end of September.

Complete the conversation. Use the verbs in parentheses. (Sometimes more than one answer is possible.)

Louise:	So, Mike, what do yo	u h <mark>ope you _will</mark> h <i>ave acco</i> mpl	ished (accomplish) five years from now?
Mike:	I hope I	(complete) medic	al school, and I
	(start) my residence i	n a good hospital.	
Louise:	What about your per	sonal goals? What	(achieve) by then?
Mike:	Well, I	(meet) that special	someone, and, maybe,
	l	(get) married by then. W	hat about you? What are your goals?
Louise:	Well, I hope I	(finish) culin	ary school in the next five years,
	and I	(manage) to work w	ith some famous chef.
Mike:	Good plan! What abo	out opening your own restaura	nt?
Louise:	That will take some n	nore time, but by the time I'm	35, I hope I
		(open) my own bistro – Cl	nez Louise.
Mike:	I can hardly wait. I jus	t love your food.	

# Grammar plus answer key

### Unit 1

#### Relative pronouns

- A: Ana, have you met Clint the guy X Laurie is going to
- Oh, Clint and I have been friends for years. In fact, I'm the one who/that introduced Laurie and Clint.
- A: Do you think they're right for each other?
- B: Definitely. They're two people **who/that** have a lot in common but not too much.
- A: What does that mean?
- B: Well, you don't want a partner who/that doesn't have his or her own interests. Couples who/that do everything together usually don't last very long.
- A: I guess you're right, but the opposite isn't good, either. My last girlfriend was someone X I had nothing in common with. She wasn't the kind of girl X I could talk to easily.
- B: Well, you can talk to me easily. . .

### It clauses + adverbial clauses with when

- 2. I hate it when I don't have enough time to study for an
- It doesn't bother me when friends talk to me about their problems.
- It embarrasses me when I forget a co-worker's name.
- Hove it when my friends send me videos.
- It upsets me when I have to wait for someone.

### Unit 2

#### Gerund phrases

- My brother's very interested in becoming a flight attendant. He dreams about traveling to new places.
- 2. I'm excited about taking a Japanese class next semester. I enjoy **learning** languages.
- You wouldn't like working in a restaurant. You'd get tired of standing on your feet throughout the long shifts!
- 4. Our teacher is very good at solving problems. Maybe she should think about changing careers to become a guidance
- Making a living as a photographer could be challenging. Having an impressive portfolio is really important to attract new clients and employers.

### 2 Comparisons

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- 2. A college professor earns more than an elementary school
- Nurses have worse hours than psychiatrists.
- Working as a police officer is as dangerous as being a
- 5. A taxi driver isn't as well paid as an electrician.
- 6. Being a tour guide is less interesting than being an actor.

### Requests with modals, if clauses, and gerunds

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- 2. A: Is it OK if I use your computer?
  - B: You can use it, but please don't drink near it.
  - A: Would you mind giving me a ride to class?
  - B: I'd be glad to. What time should I pick you up?
- 4. A: Can you help me move on Saturday?
  - B: I'm sorry. I'm busy all weekend.
- A: Would it be all right if I had another piece of pie?
  - B: Yes, of course! Just pass me your plate.
- 6. A: Could you lend me your red sweater?
  - B: Sorry. I don't like it when other people wear my clothes.

### Indirect requests

- 2. Can you ask Susie if she wants to hang out with me?
- Can you ask/tell Susie to text me?
- 4. Can you ask Susie if she knows my address?
- Could you tell Susie not to forget to write? 6. Can you ask Susie what she's doing on Saturday?
- 7. Could you ask Susie if she has plans on Sunday?

### Unit 4

### Past continuous vs. simple past

- 1. A: How did you break your arm?
  - B: It's a crazy story! Ramon and I were riding our bikes in the park when a cat ran out in front of me. I was going pretty fast, so when I tried to stop, I went off the road and **fell**.
  - That's terrible! Did you go to the hospital after it happened?
  - Yes. Luckily, we weren't too far from City Hospital, so we went there.
- You'll never guess what happened to me this morning!

  - A: Well, I was brushing my teeth when suddenly the water went off. I had toothpaste all over my mouth, and I couldn't wash it off.
  - So what did you do?
  - A: Fortunately, I had a big bottle of water in the refrigerator, so I used that water to rinse my mouth.

### Past perfect

- 2. We had finished cleaning the house when our guests
- Someone robbed my house yesterday because I had left the window open.
- There was no food in the house because we had forgotten to stop at the supermarket.
- I had called her three times when she finally answered.
- I knew about the problem because your brother had told me about it.

### Unit 5

#### Noun phrases containing relative clauses

- 2. a. Two things (that) I'd be very interested in are the food and the music.
  - The food and the music are two things (that) I'd be very
- Something (that) I'd be worried about is not understanding the customs.
  - Not understanding the customs is something (that) I'd be worried about.
- Two people (who/that) I'd stay in touch with are my brother and sister.
  - My brother and sister are two people (who/that) I'd stay in touch with.
- 5. a. One thing (that) I'd feel insecure about is speaking a new language.
  - Speaking a new language is one thing (that) I'd feel insecure about.

### Expectations

- 2. When a friend sends you an email, you're expected to reply within a few days.
- 3. If you want to visit someone, it's not acceptable to show up without calling first.
- 4. If you invite a married couple to dinner, it's the custom for them to sit across from each other.
- When you go to a birthday party, you're supposed to bring a gift.

### Unit 6

### Describing problems 1

- A: Oh, no! These jeans have a tear in them.
  - And they are stained, too.
- A: This table has some damage on top.
- I know. The wood **is scratched** because my son drags his toy cars on it.
- 3. A: Why are you drinking out of that glass? It has a chip in
  - B: Oh, I didn't see it. That's why it is leaking.
- Someone hit my car today. Look! The door has a dent
  - B: I see that. Your back light is broken, too.

- 5. A: I bought this blouse yesterday, but I have to take it back. There is a hole in it.
  - B: It's really cute, but that's not the only problem. It has a stain on it, too.

### Describing problems 2

- A: Look at this place! A lot of work needs to be done before
- You're not kidding. Let's make a list. First, the walls need
- A: Right. And the windows need to be washed. Add the rug to your list: It really needs to be cleaned. Do you think it needs to be dry-cleaned?
- No, I think we can do it ourselves. It needs shampooing. We can rent a machine for that.
- And what about the ceiling fan? I think it needs to be replaced. Fans aren't too expensive.
- OK. I've added it to the list. And what should we do with all this old furniture?
- A: It needs to be thrown out! I think the landlord should take care of that, though.

В

I keep having technical problems. My computer keeps crashing, and my printer keeps jamming. I have to keep putting a new battery into my mouse because it keeps dying. The letters on my keyboard keep sticking, too. I keep thinking things will get better, but they just keep getting worse. Time for some new electronics!

### Unit 7

Passive with prepositions

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- Our soil is being contaminated due to the use of pesticides on fruits and vegetables.
- Infectious diseases have been spread through improper disposal of medical waste.
- Many different species are being endangered due to the destruction of their habitats.
- Our air quality has been affected because of deforestation to make paper products.
- 6. Smog pollution has been reduced as a result of hybrid cars.

### Infinitive clauses and phrases

2. b 3. d 4. c 5. a

В

- B: Well, one way to improve people's quality of life is to help them feel safe.
- That's right. And the best way to do that is to create a larger police force.
- l agree. Another way to make people safer is to make the air healthier.
- Yes. Good air quality is key. The best ways to reduce air pollution are to ban cars and control industry.
- Maybe it's time to share our ideas with the mayor. Get out your phone.

### Unit 8

Would rather and would prefer

1. A: Would you prefer to take classes during the day or at night?

B: I'd rather take classes at night.

2. A: Would you rather study business or education?

B: I'd prefer to become a teacher.

- A: Would you prefer to sign up for an art course or a computer course?
- B: I'd prefer not take any classes this semester. 4. A: Would you rather take up an individual sport or a team
  - sport? B: I'd rather not take up either.

By + gerund to describe how to do things

- 2. A good way to improve your accent is by mimicking native speakers.
- Students can improve their listening skills by listening to English-language podcasts.
- Hardworking students improve their grammar by not repeating common mistakes.
- You can become fluent not by translating everything but by trying to think in English.
- You can become a good conversationalist not just by talking with others but by talking to yourself when you're alone, too.

### Unit 9

### Get or have something done

- A: Where can I get/have my computer repaired?
  - You can get/have it repaired at Hackers Inc.
- A: Where can I get/have my taxes prepared?
  - B: You can get/have them prepared by my accountant.
- 4. A: Where can I get/have my hair cut?
  - B: You can get/have it cut at Beauty Barn.
- 5. A: Where can I get/have my apartment painted?
  - B: You can get/have it painted by Peter the Painter.

#### **Making suggestions**

- A: I'm having trouble meeting people here in the city. Any ideas?
- I know it's hard. Why don't you join a gym? That's usually a good place to meet people. Or maybe you could take a class at the community college.
- What about checking out the personal ads? Do you think that's a good way to meet people?
- I wouldn't recommend doing that. People never tell the truth in those ads. But it might be a good idea to find a sports team. Have you thought about playing a team sport - maybe baseball or volleyball?
- A: I'm not very good at most sports, but I used to play tennis.
- There you go! One option is to look up tennis clubs in the city and see which clubs have teams people can join.
- Now, that's a great idea. And I could always use the exercise!

### Unit 10

### Referring to time in the past

- A: Hey, Dad. Did you use to listen to the Beatles?
- B: Of course. In fact, I just listened to one of their records a few days ago. Do you realize that the Beatles's music has influenced other musicians for over 50 years? They were the
- Well, I just found some interesting information about them. I'll read it to you: "The Beatles were a well-known British band during/in the 1960s. They performed together for 10 years - from 1960 to 1970. In 2003, the Beatles released a new version of their classic album Let it Be, even though one of the original members had been dead since 1980 and another had died in 2001. The original album had been recorded in 1969 and was in the studio safe for 34 years before the new, remixed album was released.
- That is interesting. It's pretty amazing that people have listened to the Beatles in both the twentieth and the twenty-first centuries, isn't it?

### Predicting the future with will

- A: What do you think you will be doing five years from now?
- I'm not sure. Maybe I will have gotten married by then. How about you?
- I will have finished medical school, so I will be doing my internship five years from now.
- So you won't be living around here in five years, I guess. Where do you think you will live?
- A: Wherever I get my internship.

### Unit 11

#### Time clauses

- 2. Before I got a full-time job, I had to live on a very limited
- 3. By the time I finished high school, I had already taken three college courses.
- As soon as I left for college, my mother turned my room into her office.
- Once I left home, I realized how much my family meant to
- The moment you have a child, you feel totally responsible for him or her.

### Expressing regret and describing hypothetical situations

- Ivan should have saved up for a car.
- Jon shouldn't have been inactive when he was in college.
- Lisa should have stayed in touch with her high school classmates.
- Tony should have studied Spanish in school.

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- If Ivan had saved up for a car, he wouldn't have to take public transportation.
- If Jon hadn't been inactive when he was in college, he wouldn't have gained a lot of weight.
- If Lisa had stayed in touch with her high school classmates, she wouldn't have very few friends.
- 5. If Tony had studied Spanish in school, he would be bilingual

### Unit 12

### Describing purpose

- In order to stay popular, a website needs to be accurate and visually attractive.
- 3. In order to run a profitable furniture store, it's important to advertise on TV.
- In order for a restaurant to stay in business, it needs to have 'regulars" – customers that come often.
- In order to establish a successful nail salon, it has to have a convenient location.
- In order for an online business to survive, it needs to have excellent pictures of the merchandise it's selling.

- To stay popular, a website needs to be accurate and visually 2.
- To run a profitable furniture store, it's important to advertise
- For a restaurant to stay in business, it needs to have "regulars" – customers that come often.
- To establish a successful nail salon, it has to have a convenient location.
- For an online business to survive, it needs to have excellent pictures of the merchandise it's selling.

Giving reasons

- A: I had to go downtown today because I needed to mail a package at the post office. Since I was only a few blocks from Main Street, I went over to Martin's. Did you know that Martin's has gone out of business? I'm so upset!
- That's too bad, but I'm not surprised. A lot of family-owned shops are closing because of the construction of shopping malls.
- A: Yeah, and don't forget about all the megastores that are popping up everywhere. The reason why people prefer to shop there is to save money. Everyone loves a megastore due to the low prices and the huge selection.
- Not me! I loved Martin's for their beautiful clothes and friendly salespeople. When you were there, you almost felt like family. You'll never get that at a megastore!

### Unit 13

### Past modals for degrees of certainty

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- A: What's wrong with Steven?
  - Oh, you must not have heard the news. His dog ran B:
- 3. A: I went to see the Larsens today, but they didn't answer
  - Was their car there? If so, they could have been in the backyard.
- 4. A: Fabio said he was going to the party last night, but I didn't see him.
  - Neither did I. He couldn't have been there then.
- 5. A: I can't find my glasses, but I know I had them at work
  - You might have left them at the office.
- A: Marc's new car looks really expensive.
  - B: Yes, it does. It must have cost a fortune!

### Past modals for judgments and suggestions

### 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. f 6. e

### Unit 14

### The passive to describe process

- 2. First, a business plan has to be written.
- 3. Next, market research should be done.
- Then the competition needs to be identified.
- Classified ads may be posted online.
- 6. Finally, employees are hired so the work can start.

### Defining and non-defining relative clauses

- Voice-over actors, who give voice to characters in animated movies and video games, are usually freelancers.
- Casting directors, who have usually been in the movie business for a long time, choose an actor for each part in a
- High-budget movies always use big stars that are known around the world.
- Movie directors, who "make or break" a film, are greatly respected.

### Unit 15

### Giving recommendations and opinions

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- 2. A: Teachers shouldn't be allowed to park in the student parking lot.
  - Why not? Teachers should be allowed to park wherever a space is available. After all, they're here for us.
- 3. A: A rule has to be made to ban the use of cell phones in
  - B: I don't think a rule has to be made. Students may need their phones for emergency purposes.
- 4. A: Students mustn't be permitted to use calculators during math exams.
  - Sometimes we should be permitted to use them, especially when we're being tested on more complicated concepts than simple arithmetic.
- Something has got to be done to control the noise in the hallways.
  - Students should be allowed to talk to each other between classes, though. They aren't disturbing anyone when classes aren't in session.
- 6. A: Teachers must be required to remind students about important exams.
  - That's unnecessary. On the contrary, students should be required to follow the syllabus and check important dates on the course websites.

### Tag questions for opinions

- 3. do they
- 6. can they

4.

- can't we
- don't they
- aren't they

### Unit 16

#### Talking about past accomplishments

Answers may vary. Some possible answers:

- has managed to pay
- has been able to start
- was able to move
- managed to make 5.
- was able to buy 6.
- has managed to take 7.
- has managed to get
- has been able to learn
- 10. has managed to visit

### Describing goals and possible future accomplishments

- So, Mike, what do you hope you will have accomplished five years from now?
- Mike: I hope I'll have completed medical school and I'll have started / 'd like to have started my residence
- in a good hospital. What about your personal goals? What would you Louise:
- like to have achieved by then? Well, I'd like to have met that special someone, and, Mike: maybe I'll have gotten married by then. What about you? What are your goals?
- Well, I hope I'll have finished culinary school in Louise: five years, and I'll have managed / 'd like to have managed to work with some famous chef.
- Mike: Good plan! What about opening your own restaurant? That will take some more time, but by the time I'm 35, Louise: I hope I'll have opened my own bistro - Chez Louise.
- Mike: I can hardly wait. I just love your food.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: Ex = Exercise, T = Top, B = Below, C = Centre, CR = Centre Right, TR = Top Right, BR = Below Right, TL = Top Left, TC = Top Centre, BL = Below Left, BC = Below Centre, L = Left, R = Right, CL = Centre Left, B/G = Background.

#### Illustrations

Mark Duffin: 39, 115, 119, 120; Thomas Girard (Good Illustration): 86; Dusan Lakicevic (Beehive Illustration): 18, 24; Gavin Reece (New Division): 43.

#### Photos

Back cover (woman with whiteboard): Jenny Acheson/Stockbyte/ Gettylmages; Back cover (whiteboard): Nemida/Gettylmages; Back cover (man using phone): Betsie Van Der Meer/Taxi/Gettylmages; Back cover (woman smiling): PeopleImages.com/DigitalVision/GettyImages; Back cover (name tag): Tetra Images/GettyImages; Back cover (handshake): David Lees/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. v (TL): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images/ Gettylmages; p. v (BR): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. v (BL): track5/E+/Gettylmages; p. v (TR): fstop123/E+/Gettylmages; p. 2 (header), p. vi (Unit 1): Tony Anderson/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 2 (T): Steve West/Taxi Japan/Gettylmages; p. 2 (B): Photolnc/E+/Gettylmages; p. 4 (CR): Thomas Barwick/Iconica/Gettylmages; p. 4 (BR); monkeybusinessimages/Gettylmages; p. 5 (T): Shawna Hansen/Moment Open/Gettylmages; p. 5 (B): Andersen Ross/Stockbyte/Gettylmages; p. 6: Caiaimage/Tom Merton/OJO+/Cultura/Gettylmages; p. 7: Heath Korvola/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 8 (header), p. vi (Unit 2): Kelvin Murray/ Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 8 (TR): Paul Bradbury/Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 8 (Lia): Tetra Images/Brand X Pictures/Gettylmages; p. 8 (Josh): NicolasMcComber/E+/GettyImages; p. 8 (Ed): XiXinXing/GettyImages; p. 8 (Rose): Tim Robberts/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 8 (Jeff): T2 Images/Cultura/Gettylmages; p. 8 (Mei): Yagi Studio/DigitalVision/ Gettylmages; p. 8 (Anna): Ron Levine/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 8 (Mike): Jon Feingersh/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 9 (student): Nycretoucher/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 9 (volunteer): asiseeit/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 9 (business): Thomas Barwick/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 9 (movie set): bjones27/E+/Gettylmages; p. 10: Sue Barr/Image Source/ Gettylmages; p. 11: JP Greenwood/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 12: Edge Magazine/Future/Future Publishing/Gettylmages; p. 13 (T): Gary Burchell/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 13 (C): Hero Images/Gettylmages; p. 13 (B): asiseeit/E+/Gettylmages; p. 14: Juanmonino/E+/Gettylmages; p. 15 (CR): Hero Images/GettyImages; p. 15 (BR): kali9/E+/GettyImages; p. 16 (header), p. iv (Unit 3): Ascent Xmedia/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 16 (T): PeopleImages/DigitalVision/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 16 (B): Tetra Images/GettyImages; p. 17: Maskot/GettyImages; p. 18 (Sara): Tim Robberts/Taxi/GettyImages; p. 18 (Kim); monkeybusinessimages/iStock/ Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 19 (T): Maskot/Maskot/GettyImages; p. 19 (Ex 9): Tetra Images-Rob Lewine/Brand X Pictures/Getty Images: p. 20: Roy Mehta/Iconica/GettyImages; p. 21: Tetra Images/GettyImages; p. 22 (header), p. iv (Unit 4): Tom Merton/Caiaimage/Getty/mages; p. 22 (news): Rune Johansen/Photolibrary/Gettylmages; p. 22 (health): Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice/GettyImages; p. 22 (trending topics): Jess Nichols/EyeEm/Gettylmages; p. 22 (arts): Daniel Allan/Cultura/ Gettylmages; p. 22 (science): Don Klumpp/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 22 (tech): Georgijevic/E+/Gettylmages; p. 23: Tetra Images/Brand X Pictures/Gettylmages; p. 25: Rachel Lewis/Lonely Planet Images/ Gettylmages; p. 25 (Carol): Jetta Productions/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 25 (Milo): JohnnyGreig/E+/GettyImages; p. 26: elvira_gumirova/ Gettylmages; p. 26 (B/G): Anna Bryukhanova/Gettylmages; p. 27: artpipi/ E+/Gettylmages; p. 28: JGI/Jamie Grill/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 29: Matt Dutile/Image Source/GettyImages; p. 30 (header), p. iv (Unit 5); Image Source/DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 30 (T): William King/Taxi/ Gettylmages; p. 30 (B): PBNJ Productions/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 31: Buena Vista Images/DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 32: Nachosuch/ iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 33: John Fedele/Blend Images/ Gettylmages; p. 34 (T): Dave & Les Jacobs/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 34 (B): Kay Chernush/Stockbyte/GettyImages; p. 35 (B): Westend61/ Gettylmages; p. 35 (TR): Rafael Elias/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 36

(header), p. vi (Unit 6): Caiaimage/Trevor Adeline/Caiaimage/ Gettylmages; p. 36 (CR): Peter Cade/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 37 (photo 1): p6opov/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 37 (photo 2): Michael Blann/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 37 (photo 3): Shannon Miller/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 37 (photo 4): xril/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 38 (TR): Creatas/Creatas/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 38 (BR): Mel Yates/Photodisc/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 38 (Leory): Monty Rakusen/Cultura/Gettylmages; p. 38 (Heather): Sam Edwards/Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 40: Jupiterimages/ PHOTOS.com/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 41: Image Source/ Gettylmages; p. 42: Jamie Grill/Gettylmages; p. 43: Klaus Vedfelt/ DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 44 (header), p. vi (Unit 7): Hero Images/ Gettylmages; p. 44 (B): Todd Wright/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 45 (TL): narvikk/E+/Gettylmages; p. 45 (TC): TongRo Images Inc/TongRo Images/Gettylmages; p. 45 (TR): Visuals Unlimited, Inc./Thomas Marent/ Visuals Unlimited/Gettylmages; p. 45 (BL): mshch/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 45 (BC): Marcos Alves/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 45 (BR): Helmut Meyer zur Capellen/imageBROKER/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 46: Michael Krasowitz/Photographer's Choice/ Gettylmages; p. 47: Photofusion/Universal Images Group/Gettylmages; p. 48 (TL): jinga80/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 48 (TR): sestovic/E+/Getty/mages; p. 48 (BL): 101cats/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 48 (BR): inFocusDC/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 49 (TR): Cigdem Sean Cooper/Moment Open/ Gettylmages; p. 49 (BL): Antonio Busiello/robertharding/Gettylmages; p. 50 (header), p. vi (Unit 8): akindo/DigitalVision Vectors/Gettylmages; p. 51: Hill Street Studios/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 52: Wavebreakmedia Ltd/Wavebreak Media/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 53: MarioGuti/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 54 (T): Dave & Les Jacobs/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 54 (B): JGI/ Jamie Grill/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 55: Apeloga AB/Cultura/ Gettylmages; p. 56: John Lund/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 57: mediaphotos/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 58 (header), p. viii (Unit 9): Dusty Pixel photography/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 58 (automotive): Reza Estakhrian/Iconica/GettyImages; p. 58 (car wash): gilaxia/E+/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 58 (computer repair): Tetra Images/GettyImages; p. 58 (security repair): fatihhoca/ iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 58 (carpet cleaning): leezsnow/ E+/Gettylmages; p. 58 (home repair): sturti/E+/Gettylmages; p. 58 (laundry cleaning): kali9/E+/GettyImages; p. 58 (tutoring): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 59 (Jessica): imagenavi/ Gettylmages; p. 59 (Peter): g-stockstudio/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 59 (Barry): Maskot/Gettylmages; p. 59 (Tricia): Andersen Ross/Gettylmages; p. 60: MachineHeadz/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 61: Morsa Images/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 62 (L): James And James/Photolibrary/Gettylmages; p. 62 (C): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 62 (R): Dan Dalton/Caiaimage/ Gettylmages; p. 63: Paul Morigi/Getty Images Entertainment/Getty Images North America/Gettylmages; p. 64 (header), p. viii (Unit 10): Kimberley Coole/Lonely Planet Images/Gettylmages; p. 64 (1975): Jason Todd/DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 64 (1982): Photofusion/Universal Images Group Editorial/Gettylmages; p. 64 (1996); Kimberly Butler/The LIFE Images Collection/GettyImages; p. 64 (2004): Graffizone/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 64 (2006): Future Publishing/Future/Gettylmages; p. 64 (2013): Jacob Ammentorp Lund/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 65 (T): Mark Dadswell/Getty Images Sport/Getty Images AsiaPac/ Gettylmages; p. 65 (B): andresr/E+/Gettylmages; p. 66: Steve Sands/ FilmMagic/GettyImages; p. 67 (T): Walter Bibikow/AWL Images/ Gettylmages; p. 67 (B): ferrantraite/Vetta/Gettylmages; p. 68 (BR): JGI/ Jamie Grill/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 68 (crossing slackline): Ascent Xmedia/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 69 (B/G): vladimir zakharov/ Moment/Gettylmages; p. 69: PASIEKA/Science Photo Library/ Gettylmages; p. 70: Jonas Gratzer/LightRocket/Gettylmages; p. 71 (T): NASA/The LIFE Picture Collection/GettyImages; p. 71 (B): Hero Images/ Gettylmages; p. 72 (header), p. viii (Unit 11): Hero Images/Gettylmages; p. 72 (T): PeopleImages/DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 72 (B): Hero Images/Gettylmages; p. 73: martinedoucet/E+/Gettylmages; p. 74: Jamie Kingham/Image Source/GettyImages; p. 75 (L): Rick Gomez/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 75 (R): Simon Winnall/Taxi/GettyImages; p. 76: Elenathewise/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 77 (R): FilippoBacci/E+/GettyImages; p. 77 (L): Comstock Images/Stockbyte/ Gettylmages; p. 78 (header), p. viii (Unit 12): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 78: Martin Barraud/Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 79: Martin Poole/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 80 (T): Tim Robberts/Gettylmages; p. 80 (B): Chris Ryan/Caiaimage/Gettylmages;

p. 81: Anadolu Agency/Anadolu/Gettylmages; p. 82: Car Culture/Car Culture®Collection/Gettylmages; p. 83 (T): UpperCut Images/ Gettylmages; p. 84: Tetra Images/Gettylmages; p. 85: ullstein bild/ Gettylmages; p. 86 (header), p. viii (Unit 13): Manfred Gottschalk/Lonely Planet Images/Gettylmages; p. 86: Image Source/Gettylmages; p. 87 (L): James Lauritz/Photodisc/Gettylmages; p. 87 (R): RichLegg/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 88 (T): Sweet Wedding/Gettylmages; p. 88 (B): Gogosvm/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 89: LisaValder/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 91 (T): serdjophoto/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 91 (B): Ian Cuming/Ikon Images/Gettylmages; p. 92 (header), p. viii (Unit 14); biones27/E+/Gettylmages; p. 92 (BR); GUILLAUME SOUVANT/AFP/Gettylmages; p. 93 (T): GUILLAUME SOUVANT/AFP/Gettylmages: p. 93 (B): Highwaystarz-Photography/ iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 94 (TL): B. O'Kane/Alamy; p. 94 (TC): Hill Street Studios/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 94 (TR): Tom and Steve/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 94 (CL): Daniela White Images/Moment/ Gettylmages; p. 94 (C): Lucia Lambriex/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 94 (CR): Caiaimage/Sam Edwards/OJO+/Gettylmages; p. 94 (B): Hero Images/ Gettylmages; p. 95 (TL): Mads Perch/Iconica/Gettylmages; p. 95 (TR): Plume Creative/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 95 (BL): Sam Edwards/ Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 95 (BR): asiseeit/E+/Gettylmages; p. 96: Gary Houlder/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 97 (R): FREDERICK FLORIN/AFP/ Gettylmages; p. 97 (L): Tim Robberts/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 98: Image Source/Gettylmages; p. 99 (TL): Vico Collective/Michael Shay/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 99 (TR): Eric Audras/ONOKY/ Gettylmages; p. 99 (BR); Morsa Images/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 100 (header), p. viii (Unit 15): 04linz/iStock/Gettylmages; p. 100: Joe McBride/ Stone/Gettylmages; p. 101: Boston Globe/Gettylmages; p. 102 (T): Toby Burrows/DigitalVision/GettyImages; p. 102 (B): andipantz/iStock/ Gettylmages; p. 103: Maskot/Gettylmages; p. 104: John Lund/Marc Romanelli/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 105: Commercial Eye/The lmage Bank/Gettylmages; p. 106 (header), p. viii (Unit 16): David Trood/ Stone/Gettylmages; p. 106 (T): Hero Images/Gettylmages; p. 106 (B/G): Klaus Vedfelt/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 106 (B): Tetra Images - Daniel Grill/Brand X Pictures/Gettylmages; p. 107: Tara Moore/Taxi/ Gettylmages; p. 108: Ariel Skelley/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 109 (T): Lumina Images/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 109 (B): Nino H. Photography/Moment Open/Gettylmages; p. 110 (TL): David Malan/ Photographer's Choice/Gettylmages; p. 110 (TC): Sam Edwards/OJO Images/GettyImages; p. 110 (TR): m-imagephotography/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 110 (BR): John S Lander/LightRocket/ Gettylmages; p. 111 (T): Samir Hussein/Wirelmage/Gettylmages; p. 111 (B): AFP/Gettylmages; p. 112: Zero Creatives/Image Source/Gettylmages; p. 113; andresrimaging/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 115 (Gaston): Serge Krouglikoff/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 115 (Melissa): Sam Edwards/OJO Images/GettyImages; p. 115 (Don): Neustockimages/E+/Gettylmages; p. 115 (Emma): Tom Werner/Taxi/ Gettylmages; p. 115 (Mike): Hero Images/Gettylmages; p. 115 (Paola): filadendron/E+/Gettylmages; p. 115 (Joanne): digitalskillet/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 115 (Ren): Stewart Cohen/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 116 (TL): Bluemoon Stock/Stockbyte/Gettylmages; p. 116 (TC): scanrail/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 116 (TR): sihuo0860371/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 116 (CL): Comstock/Stockbyte/Gettylmages; p. 116 (C): EasyBuy4u/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 116 (CR): Rebekah Logan/Moment Mobile/Gettylmages; p. 116 (BL): JosT Elias/Hemera/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 116 (BC): Zoonar RF/Zoonar/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 116 (BR): tiler84/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 118 (TL): Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 118 (TR): Cultura Exclusive/ MoofCultura Exclusive/GettyImages; p. 118 (BL): Alix Minde/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections/GettyImages; p. 121: Pete Marovich/Getty Images News/Getty Images North America/GettyImages; p. 122: Michael Marquand/Lonely Planet Images/GettyImages; p. 123 (TL): Tetra Images/ Gettylmages; p. 123 (BR): doble-d/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 124 (Frida Kahlo): Michael Ochs Archives/Gettylmages; p. 124 (Volkswagen): 8c061bbf 466/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 124 (Alexander): Bettmann/Gettylmages; p. 125 (R): jmb_studio/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 125 (L): jmb_ studio/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 125 (backpack): Songbird839/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 125 (dollar jar): IcemanJ/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 125 (balls): Ian McKinnell/Photographer's Choice/GettyImages; p. 125 (chips): MarkGillow/E+/Gettylmages; p. 125 (video game): Angelo Angeles/ Hemera/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 126 (L): Stuart Dee/ Photographer's Choice/GettyImages; p. 126 (C): Riccardo Livorni/EyeEm/ Gettylmages; p. 126 (R): 3D_generator/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 127: Daviles/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages;

p. 128 (photo 1a): Carl Court/Getty Images News/Getty Images Europe/ Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 1b): Helen H. Richardson/Denver Post/ Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 2a): GabryC/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 2b): Tom Merton/Hoxton/Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 3a): Multi-bits/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 3b); Stuart O'Sullivan/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 128 (photo 4a): scyther5/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 128 (photo 4b): Bread and Butter Productions/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 129 (TR): Dave J Hogan/Getty Images Entertainment/Getty Images Europe/GettyImages; p. 129 (CL): Dan Istitene/Getty Images Sport/Getty Images Europe/ Gettylmages; p. 129 (CR): Allen Berezovsky/Wirelmage/Gettylmages; p. 129 (BL): Fred Stein Archive/Archive Photos/Gettylmages; p. 129 (BR): Bettmann/Gettylmages; p. 130 (L): Image Source/Gettylmages; p. 130 (C): Jen Grantham/iStock Editorial/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 130 (R): Mauro Speziale/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 131: Jay Reilly/UpperCut Images/GettyImages.

# interchange

Video Activity Worksheets

Jack C. Richards

Revised by Lynne Robertson

3



# Credits

### Illustration credits

Andrezzinho: 7, 22; Ralph Butler: 17, 40; Paul Daviz: 6, 18 (*top*), 42; Carlos Diaz: 12, 36; Chuck Gonzales: 5, 14 (*top*), 35, 45; Jim Haynes: 2, 34;

Trevor Keen: 14 (*bottom*), 44; KJA-artists.com: 4, 54; Robert Schuster: 18 (*bottom*), 56; James Yamasaki: 8, 16, 24

### **Photo Acknowledgements**

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: T = Top, L = Left, B = Below, TC = Top Centre, TR = Top Right, CL = Centre Left, C = Centre, CR = Centre Right, BC = Below Centre, BR = Below Right.

p. 2 (T): Fuse/Getty Images; p. 10 (T): damircudic/ E+/Getty Images; p. 21 (B): Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock; p. 22 (T): Steve Dunwell/ Photolibrary/Getty Images; p. 25 (B): kak2s/ Shutterstock; p. 26 (T): Peter Harrison/Photolibrary/ Getty Images; p. 26 (B): U.S. Coast Guard/Science Faction/SuperStock; p. 30 (T): Adalberto R_os Szalay/age fotostock; p. 30 (B): Comstock Images/ Getty Images; p. 32 (BR): Tim Robberts/Riser/ Getty Images; p. 32 (notebook): Igor Bondarenko/ Hemera/Getty Images; p. 32 (TC): © GoGo Images Corporation/Alamy; p. 32 (TR): Nick White/Digital Vision/Getty Images; p. 32 (BL): Masterfile; p. 33 (B): © Erik Isakson/Tetra Images/Corbis; p. 34: forestpath/Shutterstock; p. 38 (CL): 06photo/ iStock/Getty Images; p. 38 (T): © Norbert Michalke/imagebroker/Alamy; p. 38 (BL): David M. Grossman/The Image Works; p. 38 (BR): Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock; p. 38 (C): Mixa/age fotostock; p. 38 (BC): Masterfile; p. 46: Lonely Planet/Getty Images; p. 50: @ Marcia Chambers/db Images/ Alamy; p. 51 (L), p. 51 (CL): Adam Stanford/Aerial-Cam Photography; p. 52 (CL): Scherl/SZ Photo/ The Image Works; p. 52 (CR): Nataiki/Shutterstock; p. 54: © GoGo Images Corporation/Alamy; p. 58 (T): Spencer Platt/Getty Images; p. 60: Brigette Sullivan/PhotoEdit; p. 62: © David Grossman/ Alamy.

### Video credits

Unit 7 ©BBC Worldwide Americas Inc. Used with permission. Unit 10 ©ABC News. Used with permission. Footage from The Crayon Marketing Firm used with permission.

Unit 13 ©A&E Television Networks. All rights reserved. Used with permission. Unit 16 courtesy of *60 Minutes*. ©Copyright CBS News. Used with permission.

# Plan of Video 3

**1 Dream Date** A young woman chooses one of three men for her date on a dating game show.

**Functional Focus** Expressing feelings; describing personalities **Grammar** Clauses containing *it* with adverbial clauses **Vocabulary** Adjectives to describe personalities

**2 Career moves** A career advisor talks about the importance of someone's personality type in choosing a major and profession.

**Functional Focus** Describing personality types **Grammar** Gerunds as subjects and objects **Vocabulary** Words related to jobs and personality types

**3** Common ground A woman asks her friend to look after her younger sister overnight.

**Functional Focus** Asking favors **Grammar** Indirect requests **Vocabulary** Requests and responses

**Around the campfire** Three friends on a camping trip share a spooky story and meet a mysterious stranger.

**Functional Focus** Telling a story in the past **Grammar** Past tense verbs: past continuous, simple past, past perfect

Vocabulary Unusual events

**5 Travel World** Reporters around the world ask people about cross-cultural experiences.

**Functional Focus** Describing customs **Grammar** Expectations: (not) expected to, (not) supposed to, (not) customary to, (not) acceptable to **Vocabulary** Words related to traveling abroad

**6** What's the problem? A couple's hope for a relaxing weekend at a quaint hotel is dashed.

**Functional Focus** Describing problems; making complaints **Grammar** *Need* with passive infinitives and gerunds **Vocabulary** Words to describe problems

**7 Endangered islands** A BBC reporter explains how climate change threatens the island nation of Tuvalu.

**Functional Focus** Describing environmental problems **Grammar** The passive and prepositions of cause **Vocabulary** Words related to the environment and climate change

**8 Tango!** A reporter talks to several people about learning to dance the tango.

**Functional Focus** Talking about learning methods **Grammar** Gerunds and infinitives; would rather and would prefer **Vocabulary** Words related to learning **9 Stressed out** A woman seeks advice from a co-worker on how to relieve stress.

Functional Focus Making suggestions Grammar Making suggestions with gerunds, infinitives, base-form verbs, and negative questions Vocabulary Idioms related to stress

**10** The Virtual Office ABC News presents a report on the changing face of the workplace.

**Functional Focus** Comparing old and new ways of doing things **Grammar** Predicting the future with *will* **Vocabulary** Terms to describe the modern office

**11 Live and learn** A host asks people to share embarrassing stories.

**Functional Focus** Talking about past mistakes **Grammar** Should have/shouldn't have + past participle;

if clauses + past perfect **Vocabulary** Words to describe embarrassment

**12 Good business** A student interviews a local business owner about her secrets of success.

**Functional Focus** Discussing what makes a business successful **Grammar** Infinitive clauses and phrases of purpose **Vocabulary** Words to describe a café

**13 Stonehenge** The History Channel presents current scientific theories on the mysterious origin and purpose of Stonehenge.

**Functional Focus** Explaining past events **Grammar** Past modals for degrees of certainty **Vocabulary** Words to describe an ancient civilization

**14 Making music** A look at how a song is written, is produced, and gets played on the air.

**Functional Focus** Describing the steps in a process **Grammar** The passive to describe process **Vocabulary** Words related to music production

**15** The streets of Montreal A reporter in Montreal, Quebec, Canada, interviews people about bicycling in the city.

**Functional Focus** Expressing opinions about city rules **Grammar** Passive modals **Vocabulary** Words related to traffic and safety

**16** The Harlem Children's Zone An interview with Geoffrey Canada, an education reformer in the U.S., excerpted from the CBS News program 60 Minutes.

Functional Focus Talking about challenges Grammar Complex noun phrases with gerunds Vocabulary Words related to education

# Dream Date



# Preview



### **CULTURE**

In North America, many people start dating in their teens and early twenties. They meet at school or work, or they're introduced by friends. On dates, they go out in couples or in groups to movies, sporting events, and meals. Traditionally, the man paid for the date, but modern couples may decide to split the bill or let the person who made the invitation pay for both people.

How do people in your country meet each other? What do friends or dating couples like to do together? Where are some popular places to go? When a man and a woman (or a group of friends) go out together, who pays?





# **VOCABULARY** Personality types

How would you describe the people below? Choose a description from the box.

a good conversationalist easygoing generous ambitious ✓ egotistical straightforward

- 1. Jill is always talking about herself. She thinks she's better than other people.
  - A: I think she's egotistical.
  - B: Yes, Lagree.
- 2. Mike is very relaxed. Nothing seems to upset him.
- 3. Paul always tells people exactly what he thinks. He doesn't hide his feelings.
- 4. Erika has big plans and works hard to achieve them.
- 5. John asks a lot of questions, and he's interested in what I have to say.
- 6. Leah is a great friend. She gives others a lot of her time and energy, and she also forgives others easily.





### **GUESS THE STORY**

Elizabeth is going to choose one of these men to be her date, How do you think she will decide? Who will she choose?







**Bachelor 1** 

**Bachelor 2** 

**Bachelor 3** 

# Watch the video

# **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Look at your answers to Exercise 3. Did you guess correctly?
- f B Check ( $\checkmark$ ) the things Elizabeth said to the bachelors. Then compare with a partner.
- Describe to me your ideal date.
- How old are you?
- What's your favorite sport?
- Tell me two things about yourself: one positive and one negative.
- Finish this sentence: "I think it's disgusting when . . . "
- Finish this sentence: "My ideal date has . . . "

What words describe Elizabeth and the bachelors? Write the correct word under each picture. Then compare with a partner.

easygoing egotistical excited straightforward

The straightforward and the st

# **S** WATCH FOR DETAILS

Correct the mistakes below. Then compare with a partner.

Bachelor 1 is a reporter and a former college soccer coach who loves playing or watching almost every kind of game. Bachelor 2 is a model, who also studies languages. Everyone should recognize him from his latest jeans ad on buses and in magazines. Bachelor 3 is the Director of Educational Programs at a high school. In his free time, he enjoys swimming, running, and dancing. He and Elizabeth went to college together.

# 6 WHO SAID WHAT?

Who said the sentences below? Check  $(\checkmark)$  the correct answers. Then compare with a partner.

correct answers, men compare with a partiter.	Bachelor 1	Bachelor 2	Bachelor 3
<ol> <li>I'd be too embarrassed to tell you the truth.</li> <li>It bothers me when people lie.</li> <li>It's hard to split my time among so many people!</li> <li>I'd take you out for a nice dinner.</li> <li>I think I'm a pretty good friend, very reliable.</li> <li>Well, I'm actually a pretty good guy.</li> <li>I'd probably say I had car trouble.</li> </ol>	0000000	0000000	0000000

# Follow-up

# ROLE PLAY Let's play Dream Date!



# **8** WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the conversation. Then practice it.

Elizabeth is asking the bachelors to complete a few sentences.

Elizabeth:	Bachelor Number 1, finish this sentence:	
	"I it when"	A.
Bachelor 1:	I it when people	
	when I'm	
	the soccer match on TV.	
Elizabeth:	Bachelor Number 3, finish this sentence:	
	"ł when"	
Bachelor 3:	l it's when	
	when I go to a fancy and I don't get	
	the I deserve.	
Elizabeth:	Bachelor Number 2, finish this sentence: "It	me when "



# 9

### **CLAUSES CONTAINING IT WITH ADVERBIAL CLAUSES**

things. I just think people should be less ...... and more ...... and more

Bachelor 2: It ...... me when ... people ...... over unimportant

A Complete the sentences about dates or friendships with phrases from the box. Then add two more statements of your own.

1. I can't stand it when my date arrives late
2. It makes me happy
3. I like it
4. It bothers me
5. It really upsets me
6. It embarrasses me
7
8,

√arrive late
forget to call me
lie to me
make me feel special
send me flowers
talk during a movie

B PAIR WORK Compare your statements with a partner. Which of your partner's statements are true for you?



# 2 Career moves

# **■** Preview



Choosing a career can be difficult if you're not sure what job is best for you. Experts suggest the following to help you make a decision:

- Take a career assessment test to find out what professions are a good match for you.
- Look at your educational and work achievements to determine your strengths and weaknesses.
- Think about your hobbies and free-time activities, and what they say about your interests, abilities, and values.
- Talk with a friend or family member who is a good listener, or consult with a career counselor.

Talk about your career plans. Which skills and abilities would you use in this future career? How is this type of work related to what you want to accomplish in life? How sure are you of your current career choice?



# 2

# **VOCABULARY** Attributes at work

A Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

creative collaborative √ independent physical practical precise

- 1. My brother is very <u>independent</u>, so he prefers to work by himself.
- 3. My boss comes up with the big ideas, but I enjoy planning out the ...... details.
- 4. Building a house requires ...... strength and stamina.
- 5. The best part of working in a team is the ______ process of making decisions together.
- 6. In finance, it's important to be ...... and not make mistakes!

**B** CAIR WORK Describe yourself or someone you know well. Your partner describes the person's personality using one of the words from the box.

A: My friend makes a list of all the things he has to do each day.

B: He sounds like a practical person.



### Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off.

Answer these questions.

- 1. Where is the conversation taking place?
- 2. Who do you think the man and woman are?
- 3. What do you think they are discussing?



# **■** Watch the video



### **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Look at your answers to Exercise 3. Did you guess correctly?
- **B** What personality type did Ms. Auden think would be best suited to the jobs below? Write the correct word under each picture. Then compare with a partner.







repair person



teacher



lawyer



The same of the sa

### **MAKING INFERENCES**

Which statements are probably true? Which are probably false? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

<ol> <li>A conventional type would make a good actor.</li> <li>Good waiters are often social types.</li> <li>An enterprising type would not work for other people.</li> <li>Most accountants are artistic types.</li> </ol>	True	False
<ul> <li>5. Someone who runs his or her own business is an investigative type.</li> <li>6. Mechanics are often realistic types.</li> <li>7. Studying animals in the wild would appeal to some investigative types.</li> </ul>	000000	0000001

# **WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?**

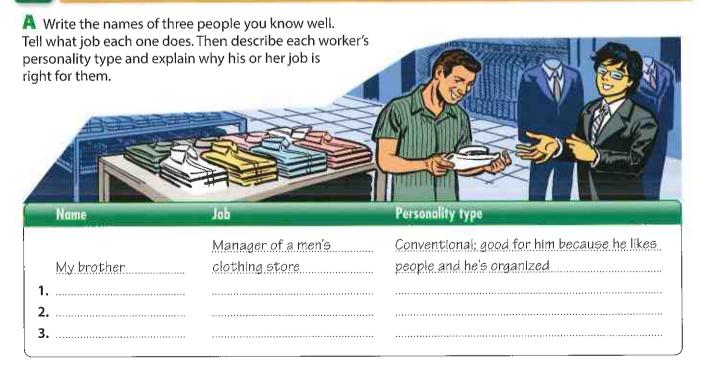
A Read the description of each person's personality type below. Then write notes in the chart about which job at an advertising agency you think the person would enjoy, if any. Be sure to give reasons.

	Manager	Ad designer	Accountant
Bernie is a conventional type.	No; prefers to follow rules and procedures	No: doesn't enjoy creative things as much	Yes; likes details
<b>2.</b> Fatima is an enterprising type.			
3. Yoko is an investigative type.			
<b>4.</b> Carlos is an artistic type.			

**B** Compare your answers with your group. Come up with one other job at the agency that would suit each person.

# Follow-up

# **ARE THEY DOING THE RIGHT JOBS?**



B CAIRWORKS Take turns describing each person you wrote about to your partner. Answer any questions your partner may have.

# Language close-up

# **WHAT DID THEY SAY?**

	•	he conversation. Then poabout personality types.	ractice it.	
Jamie:	conventional, enterp Theand on one What	type is artistic. These imaginative, and they at a time, rather tha should artistic	listic, and are to work multi-tasking pursue?	
Ms. Auden:	is being in	of a	type of people project. So, , graphic	. , web design.
Jamie:	Tell us	•	sonality type is convention	nal.
Ms. Auden:			and orderly. Theylike that.	

# GERUNDS AS SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS Describing a job

A Complete the sentences about a job using the gerund forms of the words and phrases in the box. Then guess the job described.

encourage organize the game schedule work on weekends improve their skills stay in shape ✓ work with children

1. I enjoy working with childr	en; it helps me feel young.
2	is easy with all the running around
I have to do.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3. I don't always enjoy	······································
but that's when our games a	e held.
4. At the end of the season, we	have a big tournament, so I spend a lot of time
	for that event.
5. I help players concentrate on	
6	weaker players helps the whole
team improve.	
Job described:	

B PAIR WORK Choose a job and describe your duties. Can your partner guess

your job?

# 3 Common ground

# Preview



### CULTURE

Read this advice to babysitters in North America.

- Ask parents to show you the location of emergency exits, smoke detectors, and fire extinguishers.
- Make sure you have the telephone number of where the parents are going.
- If the children are up, know their location at all times and never leave them alone for too long. If the children are asleep, check on them about every fifteen minutes.
- Always get approval if you would like to have a visitor.
- In an emergency, call 911. Identify yourself by name, say you are babysitting, and state the problem. Say where you are and give the phone number you are calling from.



Is babysitting popular in your country? What would you enjoy about babysitting? What would be challenging? Write some suggestions or rules for babysitters to add to the list above.



# **VOCABULARY** Requests and responses

Match each request with a response. Then practice the requests and responses.

- 1. Is it all right if I use your phone?
- ........... 2. Would you mind my using your car?
- ........... 3. Is it OK if I drop her off?
- 4. Could you ask her to bring something?
- ........... 5. I was wondering if you could help me out.
- ........... 6. Would you mind if she stayed with you?

- a. No, go ahead. The keys are on the table.
- b. OK. I'll tell her.
- c. Sure. What can I do?
- d. No, sorry. I'm expecting a call.
- e. Not at all. I'd be happy to have her.
- f. Sure. Or I can pick her up.



### **GUESS THE STORY**

Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off.

What do you think the women are talking about?



# Watch the video



# **GET THE PICTURE**

First put the pictures in order (1 to 6). Then write the correct request under each picture. Compare with a partner.

Could you please turn down the volume? Is it OK if I watch the movie now? Could I have something to eat?

Can we watch them?
Would you mind if she stayed with you tonight?
Could we watch the second movie after this one is over?













# 5

# **MAKING INFERENCES**

Which statements are probably true? Which are probably false? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

	True	False
1. Anne is in a hurry.	0	
2. Anne and Megan live together.		<b>a</b>
3. Rachel thinks it will be easy to get along with Megan.		
4. Rachel is worried that Megan might interfere with her work.		<b>(1)</b>
5. Megan doesn't want to do her homework.		
6. Megan doesn't care what food she eats.		0
7. Anne is surprised that Megan and Rachel became friends.		

# **WHO SAID WHAT?**

Who said the sentences below? Check (✓) the correct answers. Then compare with a partner.







	A		
	Anne	Rachel	Megan
<ol> <li>I need a big favor.</li> <li>Hey, you've got the <i>Twilight</i> movies!</li> <li>How's the homework coming?</li> <li>I'm starving.</li> <li>You've never read any of the books or seen the movie</li> <li>You two really seemed to hit it off.</li> </ol>	es? (1)	000000	000000

# Follow-up



### PAIR WORK

Student A: You're planning a big party for this weekend. You want your friend (Student B) to help you. Write your requests in the box below. Then ask your friend for help.

Student B: Accept or decline your friend's (Student A's) requests.

1. I was wondering if I could borrow your vacuum cleaner.	***********
2	,
3.	

A: I was wondering if I could borrow your vacuum cleaner.

B: Of course. Go right ahead!

### PAIR WORK

Student B: You're moving to a new apartment. You want your friend (Student A) to help you. Write your requests in the box below. Then ask your friend for help.

Student A: Accept or decline your friend's (Student B's) requests.

1. Is it OK if I borrow these boxes?	
2.	
3	





# Language close-up

# **WHAT DID THEY SAY?**

Watch t	he video and complete the conversation. Then practice it.	
Anne as	ks her friend Rachel for a favor.	
	Rachel! I am so you're home. I was	
Rachel:	Yeah, Anne?	
Anne:	I	
	just called, and he wants me to go out of town	
	to meet with a client.	
Rachel:		
Anne:	Yeah. But my are out of town, too, and my	
	little sister, Megan, is with me	
	if she stayed with you	
	pick her up	by ten.
Rachel:	No, I at all. What did you	want to
	her over?	
Anne:	How about?	

# INDIRECT REQUESTS Asking favors

A Anne has asked Rachel to look after her apartment while she is away. Anne has several requests for Rachel. Complete their phone conversation with the correct form of the expressions in the box.

Anne:	Would you mind taking in the mail every day ?				
Rachel:	Sure, no problem. I'll leave it on the table.				
Anne:	Great. And could you?				
Rachel:	I'd love to. I've got some fish at home.				
Anne:	And let's see. I was wondering if you could				
	?				
Rachel:	Sure. I'll water them once a day.				
Anne:	Great. Oh, and I was wondering if you'd mind				
	?				
Rachel:	Yeah, I guess. How often does he need a walk?				
Anne:	Only three times a day. Anyway, one more thing. Is it OK if Megan				
	?				
Rachel:	Are you kidding? Of course it's OK. Megan and I get along just fin				

Imagine you are going away for a weekend, and your partner is going to look after your apartment or house. Write several requests. Then take turns asking each other the favors.

feed the fish
spend the weekend
√take in the mail every day
water the plants
walk the dog

# 4 Around the campfire

### Preview



### CULTURE

North Americans enjoy telling stories, especially spooky stories about scary and mysterious things. Spooky stories are popular around the campfire, at sleepovers, and during the fall and winter months, especially near Halloween. People tell and listen to these stories as a way of dealing with their fear of the unknown. It's also fun to experience the thrill of fear while knowing that you're really safe.

Do you enjoy telling and listening to stories? Do you enjoy spooky or scary stories? Why or why not? Are stories about mysterious people and events popular in your culture? If you can, share a well-known story from your culture with some classmates.





# **VOCABULARY** Descriptions

For each pair of pictures write the correct description.

1.



surprised



freaked out

freaked out surprised

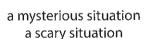
3.



a scream a hoot

2.





4.



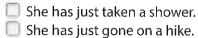


a farm a campground

# **GUESS THE STORY**

Check (✓) what you think is happening in each of the following situations.







She is going to make dinner.She is going to tell a story.

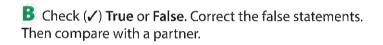


He is greeting the girls.He is telling a spooky story.

### Watch the video

# **GET THE PICTURE**

A Check your answers to Exercise 3. Did you guess correctly?





	True	False	
<ol> <li>Ellen heard a story at the restaurant.</li> <li>Molly doesn't like scary stories.</li> <li>The campground used to be a farm.</li> <li>Ted McShane died in a fire.</li> </ol>	0000	0000	

# **5** WATCH FOR DETAILS

Complete the sentences. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1. Ellen overheard a woman telling this story to her ______daughter ____.

- 4. When the McShanes walked down the street, they always ......
- 6. Mr. McShane's wife was named ......
- 7. The girls get frightened when ...... arrives.



# **MAKING INFERENCES**

Which statements are probably true? Which are probably false? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

DEPERTMENT OF THE PROPERTY OF	frue	Fulse
<ol> <li>Vanessa likes scary stories.</li> <li>The man in the story was a farmer.</li> <li>The fire started because of a hot and dry summer.</li> <li>The park ranger wanted to scare the girls.</li> <li>Vanessa is embarrassed that they were so easily frightened.</li> <li>The ranger is the same person from the story.</li> </ol>	000000	000000

# **■ Follow-up**

# 7

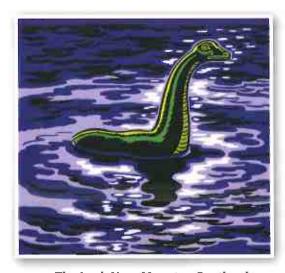
### DO YOU BELIEVE THESE STORIES?

Read the descriptions of the creatures below. Do you believe they ever existed? Do you think they exist now? Have conversations like this:

A: Do you think the Loch Ness Monster exists?

B: I think it's just a story. There are no such things as monsters!

C: I hate to disagree, but many people say that they have seen strange creatures.



The Loch Ness Monster, Scotland

This creature was first seen in 565 BCE, and sightings are still reported every year. Some people believe that it is a dinosaur, an eel, or a type of whale. Many photos of "Nessie" have been taken, but some have turned out to be fakes and others are too dark or blurry to really show the creature.



Alien Big Cats, England

Some people believe that large, wild cats, such as panthers and leopards, exist in some areas of the English countryside. Called "alien" because they are foreign (not extraterrestrial!), none has ever been captured. Photos and videos have never been clear enough to prove their existence, yet there have been as many as 2,000 sightings in a single year.

### Language close-up

### 8

#### WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the conversation. Then practice it.

The ranger surprises the girls while Ellen is telling the story.

..... to see if ..... is all right.

Ellen was ....... us a ...... story when you came by.

Ranger: Campfire ....., huh? That's ..... fun. Well, OK, then.

inger: Campine ...... run: weii, Ok

I'll let you ..... back to it.

Vanessa: Thanks for ...... on us. And sorry ..... the ...... the

Ranger: That's OK. I'm ...... to it. Hey, in the ...... you ......

should take a look ...... full of

### 9

### PAST TENSE VERBS Telling a story

A Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses (past perfect, past continuous, or simple past) to complete this story.

Last Saturday, I (walk) down Elm Street when I (notice) something strange. A very fancy sports car (sit) in front of the entrance to the First Bank building. No one (be) in the car, but the engine (run). I (stop) next to the car to take a look. It was the first time I (see) a car like that. Suddenly, a man with a large bag (run) out of the bank and

..... (jump) into the car. He ...... (drive)

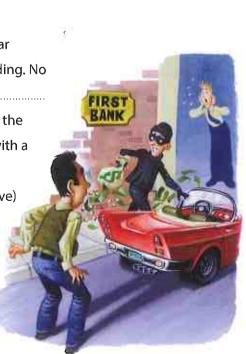
away so fast, he almost ...... (hit) me. Then I realized:

I ...... (witness) a bank robbery!



A: Think of something unusual that has happened to you. Tell a story about what happened.

B: Listen and ask questions. Then change roles.



# **5** Travel World

#### Preview



#### **CULTURE**

Culture shock, the emotional and physical distress you may feel when you visit a foreign country or culture, has three stages. The first stage, sometimes called the "honeymoon" stage, is characterized by exaggerated happiness and excitement. In the second stage, you might feel angry or sad at not being able to communicate or understand the other culture. You might even get physically ill. Finally, in the third stage, you realize that the new culture offers rewards as well as challenges, and you feel ready and able to adapt to a new lifestyle.

Have you ever seen a visitor to your country experiencing culture shock? What kind of person do you think experiences culture shock the most severely? the least severely? Have you ever experienced culture shock? Describe your experiences.



### 2

#### **VOCABULARY** Travel abroad

Put the words below in the word map. Add at least one more word to each list. Then compare answers with a partner.

afraid to make a mistake eating a huge meal at lunch shaking hands
beautiful kissing in public spectacular
confused picturesque surprised

	Feelings afraid to make a mistake
al A	<i>b</i> .
Customs	Vo.
	2 2
	Scenery
(0	
	*(0=2242211=======224====011=====1234

3	<b>GUESS THE FACTS</b>

What things do you think cause people to experience culture shock?

- climate
- families
- greetings
- language

- clothing
- food
- hotels
- transportation

#### Watch the video



#### **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Check your answers from Exercise 3. Then compare with a partner.
- **B** Complete the information for each person.



Camilla



**Andrew** 



Delfino

Lives in:	
Visited:	

Is from:	
Lives in:	

Is from:	
Lives in:	



#### **GUESSING MEANING FROM CONTEXT**

Read these sentences from the video. Guess the meanings of the underlined words. Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. When you get home, you often have some interesting and perhaps humorous stories to tell about your cross-cultural experiences.
  - experiences that made you angry
  - experiences in different cultures
  - experiences in similar cultures
- 2. Rio de Janeiro that <u>picturesque</u> city of beautiful beaches, Carnaval, and the samba.
  - old-fashioned
  - expensive
  - pretty

- 3. You're invading my space.
  - making me uncomfortable
  - 💷 taking too much of my time
  - causing me pain
- 4. It is <u>customary</u> in my culture to have a huge meal in the middle of the day.
  - rare
  - polite
  - usual

### **6** WATCH FOR DETAILS

According to the video, to which country do the following customs refer? Write the name of a country next to each custom.

Brazil

Sweden

Mexico

the United States

Peru



<ol> <li>People shake hands when they meet.</li> </ol>	
2. It's customary to eat a huge meal around noon.	
3. People kiss on the cheek when they meet.	
4. People often eat just a soup and sandwich for lunch.	
5. Bus drivers call out to people on the street.	

### 7

#### WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?

A Which customs and situations discussed in the video would make you feel uncomfortable when visiting a foreign country? Rank them from 1 (most uncomfortable) to 6 (least uncomfortable).

 using public transportation	having only soup and a sandwich for lunch
 greeting someone by kissing on the cheeks	using a private bus system
 eating a huge meal in the middle of the day	greeting someone by shaking hands

**B PAIR WORK** Take turns talking about the customs. Use sentences like these:

One thing I'd be most uncomfortable about . . .

Something I wouldn't be uncomfortable about . . .

The thing that I'd be most uncomfortable about ...

The thing that I'd be least uncomfortable about ...

#### Follow-up



#### **CROSSING CULTURES**

A Choose a country you know well. Make a list of customs that visitors to that country might find different or unusual. Complete the chart.

Country	Customs	

B CAIRWORK Take turns asking about the customs in the countries you and your partner chose in part A.

### Language close-up

### **WHAT DID HE SAY?**

Watch the video to complete the commentary. Then compare with a partner.

Chris Brooks talks about culture shock.

Hi. I'm Chris Brooks to <i>Travel World</i> . Have you ever
to a with a
different ? If you have, you know what
" you get
from being in a new
and may seem are
different. You don't know exactly what you're do.
You may be a little of
making a, you get,
everything. But you get ,
you often have some and perhaps stories
to about your experiences.



### **EXPECTATIONS** Noun, adjective, and verb forms

- $oldsymbol{\mathbb{A}}$  Complete the sentences about expectations with the correct word in parentheses.
- 1. It is ...... (tradition / traditional) to have a large meal at noon in Mexico.
- 2. You are ...... (expected / expectation) to kiss people on both cheeks in Brazil.
- 3. It is ...... (custom / customary) for people to take public transportation in Peru.
- 4. Are you ...... (suppose / supposed) to kiss people on both cheeks in Mexico?
- 5. My family has a ...... (tradition / traditional) of eating dessert at every meal.
- 6. What is the ...... (custom / customary) of greeting people in your country?
- 7. I didn't have any ...... (expect / expectations) about what life was like in Peru.
- 8. What do you ...... (suppose / supposed) I should do when I want more food?
- B PAIR WORK Compare your statements with a partner.



# What's the problem?

#### **■** Preview



#### CULTURE

Travelers in North America looking for quaint, old-fashioned charm or personalized service sometimes choose to stay in a bed and breakfast, or "B & B." Herb and Ruth Boven opened Castle in the Country in Allegan, Michigan. "Our guests come here to relax, enjoy the countryside, or shop at antique markets and specialty shops," says Ruth. Castle in the Country offers special mystery or romance weekends and services such as horse-drawn wagon rides and holiday dinners. "We enjoy meeting guests from different states and countries and showing them what's special about our area."

Have you ever stayed in a B & B? Would you like to stay in one? Talk about different types of hotels in your country with your classmates.

### **VOCABULARY** Problems

Complete the sentences with words from the box. Then match each sentence with a picture. Compare with a partner.

- 1. The room needs cleaning. It's very _____dirty____.
- 3. Oh, no. I spilled jam on my shirt. Now it's ..................................

- 6. I can't open the window, It's ......



















## **GUESS THE STORY**

Check  $(\checkmark)$  what you think is happening in each of the following situations.



The older man is checking in. The older man is giving instructions.



- The couple is here to relax.
- The couple is here on business.



- The man is calling home.
- The man is calling the front desk.

#### Watch the video



#### **GET THE PICTURE**

Complete the chart. Check  $(\checkmark)$  the word that describes each problem. More than one answer may be possible.

	broken	dirty	peeling	scratched	stuck
1. temperature control					
2. paint		0			
3. furniture					
1. window					
5. rug				(a)	

### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Complete the sentences with George, Norman, Ed, or Michelle.

- 1. ..... needs to go to the hardware store.
- 2. ..... says they don't have much luggage.
- 3. ..... thinks the front desk clerk is strange.
- 4. ..... checks the couple into the hotel.
- 5. ..... calls the front desk to report a problem.
- 6. ..... tries to repair the window.
- 7. ..... says it feels cold in the room.
- 8. .... returns after the guests leave.



## **WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?**

PAIR WORK Answer these questions.

- 1. Do you agree with Michelle and Ed's decision to check out of the hotel? What would you have done?
- 2. Think of an experience you've had where there were problems. What were the problems? What did you do to solve them?

#### Follow-up



A WORLD How many problems can you find in the picture below? Take turns describing the problems to each other.



**B** GROUPWORD Now join another pair. Three of you are customers.

The fourth person is the waiter.

Customers: Complain to the waiter about the problems in the restaurant.

Waiter: Offer solutions to the customers' complaints.

Start like this:

Customer 1: Excuse me, but our dinners are cold.

Waiter: Oh, I'm sorry. I'll take them back and heat them up.

Customer 2: OK. That would be fine.

Customer 3: Actually, could I order something else instead?

_	(All Village)		1,11	
	Lanc	uaa	e cl	ose-u
_	Complexed total	Budellude	Dear Diseased	and the second second

### **WHAT DID THEY SAY?**

Ed and Michelle complain to Norman about their room.  Norman: Hi. What's the ?  Michelle: Oh, it's
Michelle: Oh, it's
Norman: the heat  Norman: Well, what's with it?  Michelle: The dial's It came off in my  Norman: That should it.  Ed: That window needs, too.
Ed: The heat
Norman: Well, what's with it?  Michelle: The dial's It came off in my
Michelle: The dial's
Norman: That should
Ed:
It's
Norman: That should
Michelle:?  Norman: You're
Norman: You're
NEED WITH PASSIVE INFINITIVES AND GERUNDS  A Read the list of additional problems at the hotel that Norman needs to fix.
A Read the list of additional problems at the hotel that Norman needs to fix.
Norman's List    the heat is stuck on high   the hair dryer is broken   the wastebasket is full   the rooms are dirty   the chair is damaged   the floors are dirty   empty   wash
1. The heat needs adjusting. / The heat needs to be adjusted.
2
3
4
5
6
Now think of two things that need to be done at your school or at your home. Then write two sentences to describe what needs to be done.

# 7 Endangered islands

#### **■** Preview



#### CULTURE

Scientists estimate that the average temperature on Earth has increased by about 0.6 degrees Celsius (one degree Fahrenheit) in the last century. They call this phenomenon global warming, or climate change. Sea levels have risen dramatically because of global warming, increasing as much as eight inches in some places. Low-lying areas and islands are in danger of being covered by the rising water. Some experts predict that if the rising tides continue, many islands and coastal areas around the world will become uninhabitable.

What do you know about the causes of global warming? What effect do you think rising sea levels might have on your country? What other effects do you think global warming might have?





#### **VOCABULARY** Environmental change

Complete the sentences with phrases from the box. Compare with a partner.

catastrophic event coastal areas global warming climate panel high tide technological fix

- 1. Less than two days after the levees broke in New Orleans during Hurricane Katrina, 80 percent of the city was under water.

  It was a <u>catastrophic event</u>.
- 2. Engineers are likely to search for a ...... to a problem, rather than a natural solution or a change in how people behave.
- 3. Tsunamis are usually more damaging to the ......of a country than the inland areas.
- 4. The government appointed a ...... made up of scientific experts to find out how changing weather patterns might affect the country in the future.
- 5. Many scientists believe that ...... is causing the glaciers to melt.
- 6. During a ....., many areas by the ocean that are usually above ground may be under water.



## **GUESS THE FACTS**

### Watch the first two minutes of the video with the sound off. Which of the following do you think are concerns of people living on the island of Tuvalu?

- cold water
- high tides
- unsafe drinking water

strong winds

- flooding hot weather
  - Watch the video

## 4

#### **GET THE PICTURE**

A Look at your answers to Exercise 3. Did you guess correctly? Correct your answers. Then compare with a partner.

**B** What are some threats faced by the people living on Tuvalu? Match each threat with the correct picture.









- Forecasts show that the tides will continue to get higher.
- 2. The main roads on the island are sometimes flooded.

- 3. The airport runway may disappear.
- 4. Plants won't grow in the salty water.

### 5

#### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Fill in the blanks. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. It's difficult to grow anything on Tuvalu because the soil is too ......
- 2. An Australian system has been monitoring the tides in Tuvalu for ....... years.
- 3. Scientists predict that most coastal areas of Tuvalu will be washed out in ______ years.
- 4. A typical high tide reaches about ..... meters.
- 5. The highest point on Tuvalu is only about ...... meters.
- 6. Without help, Tuvalu can survive for only about ...... more years.
- 7. The island nation of Tuvalu has ......inhabitants.

### **GUESSING MEANING FROM CONTEXT**

	Company of the Assessment of the State					
		n the video. Choose the bes vers. Then compare with a p		nderlined		
. Ind	credibly beautiful, but expensive	incredibly <u>vulnerable</u> .  easily damaged	ancient			
-	e water also <u>surges u</u> floats	p from underground, throu moves sideways	igh the coral the islar rises suddenly	nds are built o	on.	
3. Th	is isn't like other flood fortunate	ds that I've covered, with a terrible	single <u>catastrophic</u> en interesting	vent.		
1. At	the harbor, the rising controlled	swell is <u>monitored</u> by an <i>A</i>	ustralian system.  measured			
5. Th	ese [islands] are so na   steps	arrow, you can cross from come miles	ne side to the other i	in a few short	t <u>paces</u> .	
	Follow-up					
7	FOR OR AG	AINST				
						6
				THE REAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY AND		10 To







A CAIRWORK Imagine you are in charge of an organization that is considering helping the island nation of Tuvalu. List three reasons for and against trying to save these islands.

For	Against

**GROUP WORK** Now join another pair. Discuss the reasons you listed. Use language like this:

In my opinion	On the other hand
That's an interesting idea. However,	That's a good point. Nevertheless,
I feel that	I don't think that



WHAT DID HE SAY?

Watch the video and complete the commentary	Then compare with a partner.
---------------------------------------------	------------------------------

A reporter is talking about what Tuvalu needs to survive.

For the children	of Tuvalu, the	are fun. But for
them to	their	on these islands will
require	international	And with
	11,000 people here, will the	e world
think it's	it? Now, of course	, Tuvalu does get some
	, but not e	enough to keep the
	sea at bay. So the	community
	very soon a difficult	of
to draw a line b	etween wh	o getand
those who don	t. And in the	, people here are getting
ready for	king tide. Right n	ow it's; it's due

to get very

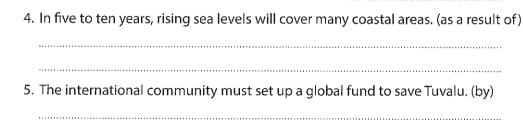


#### THE PASSIVE

..... in about eight hours' time.

Rewrite these sentences from the active to the passive. Use the prepositions in parentheses to indicate the cause. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. King tides are washing out some of Tuvalu's coastal areas. (because of) Some of Tuvalu's coastal areas are being washed out because of king tides.
- 2. Salty seawater is killing off most of the plant life. (due to)
- 3. An Australian system monitors the changes in sea level on Tuvalu. (by)





# 8 Tango!

#### Preview



#### **CULTURE**

Tango dancing began in Argentina and Uruguay in the mid-1800s. The music of tango blended African, Cuban, and European elements. Over time, tango music and tango dancing united people from many different cultures and social classes in South America. As sailors from Argentina traveled to Europe and North America, they taught the dance to local residents, and its popularity spread. Today there are tango schools all over the world, and new styles of the dance are constantly evolving. One of the latest styles, *nuevo tango*, brings in electronic and alternative music and adds new life to this ever-popular dance form.

Why do you think people like to dance? Give as many reasons as you can. What kinds of dances are popular in your country? What kinds have you tried? What kinds of music are popular in your country now? Are there dances that go with each type of music?





#### **VOCABULARY** Learning

A CABWORS What are some phrases used to talk about learning? Match each verb on the left to a word or phrase on the right.

1. decide to

to ski

2. earn

-take lessons

3. brush up on

hitting the ball

4. learn how

a diploma

5. practice

classes

6. take

my skills

- Complete the sentence below with phrases from part A. Change the verb form if necessary.
- 1. I heard you're interested in playing the violin. Did you

decide to take lessons ?



- 2. If you want to get better at tennis, you'll have to .....!
- 3. I already know how to do karate, but I'm taking lessons just to ......
- 4. It's hard to learn to dance by myself. I'm going to ...... with a friend.
- 5. Kim graduated from college last May. She ..... in engineering.
- 6. This winter, James wants to ......

## **GUESS THE FACTS**

Why do you think tango dancing is so popular? What are some ways people can learn or improve tango dancing?

#### Watch the video

## **GET THE PICTURE**

What reasons do people give for wanting to learn the tango? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

- They're just interested in dancing.
- Their friends told them to learn the tango.
- They want to keep fit and have fun.
- The tango is exotic and challenging.
  - They didn't like any other dances.
- The tango has a great rhythm.

### **5** WATCH FOR DETAILS

How do these people recommend learning or improving tango dancing? Match each person with a recommendation.











- ...... By starting with group classes or private classes.
- ...... By practicing with a guy.
- ...... By going to a tango club.

- ..... By practicing hard.
- ...... By taking the initiative and taking a class.

### **WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?**

A How important do you think these qualities are for learning to dance? Rank them from 1 (most important) to 9 (least important).

athletic ability curiosity patience competitiveness intelligence self-confidence willpower

Compare your answers with a partner. Explain how you made your choices. Then talk about these activities. Would your rankings change? Why or why not?

learning a foreign language

learning to play tennis

learning to cook

#### Follow-up

### ADVICE TO LEARNERS

A Think of a sport, game, or activity that you have learned.

Make a list of different ways to learn it.





**Take turns asking and answering questions about the activities** the group members have chosen. Use language like this:

How did you learn to ...? Why do you enjoy ...?

What's the best way to learn . . . ?

What's a good way to improve ...?

Hearned ... by ...

lenjoy ... because ...

The best way to learn ... is by ... A good way to improve ... is to ...



#### Language close-up

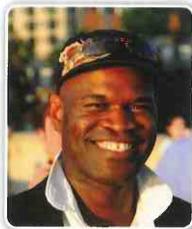
### 8

### WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the conversation. Then practice with a partner.

A dance teacher talks about learning the tango.

Kevin:	Why do you think tango is so?	
Uche:	I think tango is because it's very	
	and it's also very for people, and once	300
	peoplesomething that they find	
	and it's very, I think they	8 2
	very rewarded.	
Kevin:	What do you for people who to	
	learn tango?	- 1
Uche:	l would recommend starting with classes	
	or classes.	
Kevin:	And you've learned the of tango,	
	what's a good way to your moves?	
Uche:	By going out with the people that you've	
	the with, at home, listening to the	
	just feeling very with the music, and then	
	dancing again.	

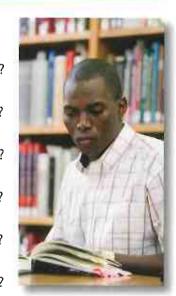


### 9

### **GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES** Talking about preferences

A For each pair of expressions, complete the questions.

	earn a degree / learn for fun
	Would you prefer to earn a degree or learn for fun
2.	learn English in Australia / in Canada
	Would you rather
	learn how to cook / how to dance the tango
	Would you prefer
4.	brush up on skills you already have / learn something new
	Would you rather
5.	read English magazines / English novels
	Would you rather
б.	study in the morning / at night
	Would you prefer



GROUP WORK Ask several classmates the questions in part A. Then share their answers with the class.

"Mari would prefer to start a business. Juan would rather learn to dance at home."

# 9

## Stressed out

#### Preview



### CULTURE

What is stress? There are three main types:

- Mechanical stress, caused by carrying heavy objects, not getting enough exercise, or sleep disorders.
- Mental stress, caused by things such as relationship problems, financial worries, or career concerns.
- Chemical stress, caused by air and water pollution, detergents and cleaning products, and chemicals used in manufacturing.

Our bodies react to stress with the "fight or flight" response; you may want to challenge what stresses you, or you may want to run away!



What other kinds of mechanical, mental, and chemical stresses can you think of? Make a list with a partner or group. How many of these do you think affect you? What are some solutions to stress? What is your favorite way to relax?

### 2

#### **VOCABULARY** Stress

Choose from the expressions in the box to complete the paragraph below. Each expression is used only once.

blow off steam	in knots	take some time off	very relaxing
get some exercise	stressed out	under pressure	what I needed

Last year, I felt completely stres	by my job. Every day it
seemed like I was	from my boss. My stomach was
all the time	. I used to
by complaining to my co-workers, but	that only made them feel stressed,
too! Someone in my office said I shoul	, d
but I felt too tired to go. Finally, my bo	ss suggested, "Why don't you
and go to	health spa for a few days? It'll be
."It turned	out to be just

When I got back, I felt calm and ready to handle anything.



Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off.

Answer these questions.

- 1. What is the woman's problem?
- 2. What do you think the man is telling her?



#### Watch the video



#### **GET THE PICTURE**

lack A Check ( $oldsymbol{\checkmark}$ ) the suggestions for stress relief that Carmen and Hugo talk about.



aromatherapy



dance lessons



hypnotherapy



ice-skating



sleeping



swimming



taking a vacation



talking to friends



yoga



B FAIR WORK Which of the activities above have you tried? Which would you

#### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Why doesn't Carmen like these suggestions for stress relief? Check (✓) the reason Carmen rejects each suggestion.

- 1. skating
- Her skate broke.
- She couldn't find a partner.
- She got hurt.

- 2. dance lessons

- 3. yoga
- It was too slow. It didn't work.

It twisted her in knots. It worked too well.

The lessons were expensive.

- 4. hypnotherapy 5. aromatherapy
- She's allergic to perfumes.
- She already tried it.

## WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?

A CAIBWORL Imagine that Hugo suggests these activities for reducing stress to Carmen. Write the reasons Carmen might give for rejecting them.









playing tennis

running

listening to music

doing aerobics

get hit by a ball

Mow act out Hugo and Carmen's conversation. Start like this:

Hugo: Have you thought about playing tennis? Carmen: I've already tried that, but I got hit by the ball!

#### Follow-up



#### **HOW STRESSED ARE YOU?**

A CARROLL How much stress do you feel in the situations below? Add one more idea and check ( ) your answers. Then compare with a partner. Have conversations like this:

A: How much stress do you feel at school?

B: A lot. I have too much homework every night. How about you?

	none at all	a little	some	a lot
<ol> <li>at school</li> <li>with friends</li> <li>on weekends</li> <li>when visiting relatives</li> <li>when traveling</li> <li>(your idea)</li> </ol>	000000	000000	000000	000000

**B** CINSTAGUIII Ask your classmates about how much stress they feel in the situations. Check (✓) their answers in the chart. Which things are the most stressful? the least stressful?

# The Virtual Office

#### Preview



#### CULTURE

In today's world, people have more choices than ever about where they do their jobs. Many companies are still located in office buildings, but the convenience of the Internet gives businesses new and exciting options. Many jobs, like website development and public relations, can be done from home, a café, or anywhere there's an Internet connection. Some companies also encourage employees to use instant messaging, online discussions, and video conferencing to communicate effectively with co-workers and clients.



What are some virtual jobs you know about? Do you think all jobs will become virtual someday? Why do you think people might not want to work in an office building?



### VOCABULARY Today's office

Match the word in the box to the correct picture below.

commute corporate headquarters cyberspace

kiosk meeting ✓ workspace



workspace









### Language close-up

### 8

### WHAT DID THEY SAY?

	and the second second state the second		
	e video and complete the co	onversation. Then practice it.	
		ssible solutions to her problem.	
	_		
_	There's always	time I	
armen:		sed to me. Oh, a	
		r day, I was in a	
		out the problems	
	<del>-</del>	eople said the"o	
	many times, I		
Huao.	•	about that. That must've been	
		knows. See what I mean?	
		e hypnotherapy	
Hugo:	_	aromatherapy.	
_	?		
Hugo	It's a mass	level theory	
Tiugo.	162 a mas-	sage, but they	
riago.	your skin	_ ,	
	your skin	_ ,	
		_ ,	
9 <b>S</b> A Hugo	your skin	scented oils.  his problems. Write a suggestion	
M Hugo for each	your skin  UGGESTIONS  o would like some advice for of his problems. Use the exp	his problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.  Maybe you could	Why don't you ?
Muga Or each	your skin	his problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.	Why don't you ? What about ?
Have It m	your skin  UGGESTIONS  o would like some advice for of his problems. Use the expense you thought about?  ight be a good idea to	scented oils.  This problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.  Maybe you could One thing you could do is  I never seem to have enough time	What about?
Have It mi	your skin  UGGESTIONS  o would like some advice for of his problems. Use the expense you thought about?  ight be a good idea to	his problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.  Maybe you could One thing you could do is	What about?
Have It mi	your skin  UGGESTIONS  o would like some advice for of his problems. Use the expense you thought about?  ight be a good idea to  ally like to learn Spanish, but etimes I can't finish my work	scented oils.  This problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.  Maybe you could One thing you could do is  I never seem to have enough time	What about?
Have lt mi	your skin  UGGESTIONS  o would like some advice for of his problems. Use the expense you thought about?  ight be a good idea to  ally like to learn Spanish, but etimes I can't finish my work	his problems. Write a suggestion pressions in the box.  Maybe you could One thing you could do is  I never seem to have enough time because I get too many phone cal	What about?

What percentage of employees at IBM do you think work somewhere outside the office?

### **■** Watch the video

### **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Check your answer to Exercise 3. How close was your guess?
- B Check (✓) True or False. Correct the false statements. Then compare with a partner.



	True	False	
1. IBM has 250,000 employees.			
<ol><li>Bob Flavin works as a volunteer at an ambulance corps.</li></ol>			
<ol><li>The CEO of Accenture has an office with his name on the door.</li></ol>			
<ol><li>Accenture employees can reserve a workspace if they need it.</li></ol>			
5. Crayon's workers often meet in the physical world.		175	
<b>6.</b> The reporter met Crayon's CEO in person.			

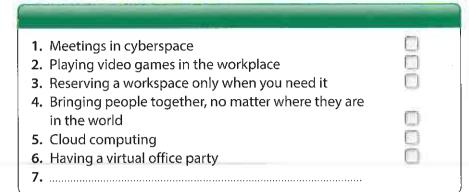
### **MAKING INFERENCES**

Which statements are probably true? Which are probably false? Check ( $\checkmark$ ) your answers and compare with a partner.

	True	False
Bob Flavin works in the same office every day.		0
2. Bob Flavin likes working outside the regular office.		(3)
3. Janet Hoffman would like to have a big comfortable office.		
4. Crayon Marketing has an office building with a rooftop space for parties.		<u>()</u>
5. Crayon workers communicate with each other regularly.		
6. Joseph Jaffe believes that regular offices are necessary.		

## **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Which new ideas about working were mentioned in the video? Check (✓) all the correct answers. Then write one more idea of your own.





#### Follow-up

#### CREATE YOUR OWN VIRTUAL OFFICE

A Imagine you have a new job where you work outside the traditional office building. Complete the chart with the location of the job, when it would begin and end, how you would stay in touch with colleagues, and how you would hold meetings.

Your job:



Location	Hours	Colleagues	Meetings
	,		

**B** Compare your answers in part A with your partner.

A: What is your new job?

B: I am a web developer. I work from home....

### Language close-up

### **WHAT DID THEY SAY?**

Watch the video and complete the commentary. Then compare with a partner.

A TV anchoi	r introduces reporter Betsey	Stark and her story on the v	irtual office.
Anchor:	Finally from us, the virtua	office. For better or	***************************************
	technology and	are creating startli	ing
	in what i	t to be"	
		Betsey Stark is tracking the	
	order of	and	
	begins our series, "The	of Work."	
Reporter:	Imagine a work	with no commute,	no
	corporate	, maybe no	in the
	world at	all. For Bob Flavin, Janet H	offman,
	and Joseph Jaffe, the	is	here.
Bob Flavin:	These days we	so	stuff by
	and thin	gs, um, that it	







### PAST, PRESENT, AND FUTURE

A Complete the sentences below. Use the correct preposition or the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1.	the 1960s, people listened to music on record players. Nowadays, people mostly
	use (use) MP3 players. Some experts believe that people in the future
	(listen) to music through chips in their brains.
2.	the Middle Ages, most people have lived in rural areas and towns. However, this trend
	(change). In fact, most people now(live) in cities.
3.	many years, people didn't spend time on computers and mobile devices. Now, of
	course, they (be) common. Some experts think that in the next few years,
	most people (spend) almost 60 hours a week on electronic devices!

B	PAIR WORK	Write two sentences based on the
info	ormation in the	e table. Then compare your answers
wit	h a partner.	

ı	Average humo	ın lifespan	
	1900	Now	2050
	50 years	78 years	84 years

١.	In 2050, people will live longer than they do now.
2.	
3.	

# 11 Live and learn

#### **Preview**



#### **CULTURE**

Most people remember at least one time when they made an embarrassing mistake – oversleeping and missing an exam, spilling food at a dinner party, calling someone by the wrong name. These mistakes can feel awful at the time. However, experts say that worrying too much about mistakes can keep people from trying new things. Some science suggests that the brain needs to do things incorrectly in order to build new knowledge. In the words of John Enoch Powell,, "The only real mistake is the one from which we learn nothing."

How do you feel when you make a mistake? Do you forget about it quickly, or think about it a lot afterward? What advice would you give a friend who made a mistake?





#### VOCABULARY Mistakes at work

A Put the words in the chart. Then add one more word to each list.

advertising agency	meeting	technology company
√ conference	performance	theater
embarrassed	spellbound	unprofessional

Events	Types of businesses	Feelings
conference		

B FAIR WORK Think about a mistake you made in the past in school or at work. Then take turns asking and answering the questions below.

- 1. What was the mistake you made?
- 2. How did the mistake make you feel?
- 3. What did you learn from the mistake?

### **GUESS THE STORY**

**Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off.** What question do you think the interviewer is asking?







### Watch the video



#### **GET THE PICTURE**

Where did these people's stories take place? Write it under the picture. Add two more pieces of information about each person's story.





Alexis		

Where:	
Other:	

Where:	
Other:	

Where:		
Other:	.,	

### 5

#### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Check (✓) True or False. Then correct the false statements. Compare with a partner.

	True	Folse	
<ol> <li>Amber was still in college.</li> <li>Amber was embarrassed at lunch.</li> <li>Amber was wearing sandals.</li> <li>Evan was on vacation.</li> <li>Evan was staying with an old friend.</li> <li>Evan broke a lamp.</li> <li>Alexis took tickets at the theater.</li> <li>Alexis's phone rang very quietly.</li> </ol>	00000000	00000000	

## MAKING INFERENCES

Which statements are probably true? Which are probably false? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner. Give reasons for your answers.

	True	False
1. Amber knew what the office dress codes were.		
2. Amber worries a lot about her past mistakes.		
3. Evan didn't mean to break the vase.		
4. Evan bought a new vase to replace the one he broke.		
5. Alexis likes hip-hop music.		
<b>6.</b> Alexis usually turns off her cell phone during a performance.		

#### Follow-up

### 🕜 I SHOULD HAVE . . .



A Make notes about two situations in which you or someone you know made a mistake or did something embarrassing. Then suggest one or two things the person could or should have done differently.

Situation	I should have
I was late to my sister's wedding.	I should have set my alarm clock. I should have asked my brother to wake me up.
	,

B CAIR WORS Take turns sharing your situations and solutions. Talk about what happened and what the person should have done.

#### Language close-up

### WHAT DID HE SAY?

Watch the video and complete the story. Then compare with a partner.
Evan talks about an embarrassing moment in his life.
I was attending a out of town and with an old friend, Ed, and his
I
when I knocked over a and it.
No one was awake yet, and I was
, so I just threw away the By the time I
, so   left.
l Ed and told him
about it, but, honestly, I
the, Ed and his wife, Michelle, were having an
with their son, Ben. They thought Ben the
vase and then tried toit.



#### **PAST CONDITIONALS**

- Rewrite the sentences using if clauses + past perfect.
- 1. I didn't go to bed early, so I fell asleep during the test. If I had gone to bed early, I wouldn't have fallen asleep during the test.
- 2. She took summer classes, so she graduated early.
- 3. He didn't know the answer, so he was embarrassed.
- 4. They brought a map, so they didn't get lost.
- 5. You didn't hear the announcement, so you missed your train.
- 6. We bought a new car, so we didn't have money for a vacation.
- **B** GROUP WORK Talk about how your life would have been different if ...

your parents had been millionaires. you had been born a member of the opposite sex. you had lived 200 years ago. you had never gone to school.



# Good business

#### Preview



#### CULTURE

Cafés are very popular in North America, in a café or coffeehouse, customers can sit for hours in a comfortable chair, talk with friends, and drink coffee. Many cafés are small, family-run businesses, but others are part of a chain run by a larger company. Some studies show that when a coffeehouse chain opens a store, the smaller coffee shops in the neighborhood attract more business as well. It may be that seeing a new coffeehouse just reminds people how much they like visiting their favorite café.



comfortable convenient

loud popular successful

What do you like about your favorite coffee shop or café? Is it close to your home, work, or school? Do they play nice music? What's your favorite thing to eat or drink there?

A: This word describes a place that is easy to get to.

### VOCABULARY A café

A CAIBWORE Complete the conversation with words from the box.	
A: I'm looking for a place to get agreat cup of coffee.	comfo
B: How about Gino's Grind? It's nearby, so it's very	cozy
A: Do they have chairs?	fresh
B: Yes, they do. Gino's is small and	√great loud popu
A: I want to be able to have a conversation without shouting.	succe
Is the music very?	
B: No, it's not. And they have nice things to eat there, too. The owner	
makes pastries every morning.	
A: That's good, but you know the real secret to a coffee shop is delicio	us coffee.
B: You said it! And Gino's coffee is fantastic. Let's go!	
B PAIRWORK Take turns guessing the words in part A.	

B: Convenient.

## **GUESS THE FACTS**

#### Who are these people?



café owner reporter



- café owner
- reporter 🔲

#### ■ Watch the video

### **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Check the reasons the café owner gives for the success of her business.
- Students like to do their homework at the café.
- The café stays open late.
- The music is always good.

- There are comfortable chairs.
- They serve unusual foods.
- The café is close to campus.
- B Match each picture to the correct description.
- 1. People can sit outside.

- 3. The food is made fresh every morning.
- 2. People come here to study or read.
- 4. The chairs are comfortable.









### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

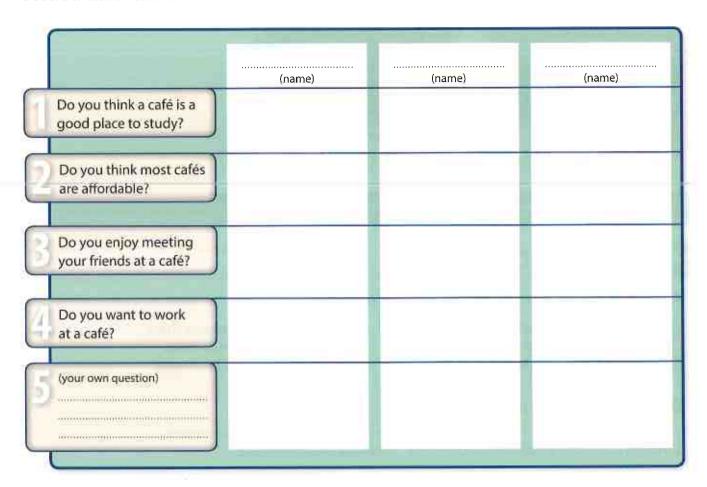
Complete the sentences. Then compare your answers with a partner.

- 1. Lili is the ...... of Choice Café.
- 2. Choice Cafe's ...... makes it easy for students to find.
- 3. Central Café closed because ......

- 7. The .....isn't too loud, so people can chat together or read.
- 8. Lili lets the ...... who work at the café choose the music.



Ask three of your classmates what they think about cafés and coffee shops. Be sure to ask for reasons. Take notes in the chart.



B Share your information with the class. Did any comments surprise you?

#### **■** Follow-up



#### OPEN YOUR OWN CAFÉ

A CARAMORIAN Make plans for opening your own café. Answer the questions.

What is the name of your business?

Where will it be located in your community?

How large will it be?

What hours will it be open?

What will the furniture be like?

What kind of music will be played?

What kind of foods will you serve?

**B** GROUP WORK Join another pair and take turns describing your cafés.

### Language close-up



Watch the video and complete the conversation. Then compare with a partner. Jacob and Lili talk about the food and atmosphere at Choice Café.

Jacob:	What the fo	ood?			
Lili:	Our food is made here	every morning.			
	We have a t	take-out business. People			
	order food to take home or t	o eat			
Jacob:	? You mean,	, on the ,			
	on campus?				
Lili:		e tables outside, too.			
	But do eat o	on campus. It's really			
	there.				
Jacob:	But it's nice to sit	, too. The atmosphere i	s great		
	Talk about that for a minute:	the, the			
Lili:	Music is key to a café's	You need to			
	you have good music. I'm no	tanlmea	n, I don't		
	know about music. But people who work here are				
	They're		So I let them		
	the music.				

### INFINITIVE CLAUSES AND PHRASES OF PURPOSE

A	Complete these sentences about starting a café. Use <b>in order for</b> or <b>in order to</b> .
---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

- 1. <u>In order to</u> open a café, you will probably need to borrow money.
- 2. ..... the café to be legal, you need to get a license.
- 3. ..... people to learn about the place, you will need to advertise.
- 4. ..... make money, you have to charge enough money to cover your costs.

#### B Complete these sentences with because, because of, for, and the reason.

- 1. We decided to open a café ______because ____ we love coffee so much.
- 2. ..... it took us so long to open our café was that we had to raise the money.
- 3. We had to open a week late ...... a big storm in the area.
- 4. Now our café is known ..... its fresh coffee and comfortable atmosphere.

# 13 Stonehenge

#### **■** Preview

## 1

#### CULTURE

For reasons scientists do not completely understand, ancient cultures all around the world made monuments by arranging stones in a particular pattern. Archaeologists have discovered stone structures in Great Britain, Europe, South America, and Africa. Some, like the stone circles at Gobekli Tepe in Turkey, are also carved with designs and figures of animals and humans. Others, like Stonehenge in the United Kingdom, are exceptional because of their size and sophisticated engineering. Most of these monuments were created before written language. Archaeologists must use a wide variety of clues to uncover the true purpose for these amazing structures. In some cases, we may never know.



Have you ever visited an ancient historical site? What did it look like? Who built it?
Why was it built? What did you find particularly interesting or meaningful about your visit?

### VOCABULARY Ancient history

Check ( $\checkmark$ ) the best meaning for the underlined word in each sentence. Compare with a partner.

1	Anthropologists don't know how p	eonle could have built such colo	ssal structures without
	the help of modern construction ed		
	expensive	beautiful beautiful	M huge
2.	Experts found religious items at the	ruins, which made them suspec	ct it was a shrine.
	market	holy place	school
	The creators of Stonehenge only have was sophisticated.	nd <u>primitive</u> tools, but their know	vledge of engineering
	useful	D basic	metal
4.	The Aztecs wore ceremonial masks	with faces of their deities on the	em.
	used for business	used for special rituals	used in everyday life
5.	After death, the cremated remains	of important people were buried	d in a special graveyard.
	family members		clothes or possessions
6.	The first scientists to excavate the a	ncient burial mound discovered	l very old pottery, tools, and weapons.
	cut down with a saw		uncover by digging out earth

#### Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off. What kinds

of experts do you think will give opinions about Stonehenge?

- archaeologists
  astronomers
- construction experts
- geologists

- nistorians 🔲
  - reporters

#### Watch the video



#### **GET THE PICTURE**

- A Match each fact to the correct picture.
- a. Stonehenge is made up of colossal standing stones.
- b. Archaeologists have uncovered hundreds of human bones.
- c. A second circle called Blue Stonehenge was discovered.
- d. Stonehenge may have been a temple of the dead.









**B** Write each phrase under the correct picture.

an excavation a monumental undertaking

a place to commune with the spirits a part of the ceremonial complex

### 5

#### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

Check (✓) **True** or **False**. Then correct the false statements. Compare with a partner.

	True	False	
Stonehenge is located in Wales.			
2. Stonehenge contains about 53 standing stones.			
<b>3.</b> Some of the stones weigh 40 tons.			
<ol><li>Experts know who built Stonehenge.</li></ol>			
<ol><li>Some people think Stonehenge was</li></ol>			
an alien landing site.	_		
<ol><li>6. Most of the people buried at</li></ol>			
Stonehenge were men.			
<ol><li>Blue Stonehenge was discovered in 2008.</li></ol>	$\Box$		
8. Blue Stonehenge is shaped like a circle.			

## **6** WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?

A Which of the sentences below do you think is the most likely explanation for the origin of Stonehenge? Rank them from 1 (most likely) to 5 (least likely).

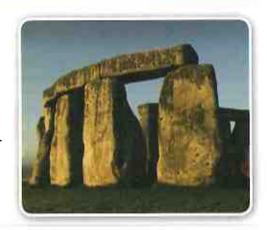
...... It was built by aliens from another part of the universe.

...... It was a temple built to worship the sun.

...... It was a kind of hospital where sick people came to be healed.

........... It was a shrine, a holy place for the ancient Druid people who lived in the area.

...... It was a burial place where people came to commune with the dead.



B CAIBWORD Tell your partner which explanation you thought was the most likely, and why. Then talk about any other possible explanations for the building of Stonehenge.

#### Follow-up

### 7

#### WHAT DO YOU THINK HAPPENED?

A Read the descriptions of the mysterious events below.



What was the Tunguska event?

On June 30, 1908, a massive explosion took place in Siberia, Russia. Eighty million trees over an area of more than 2,000 square kilometers were destroyed by the blast. Some people believe that the destruction was caused by the crash of an alien spaceship. Scientists agree that it was caused by something from outer space, but they think it was a meteorite or a small comet.



What happened to the Maya?

Between the 8th and 9th centuries CE, the Mayan people in the lowlands of Central America suddenly abandoned many of their cities. Their disappearance is still a mystery. Some people believe that the Mayans fled after predicting the end of their own civilization. Archaeologists think that drought, foreign invasion, or disease might have caused the Mayan civilization in this area to collapse.

**B** GROUP WORK What do you think might have caused these mysterious events? Share your opinions with the group. Have conversations like this:

A: What do you think caused the Tunguska event?

B: I think it must have been a small comet.

C: I'm not sure. I think it could have been aliens.

# Language close-up

# **WHAT DID THEY SAY?**

Watch the video to complete the commentary. Then compare with a partner. *Scientist Julian Richards talks about Stonehenge.* 

Julian Richards:	The w	e're	with here is our	, and
	what	prehistory is that we'v	ve got no	
	about	so	••••••	
	that we understand abo	out it comes from arc	haeology,	
	from	we can excavate and v	what we	
	can			
Narrator:	In 2008,	of	. bones were	100
	at the	, prir	nitively burned	All I
	and	The bones were dated	l across a	
	years	of prehistory.		
Julian Richards:	The first	of all the cremated	ł	
	that were	at Stonehenge	that	it's
	adult	, adult men that were	the	ere. So it's quite a
	group	of people, and only p	robably very	people
	came	to be buried.		

# PASSIVE AND PAST MODALS

Rewrite the sentences using the passive voice.

- Ancient peoples must have used stone circles for rituals.
   Stone circles must have been used by ancient peoples for rituals.
- 2. Better farming practices might have saved the Mayan people.
- 3. An infectious disease could have killed the Mayans.



- 5. The builders of Stonehenge couldn't have used vehicles with wheels.
- 6. The discovery of a second circle at Stonehenge must have surprised archaeologists.



# 14 Making music

# Preview



### **CULTURE**

Musicians are always looking for new ways to share their music with the world. These days, they may not need a record contract to attract an audience. Many small bands and solo artists use the Internet as their musical outlet. They can upload their songs to a music-sharing website, so anyone with access to the Internet can hear their music. These innovations are allowing independent artists to get noticed online, and to connect with other musicians and new fans.

Where do you get the music you listen to – radio, the Internet, CDs, or other places? Do you ever go to concerts? Where do you hear about new music?





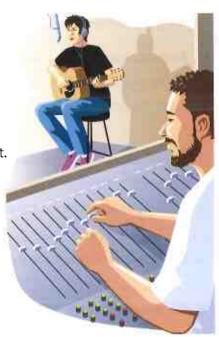
# **VOCABULARY** Writing and recording songs

 $oldsymbol{\mathbb{A}}$  Choose words from the box to complete the sentences.

accompany mix set up ✓ compose record tune

- 1. The first thing a songwriter must do is _____compose____ a song.
- 2. Before playing an electric piano, a musician must ......the keyboard.
- 3. Before playing a guitar, a musician must ...... the instrument.
- 4. A piano player may ..... a singer.
- 5. When musicians ..... their songs, they can hear what they sound like.
- 6. At a recording studio, an engineer will ...... the voices and instruments together.

B Compare your answers. Take turns using the words from the box in original sentences.



# **GUESS THE FACTS**

What do you think these people who work in the music industry do? recording engineer DJ program director accompanist

# Watch the video

# 4 GET

### **GET THE PICTURE**

What is each person's job? Write it under the picture. Use the words in the box.





accompanist
DJ
program director
recording engineer
songwriter

Josh McBride

**Richard Marr** 



Aldous Collins



**Melanie Oliver** 



**Matthew Hawkes** 

# WATCH FOR DETAILS

#### Complete the sentences with a job from Exercise 4.

1. The .....uses a multitrack recorder.

2. The ...... speaks with listeners on the radio.

3. The _____plays along with the singer in the recording studio.

4. The ...... writes music as a way to make sense of the world.

5. The ...... decides what music is played on the air.

B PAIR WORK Tell your partner another detail about each of these jobs.

"The songwriter uses a thesaurus to write his songs."





#### **WRITING A SONG**

A Imagine that you are a songwriter, and you have just written a great new song. Write your answers to the questions below.

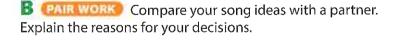
- 1. What is the song about?
- 2. What instrument(s) do you use on your song?
- 3. Where do you want to record the song?
- 4. How will people hear your song (on the radio, in clubs, on the Internet, other)?
- 5. Who do you want to listen to your song?













### WHICH JOB WOULD YOU LIKE?

A PAIRWORK Which music industry job appeals to you most – a singer, a songwriter, a DJ, or something else? Tell your partner why you would be good at the job you chose.

**B** GROUP WORK Join another pair. Compare your choices. Give reasons for your decisions.

# Language close-up



#### WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the commentaries. Then compare with a partner.

Two people in the music industry talk about their jobs.

Matthew:	Making music is my	outlet: the way I make	
	of the world	me,	
	I sit down to,	, the first thing I do is	my
	guitar. Once the	is tuned up and	·· 1
	I set up the keyboard. The	has multiple	
	and multiple .		
	of	is a of	l'm
	that	Sometimes I can	hours writing
	piece. I'm	this song. l	it "Revelations.

Melanie:	Hi, my name's Melan	ie Oliver. I'm the	*****
	here at the	The program director	r's
	job is to	what music is	on air.
	So I	the songs and tell the DJs	
	songs to play.		



# 9

# PASSIVE How a song becomes a hit

A Complete the sentences below about how a song becomes a hit by using the passive form of the verbs in parentheses.

***************************************	The song	(record) on a multitrack recorder.
	The song	(play) on the radio by the DJ.
	The recording	(take) to program directors at radio stations
	and (add)	to their playlists.
1	The song	(compose) by the songwriter.
	The song	(choose) for airplay by the program director.
	The vocals and instruments	(mix) together

Put the sentences above in order. Then take turns describing how a song becomes a hit. Use **first**, **next**, **then**, **after that**, and **finally**.

# 15 The streets of Montreal

# **Preview**



#### CULTURE

Most North Americans rely on their cars for transportation, but recently more people are choosing to ride their bicycles to work instead, Some cities are investing in bicycle paths and other changes to the roads, so it's easy and safe for cyclists to get around. Why are more people cycling to work? Cyclists say it improves physical fitness, protects the environment, and cuts down on traffic noise and crowding. Plus, there's an added benefit: It's funl

How do you feel about cycling? Do you ever cycle to work or to school? How would you like drivers of cars to change their behavior? What would you like to see cyclists do differently?



# 2

# **VOCABULARY** City traffic

Complete these sentences with the words in the box. Use the plural form when necessary.

bike helmet	bus	cycle path	cyclist	commuter
driver	traffic	parking	pedestrian	√sidewalk

- 1. People walking on the _____sidewalk avoid traffic from bicycles and cars.
- 2. Some ...... take the train to work every day.
- 3. .....should always keep their bicycles in good repair.
- 4. ..... generally stay on the sidewalk.
- 5. Cyclists should not ride into oncoming .......
- 6. As more bicycles crowd the roads, ...... have to share the road with cyclists.
- 7. ..... reduce traffic and encourage public transportation.
- 9. A ..... is the safest place for cyclists to ride.
- 10. Drivers who commute to work may have trouble finding





# **GUESS THE FACTS**

#### Watch the first minute of the video with the sound off.

Answer these questions.

- 1. Who is this man?
- 2. Where is he?
- 3. What do you think he's talking to people about?



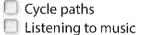
# Watch the video



### **GET THE PICTURE**

Which issue does each person discuss? Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers.







Bicycles and busesDriving toward traffic



Cycling with childrenRestricting driving downtown



Checking mirrorsCycling with children



Bicycles and busesDriving toward traffic



Wearing bike helmets
Riding with
headphones



Cycle paths
Cycling with children

# **WHO SAID WHAT?**

Who said the sentences below? Match each person from Exercise 4 with a sentence. Then compare with a partner.

- ............... "I think it would be best if bicycles and buses were not on the same street."
- ........... "Cyclists should have their own bike lane and drive towards the oncoming traffic."
- ....." "I think cycling on the sidewalk is fine, with kids."
- "There should be a law that says all children starting from age six should be educated on the rules of bicycling."
- .....1..... "I think the city should try to expand the system of cycle paths."
- "I'd like to bike and listen to music too, but . . . I think you should do that in a park."

# **GUESSING MEANING FROM CONTEXT**

Read these sentences from the video. Gue Check $(\checkmark)$ your answers. Then compare with	<del>-</del>	rlined words.
1. More bicycles means more bicycle traff allowing others space on the road		e road.  decreasing the space on the road
<ol><li>Wherever bikes and cars share the road to interact.</li><li>think about each other</li></ol>	d, people are going to have o	pinions about how they ought  relate to each other
I think most pedestrians are <u>at ease</u> with comfortable		excited
4. Cyclists should be more aware of cars, a be afraid of	automobiles, and pedestrians pay attention to	s. try to avoid
5. Sometimes we <u>cut corners</u> in terms of don't stop at street corners	moving through traffic.  turn corners too quickly	try to save time
6. Montreal is no exception.  is a special situation	makes exceptions	is the same as other places
<b>■ Follow-up</b>		
FOR OR AGAINST		
A You are a resident of Pleasantville, a sabout fifty kilometers from a large city. Ci have proposed replacing many of the par on the roads with bike lanes. Make a list of for and against the bike lanes.	ty officials king places	
For	Against	And the second
would encourage cycling	would make it	harder to park
B GROUP WORK Work in groups of for Then decide whether or not to build then		nd <b>against</b> building the bike lanes.
In my opinion That's a good	point. Nevertheless, esting idea. However,	On the other hand I don't think that

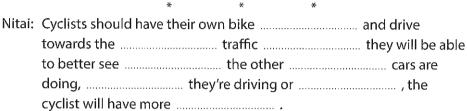
# Language close-up

# **8** WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the commentaries. Then compare with a partner.

Montreal residents talk about their opinions on cycling in the city.

Sebastian:	I think the city	should try to		the system of	
	***************************************	paths. One t	hing I	this morning	
	is that one	c	drive	traffic because	
	that's a	Son	netimes ther	re are corners where	
	***************************************	just cannot s	see you com	ning, and so you should reall	у
	try to	drivin	g against the	e, if possik	ole
		*	*	*	







# 9

# PASSIVE MODALS Giving opinions on cyclists and drivers

Read these complaints from cyclists and drivers.

#### Common Complaints on the Road

#### Cyclists say:

"Many drivers go much faster than the speed limit."

"Sometimes drivers park in our bike lanes."

"Drivers don't check their rearview mirrors before opening their doors."

#### **Drivers say:**

"Cyclists don't put lights on their bikes when riding at night."

"Some cyclists don't wear bike helmets."

"Some cyclists ignore traffic signals."

What do you think about these complaints? Choose a modal from the box that shows how strongly you feel and rewrite each complaint. You can add words such as **allowed**, **required**, and **permitted**.

1 500000 100	7 000	
ought to be	should be	must be
shouldn't be	have to be	mustn't be

1. Drivers shouldn't be permitted to go faster than the speed limit.
2
3
4
5
6

# 16 The Harlem Children's Zone

# **■** Preview



### CULTURE

In some low-income neighborhoods in cities in the United States, public school students are struggling. They lag far behind those attending schools in higher-income neighborhoods in terms of academic success and college admission. Some experts say the following factors contribute to the difference in educational outcomes:

- · the number of days students are absent from school
- · the number of hours they spend watching television
- · the number of pages they read for homework
- the quantity and quality of reading material in the students' homes



What kinds of educational challenges are you facing right now? Talk about some challenges you have faced in the past. Are you interested in going to college? If so, what are you thinking about studying? What is your ultimate career goal?

# **VOCABULARY** Education

A Choose phrases from the box to complete the sentences.

achievement gap / break the cycle inner city scientific data affluent suburbs grade level remarkable job statistical study

- 1. In order to <u>break the cycle</u> of poverty, it is necessary to improve schools.
- 2. Students in the ...... often attend overcrowded and poorly-run schools.
- 3. Students who go to school in ...... usually have more educational opportunities than urban students.
- 4. An ...... occurs when one group of students performs better in school than another group.
- 5. In some schools, students are performing below ......, which means they're not learning as much as they should.
- 6. Researchers presented ...... to show how well students are performing.
- 7. Many teachers do a ...... of teaching students in difficult situations.
- 8. In a ....., researchers collect information to understand more about a subject.
- **B CARRWORK** Compare your answers. Take turns using the phrases in original sentences.

# **GUESS THE FACTS**

#### Watch the first minute and a half of the video with the sound off.

Answer these questions.

- 1. Who are the two men?
- 2. What are they talking about?
- 3. Where do the scenes with children take place?





# Watch the video



### **GET THE PICTURE**

Check (✓) the items that describe the school in the video.

- It is a school for kids from the suburbs.
- It is a school for kids from the inner city.
- It is a charter school run by Geoffrey Canada.
- It is part of the public school system.
- Students are in class more often than in other schools.
- Summer vacation is longer than at most schools.
- It improves learning skills and test scores for its students.



# 5

### **WATCH FOR DETAILS**

A Check (✓) True or False. Then compare with a partner.

	True	Faise
1. The Children's Zone covers 97 blocks in Harlem.		
2. Geoffrey Canada doesn't want his students to go to college.		
3. Canada grew up in Harlem.		0
4. There is one adult for every 20 children in the school.		
5. There are 1200 children enrolled in Canada's school.	(3)	
6. Children at Canada's school attend classes on Saturday.		
7. One hundred percent of Canada's third graders scored at or above grade level.		
8. Canada will know the Children's Zone has worked when they get more students.	[7]	<b>E</b> )

Tell a partner how you would correct the false statements in part A. Then share some more details that you remember with your partner.

# **6** GUESSING MEANING FROM CONTEXT

Read these sentences from the video and guess the meanings of the underlined words. Check  $(\checkmark)$  your answers. Then compare with a partner.

1. Geoffrey Canada may have figured out a way 4. Today, however, results are in and they are nothing short of stunning, so much so that the to close the racial achievement gap. White House is now taking notice. difference disappointing cause amazing problem problem normal 2. Abandoned by his father, he and three brothers 5. Right now, there are some twelve hundred kids were raised by their mother. enrolled from kindergarten to the tenth grade. loved It'll eventually expand all the way through the left forever twelfth grade. confused carefully 3. His laboratory is a 97-block neighborhood in immediately Harlem, which he's flooded with a wide array in the future of social, medical, and educational services. building □ list

# Follow-up

# WHAT

variety

#### WHAT'S YOUR OPINION?

Mhich features discussed in the video do you think are the most important in improving education for all students? Rank them from 1 (most important) to 6 (least important). Then add your own ideas.

smaller class size
weekend classes
a longer school day
free social and medical services
shorter summer vacation
more teachers



**B** PAIR WORKS Take turns describing the features that are most important to you. Use sentences like these:

A: I think small classes are the best way to improve education.

B: I'm not sure. As far as I'm concerned, weekend classes are more important, because  $\dots$ 



# Language close-up



## WHAT DID THEY SAY?

Watch the video and complete the commentaries. Then compare with a partner,

A reporter talks with Dr. Roland Fryer about the Harlem Children's Zone.

Reporter:	What is the achievement gap?		
Dr. Fryer:	Black in our schools are not at		
	even the rate as white children in our schools.		
	The black seventeen-year-old		
	at the proficiency of the white		
	thirteen-year-old. A four-year in effective		
	: that's that's		
Reporter:	But when Dr. Fryer four years' worth of		
	Promise Academy scores, he		
	something		
Dr. Fryer:	At theschool level, he		
	the achievement in		

subjects: ..... and reading.

anything ..... that.





# 9

# COMPLEX NOUN PHRASES WITH GERUNDS

Dr. Fryer: Absolutely. We've .....seen . . . we've .....seen

Reporter: ...... eliminating the ..... in elementary .....?

A FAIR WORK Interview a partner about a challenge that he or she has faced in life, such as taking a trip, learning a new skill, or accomplishing a goal. Use five of the questions below in your interview. Write your partner's responses below.

What was the most challenging part of	
What was one of the rewards of ?	
What was the most dangerous part of	?
What was the easiest part of ?	

What was the most surprising thing about ...? What was the most exciting thing about ...? What was the scariest thing about ...? What was the funniest thing about ...?

1.	The most challenging part of Anita's marathon was going up the hills.
J.	

B.	GROU	P1	WORK

Join another pair. Explain your partner's challenge to them.

# interchange

Workbook

Jack C. Richards

with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

3



#### **Contents**

	Credits	iv
1	That's my kind of friend!	1
2	Working 9 to 5	7
3	Lend a hand.	13
4	What happened?	19
5	Expanding your horizons	25
6	That needs fixing.	31
7	What can we do?	37
8	Never stop learning.	43
9	Getting things done	49
10	A matter of time	55
11	Rites of passage	61
12	Keys to success	67
13	What might have been	<b>7</b> 3
14	Creative careers	79
15	A law must be passed!	85
16	Reaching your goals	91

#### **Credits**

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: BL = Below Left, BR = Below Right, C = Centre, CL = Centre Left, CR = Centre Right, TC = Top Centre, TL = Top Left, TR = Top Right.

#### Illustrations

337 Jon (KJA Artists): 51; Mark Duffin: 31, 80; Pablo Gallego (Beehive Illustration): 10, 20; Thomas Girard (Good Illustration): 4, 28, 53; Dusan Lakicevic (Beehive Illustration): 1, 14, 22, 33, 96; Yishan Li (Advocate Art): 6, 13, 65; Quino Marin (The Organisation): 29; Gavin Reece (New Division): 3, 64; Paul Williams (Sylvie Poggio Artists): 15, 66.

#### **Photos**

Back cover (woman with whiteboard): Jenny Acheson/Stockbyte/Gettylmages; Back cover (whiteboard): Nemida/Gettylmages; Back cover (man using phone): Betsie Van Der Meer/Taxi/Gettylmages; Back cover (woman smiling): PeopleImages.com/ DigitalVision/Gettylmages; Back cover (name tag): Tetra Images/Gettylmages; Back cover (handshake): David Lees/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 2 : Michael H/DigitalVision/ Gettylmages; p. 5 (TL): Jade/Blend Images/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 5 (TR); Jamie Grill/Gettylmages, p. 5 (BL): Blend Images - Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Brand X Pictures/Gettylmages; p. 5 (BR): Tomasz Trojanowski/Hemera/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 7: John Rowley/Photodisc/Gettylmages; p. 8: KidStock/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 9: monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 12 (TL): ColorBlind/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 12 (TR): Sigrid Gombert/MITO images/Gettylmages; p. 12 (CL): 4x6/E+/Gettylmages; p. 12 (CR): Roy Hsu/Photographer's Choice RF/Gettylmages; p. 13 (TR): mediaphotos/ iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 16: Purestock/GettyImages; p. 17: Peoplelmages/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 18: Phil Boorman/Cultura/Gettylmages; p. 19 (TL): Robert George Young/Photographer's Choice/GettyImages; p. 19 (BR): dangdumrong/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 21 (TR): Chris Dyball/ Innerlight/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 21 (CL): MattStansfield/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 23: EXTREME-PHOTOGRAPHER/E+/GettyImages; p. 24 (Johnson): George Doyle/Stockbyte/Gettylmages; p. 24 (Marshall): Digital Vision./Photodisc/Gettylmages; p. 24 (James): Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 24 (Grant): wdstock/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 24 (Simpson): Dave and Les Jacobs/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 25 (TR): asiseeit/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 25 (BR): hadynyah/ E+/Gettylmages; p. 26: Thomas_EyeDesign/Vetta/Gettylmages; p. 30: Education Images/Universal Images Group/GettyImages; p. 32 (George): snapphoto/E+/GettyImages; p. 32 (airport): Philippe TURPIN/Photononstop/Photolibrary/ Gettylmages; p. 32 (Diane): Vesnaandjic/E+/Gettylmages; p. 32 (car): lisegagne/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 34: Whiteway/E+/Gettylmages; p. 35 (wrench): TokenPhoto/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 35 (TR): John E. Kelly/Photodisc/Gettylmages; p. 36: pixelfusion3d/ iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 37 (drain): belovodchenko/iStock/ Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 37 (plane): incposterco/E+/GettyImages; p. 37 (smoke): Harrison Shull/Aurora/Gettylmages; p. 37 (land): Sierralara/RooM/ Gettylmages; p. 38 (forest): Ro-Ma Stock Photography/Photolibrary/Gettylmages; p. 39: Howard Shooter/Dorling Kindersley/Gettylmages; p. 40: VCG/Contributor/ Visual China Group/Gettylmages; p. 41: Travel Ink/Gallo Images/The Image Bank/ Gettylmages; p. 42: SolStock/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 43: Doug Armand/Oxford Scientific/Gettylmages; p. 44: Wilfried Krecichwost/DigitalVision/ Gettylmages; p. 45: cglade/E+/Gettylmages; p. 46 (TL): Lew Robertson/StockFood Creative/GettyImages; p. 46 (TC): Alina555/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 46 (TR): Jose Luis Pelaez Inc/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 47 (photo 1): Hemera Technologies/PhotoObjects.net/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 47 (photo 2): Picturenet/Blend Images/GettyImages; p. 47 (photo 3): Zoran Milich/Photodisc/ Gettylmages; p.47 (photo 4): DragonImages/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 48 (TR): BrianAJackson/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 48 (CR): reka prod./Westend61/Gettylmages; p. 49 (TR): simazoran/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Getty Image; p. 49 (CR): ONOKY - Eric Audras/Brand X Pictures/GettyImages; p. 49 (BR): michaeljung/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 50: leaf/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 52 (TL): IP Galanternik D.U./E+/Gettylmages; p. 52 (TR): Lady-Photo/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 54: Westend61/GettyImages; p. 55 (CR): Andy Sheppard/Redferns/Gettylmages; p. 55 (BR): by Roberto Peradotto/ Moment/Gettylmages; p. 56 (L): Mint/Hindustan Times/Gettylmages; p. 56 (R): Michael Runkel/imageBROKER/Gettylmages; p. 57: Bettmann/Gettylmages; p. 58 (TL): Bettmann/Gettylmages; p. 58 (BR): Ron Levine/Photographer's Choice/ Gettylmages; p. 59: Windsor & Wiehahn/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 60: Javier Pierini/ Stone/Gettylmages; p. 61: blackred/iStock/Getty Images Plus/Gettylmages; p. 62: izusek/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 63: ADRIAN DENNIS/AFP/ Gettylmages; p. 67: Greg Vaughn/Perspectives/Gettylmages; p. 68: Caiaimage/ Robert Daly/Gettylmages; p. 69 (TL): marco wong/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 69 (TR): Oscar Wong/Moment Open/Gettylmages; p. 69 (CL): Otto Stadler/Photographer's Choice/Gettylmages; p. 69 (CR): David Hannah/Lonely Planet Images/Gettylmages; p. 69 (BL): LOOK Photography/UpperCut Images/GettyImages; p. 69 (BR): lightkey/ E+/Gettylmages; p. 70: Thomas Kokta/Photographer's Choice RF/Gettylmages; p. 71 (Calgary Farmers' Market): Ken Woo/Calgary Farmers' Market; p. 71 (WWF): © naturepl.com/Andy Rouse/WWF; p. 72; Christian Hoehn/Taxi/Gettylmages; p. 73 (TL): Rosanna Ú/Image Source/GettyImages; p. 73 (TC): Mark Weiss/ Photodisc/Gettylmages; p. 73 (TR): i love images/Cultura/Gettylmages; p. 73 (BL): monkeybusinessimages/iStock/Getty Images Plus/GettyImages; p. 73 (BC): Photo and Co/The Image Bank/GettyImages; p. 73 (BR): Alija/E+/GettyImages; p. 74 (stonehenge): Maxine Bolton/EyeEm/Gettylmages; p. 74 (people): Peter Dennis/Gettylmages; p. 74 (boats): De Agostini/M. Seemuller/De Agostini

Picture Library/Gettylmages; p. 75 (bigfoot); Big_Ryan/DigitalVision Vectors/ Gettylmages; p. 75 (footprints): Danita Delimont/Gallo Images/Gettylmages; p. 76: Steve Bronstein/Stone/Gettylmages; p. 77: kbeis/DigitalVision Vectors/ Gettylmages; p. 78: mediaphotos/Vetta/Gettylmages; p. 79 (T): Oscar Garces/ CON/LatinContent Editorial/Gettylmages; p. 81: Theo Wargo/Getty Images North America/Gettylmages; p. 82 (TL): ColorBlind Images/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 82 (TR): track5/E+/Gettylmages; p. 83: imagenavi/Gettylmages; p. 84 (TL): John Wildgoose/Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 84 (TR): Bloomberg/Gettylmages; p. 84 (CL): Chris Ryan/Caiaimage/Gettylmages; p. 84 (CR): numbeos/E+/Gettylmages; p. 84 (BL): Tom Merton/OJO Images/GettyImages; p. 84 (BR): Ariel Skelley/Blend Images/Gettylmages; p. 85 (TL): marcoventuriniautieri/E+/Gettylmages; p. 85 (TR): Anadolu Agency/Gettylmages; p. 85 (CL): Caspar Benson/Gettylmages; p. 85 (CR): Jake Olson Studios Blair Nebraska/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 86 (house): Peter Baker/Gettylmages; p. 86 (traffic): Levi Bianco/Moment/Gettylmages; p. 86 (bike): Billy Hustace/The Image Bank/Gettylmages; p. 86 (using mobile): SolStock/E+/ Gettylmages; p. 87: Image Source/DigitalVision/Gettylmages; p. 89: Caiaimage/ Paul Bradbury/Riser/Gettylmages; p. 90: Dawid Garwol/EyeEm/Gettylmages; p. 92: FatCamera/E+/Gettylmages; p. 93: c.Zeitgeist/Everett/REX/Shutterstock; p. 94 (TR): shapecharge/E+/Gettylmages; p. 94 (BR): borgogniels/iStock/Getty Images Plus/ Gettylmages; p. 95: Lucidio Studio, Inc./Moment/Gettylmages.

That's my kind of friend!

P 1								
C	omplete these de	scriptions with	the words from t	he list.				
1.	Eric is so <u>modes</u> any credit for them.	t ! He always h	as such great ideas and	d never takes	✓ modest □ outgoing			
2.	2. The Wongs like meeting new people and having friends over for dinner.  They're one of the most couples I know.  3. You can't trust Alice. She always promises to do something, but then she never does it. She's pretty							
3.								
4.	James wants to be a	ın actor. It's hard to	break into the busine	ss, but his family				
	is very			•				
5.	I never know how to a bad mood. She's s			ood mood, and th	ne next minute she's in			
	pposites  Complete the chart adjectives in the list, answers in a dictional attractive reasonable	Use in- and un To ary.	hen check your					
	helpful flexible	competent reliable popular	experienced cooperative sensitive	V				
	Opposites	with in-	Opposites with	un-				
	incompetent		unattractive		incompetent			
В	Write four more sent  1. Alan is very ince		the words in part A. He makes a lot of mis	stakes	- 3h			
			TIO HANGE A 10 POT THE					
	5.							
	J.							

3

# Add who or that to the conversation where necessary. Put an X where who or that is not necessary.

A:	I'm looking for someone I can go on vacation with.
B:	Hmm. So what kind of person are you looking for?
A:	I want to travel with someone is easygoing and independent.
B:	Right. And you'd probably also like a person is reliable.
A:	Yeah, and I want someone I know well.
B:	So why don't you ask me?
A:	You? I know you too well!
B:	Ha! Does that mean you think I'm someone is high-strung, dependent, and unreliable?
A:	No! I'm just kidding. You're definitely someone I could go on vacation with.

# 4

### Complete the sentences with who or that and your own information or ideas.



1.	I generally like to go out with people who are easygoing and have a sense of humor
2.	I'd rather travel with someone
3.	I don't really want a roommate
4.	My classmates and I like teachers
5.	My best friend and I want to meet people
6.	Most workers would prefer a boss
7.	Some people don't like stingy types
8.	l don't want to have inflexible friends
9.	I feel comfortable discussing my problems with friends
10.	My favorite friends are people

A Read the article. What six personality types are discussed?

# DO OPPOSITES ATTRACT EACH OTHER?

Some psychologists believe that we are attracted to people who seem to have the characteristics that we wish we had. For example, if you love music but don't play an instrument, you might be attracted to someone who is a musician. Being with that person allows you to be close to something that is important to you and that you want more of in your life.

Because people are very complex, we can be attracted to several different kinds of people who are our opposites in one way or another. So let's take a look at six principal kinds of characteristics in people, and you can decide which type you are most like and which type is your opposite.

Let's begin with introverted and extroverted people. Introverted people often spend a lot of time inside their minds and can be quiet and reserved. Extroverted people enjoy getting out and spending time with other people. If opposites attract, then there will always be an interest between introverted and extroverted people. Introverted people will get out of their minds and into the world with their extroverted friends or partners, while extroverted people will appreciate the quiet space of the inner world of their introverted friends or partners.

Then there are people who relate to the world from a thinking perspective and others who relate to it from a feeling perspective. Thinkers can be cool and objective in their judgments, while feelers may be warm and passionate about theirs. Because people who spend a lot of time thinking want to feel deeply too, they may be attracted to a feeling kind of person. And someone who is very aware of their own powerful feelings may enjoy the company of a relaxed and logical thinker.

Two other characteristics are those of people who use their five senses to understand the world we live in as opposed to those who use their intuition. Sensing people are very aware of the present moment; they are realistic and practical people. Intuitive people, on the other hand, often spend their time in a future of infinite possibilities where their imagination is as free as a bird. The attraction here could be that intuitive people realize they need the practical know-how of sensing people in order to make their dreams come true. Likewise, the sensors are attracted to the imaginative possibilities they see in intuitive

These three different pairs of personality characteristics - the introvert and the extrovert. the thinker and the feeler, and the sensor and the intuitive - are of course found in each individual person. Yet many psychologists believe that a person will more often use one characteristic of each pair, in the same way that people use either their left hand or their right. And, according to the idea that opposites attract, the left hand needs the right hand in the same way that the right hand needs the left!



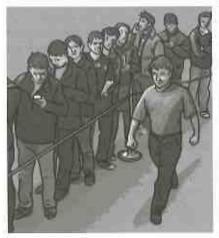
- Based on the information in the article, what kind of people are you attracted to? Circle the words. Then, using the idea that opposites attract, complete the next sentence with the type of person you must be.
  - 1. I am more attracted to a person who is (introverted / extroverted). Therefore, I am _______.
  - 2. I am more attracted to a person who is a (thinker / feeler). Therefore, I am a ______.
  - 3. I am more attracted to a person who is the (sensing type / intuitive type). Therefore, I am a
- Do you agree with the kind of person you seem to be according to part B? Why or why not?

#### Match the clauses in column A with the most suitable clauses in column B.

A	B
<b>1.</b> I like it	a. when someone criticizes me in front of other people.
2. I don't mind it	<b>b.</b> when people are easygoing and friendly.
3. It upsets me	c. when rich people are stingy.
4. It embarrasses me	d. when people are a few minutes late for an appointment

#### Write sentences about these situations. Use the expressions in the box.

I don't like it . . . I love it . . . I can't stand it . . . It bothers me . . . I don't mind it . . . It upsets me . . . I really like it . . . It makes me happy . . . It makes me angry . . .



people cut in line.



1. I don't like it when 2.



3.

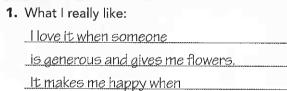




5.









2. What I don't like: It bothers me when



3.	What doesn't bother me:
	I don't mind it when



What upsets me:	
It upsets me when	
	_

4.

# 9

#### It really bugs me!

Choose one thing from Exercise 8 that really embarrasses, bothers, or upsets you. Write two paragraphs about it. In the first paragraph, describe the situation. In the second paragraph, say why this situation is difficult for you and describe a situation you would prefer.

It really embarrasses me when someone is too generous to me.
Recently, I dated a guy who was always giving me things. For my birthday, he bought me an expensive necktace, and he treated me to dinner and a movie.

The problem is, I don't have enough money to treat him in the same way. I'd prefer to date someone I have more in common with. In fact, my ideal boyfriend is someone who is sensible and saves his money!



# Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

- 1. I can tell Simon anything, and I know he won't tell anyone else. I can really ______him. (believe / treat / trust)
- 2. Kay has a very high opinion of herself. I don't like people who are so ______. (egotistical / temperamental / supportive)
- **3.** It bothers me when people are too serious. I prefer people who are _____ and have a good sense of humor. (easygoing / inflexible / reliable)
- **4.** I like it when someone expresses strong ______. Hearing other people's views can really make you think. (accomplishments / compliments / opinions)
- **5.** Lisa is very rich, but she only spends her money on herself. She's very ______. (generous / modest / stingy)

# What's your job?

A Match the jobs with their definitions.

A/An	is a person who
1. comedian <u>f</u>	a. researches environmentally friendly technologies
2. green researcher	<b>b.</b> helps students with their problems
3. guidance counselor	c. controls a company's brand online
4. organic food farmer	d. creates computer applications
5. social media manager	e. grows food without chemicals
6. software developer	f. makes people laugh for a living

ŧ	3	Write a defir	ition fo	r each of	these jobs:	accountant.	fashion	desianer	and flic	ht attendant.

1	An accountant is someone who			
---	------------------------------	--	--	--

2.	

# Challenging or frightening?

 $oxed{\mathbb{A}}$  Which words have a positive meaning, and which ones have a negative meaning? Write P or N.

awful N	fantastic
boring	fascinating
challenging	frightening
dangerous	interesting
difficult	rewarding



#### B Write about four more jobs you know. Use the words in part A and gerund phrases.

1.	l think being a comedian would be fascinating.
2.	

3.	
_	

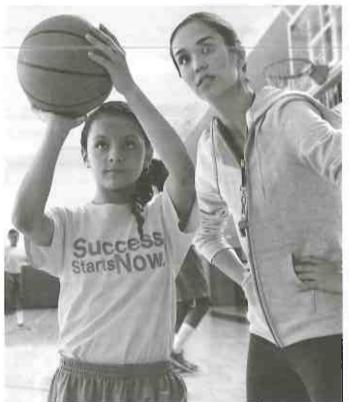
+.	VIII. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.	
_		

# **Career choices**

A Match each career and the most appropriate job responsibility.

Careers		Job responsi	allities
work	for an airline — with computers	do research teach discipline	and fitness
be	as a high school coach a university professor a writer	learn new softw work independ travel to differe	ently

В	Use the information from part A and gerund phrases to complete this conversation.		
	Teri:	So, what kind of career would you like, Jack?	
	Jack:	Well, I'm not exactly sure.  Being a writer could be interesting. Maybe blogging about something I'm interested in.	
	Teri:	Hmm. I don't know if I'd like that because I'd have to write every day.	
	Jack:	What do you want to do, then?	
	Teri:	Well, I'm not sure either! I'd love I'd really	
		enjoy being with teenagers all day and On the other hand, I'd be interested in	



		the other hand, I'd be interested in			
	Jack:	Really? What would you like about that?			
	Teri:	Well, I'd love all over the world.			
	Jack:	Oh, I could never do that! I think it would be very tiring work.			
С	Write a short conversation like the one in part B. Use the remaining information in part A or your own ideas.				
	A: So, what kind of career would you like?				
	B: Well, I'm not exactly sure.				
	A: Tha	at sounds interesting. But I wouldn't like it because			
	B: What do you want to do then?				
	A: We	II, I'd love			
	B:				
	<b>A:</b>				

# What a job!

A Read the magazine interviews. Write the correct job title above each interview. There are two extra jobs.

architect	freelance artist	preschool teacher	university professor
bus driver	house painter	train conductor	website designer

# TELL US ABOUT YOUR JOB

I have always enjoyed making things, and what's more interesting than building something that people will use for years? The challenge of discovering exactly how a space needs to be constructed for maximum usefulness and beauty is what makes me wake up with a smile. I often work late at the office, but that's part of the job.

Working for yourself is hard because you're responsible for everything. If no one calls you and asks you to work for them, you have to go out and look for work. Luckily, I now have some regular clients. I paint pictures for some expensive hotels. Right now, I'm doing some paintings for the rooms of a new hotel in Hawaii.

3

My friends say my work is less demanding than theirs, but I work just as hard as they do. I spend a lot of time alone because my job can't begin until all the construction work is completed. Usually, the rooms look great when I've finished my work. Sometimes I don't like the colors that customers choose, but I have to do what they want.

4

These days a lot of people are doing what I've been doing for fifteen years. I work closely with my clients to find out exactly what they want to show on the Internet and how to make it look as attractive as possible. My work requires a good eye for art, a command of clear and precise language, and of course, knowledge of the latest technology.

I meet all kinds of people: some are the best and others aren't so good. Sometimes I have a great conversation with someone I've never met before. And of course, I have my regulars, people I see every day, and we talk about life. But I always keep my attention on the road.

Being with kids all day isn't for everyone, but I love it. I take care of children when their parents are away. I do all kinds of things - I teach, I play games, and I read books. I make sure the children are safe and happy. I have a lot of responsibility, but I love my job. It's very rewarding work even though the pay isn't great.

📴 Underline the words and phrases that helped you find the answers in part A.

First, use words from the list to complete each job title.

Then choose the best expressions to compare the jobs in each sentence.



assistant decorator counselor instructor		alker orker		
1. A child-care <u>worker</u>	doesn't earn	as much as an accountant.		
as much as	greater than	worse than		
2. A chef's	has	a waiter.		
worse hours than	not as good hours	as worse hours as		
<b>3.</b> A dog	_ is	a student intern.		
more interesting than	not as boring as	better paid than		
<b>4.</b> A house	earns	a camp counselor.		
as bad as	more than	not more than		
<b>5.</b> A park	is	a landscaper.		
as bad as	not as well paid as	worse than		
6. Being a yoga	is	being a professor.		
more than	as much as	not as difficult as		
7. Being an interior	is	being a sales assistant.		
greater than	earns more than	more interesting than		
8. A guidance	has	a gardener.		
more responsibility than	not more than	not as long as		
Complete these sentences with the correct prepositions.  Some of the prepositions may be used more than once.  More than one answer may be possible.				
1. Chonglin works	the best Chinese restaurar	nt in Los Angeles.		
2. I think working	other people is more fun th	nan working alone.		
3. I would hate working	the media. It would b	pe nerve-racking!		
4. Working a dance	e instructor sounds great.			
5. Working an offi	ce is less interesting than w	orking a cruise ship.		

### Use the words in parentheses to compare the jobs.

**Assistant** needed at an outdoor swimming pool. Must be able to swim. Responsible for keeping pool and changing rooms clean. \$12/hour. Tues.—Fri. 12–7.

#### Learn web design!

In search of a bright young person to work as an intern for an advertising agency. Some clerical work. \$15/hour. Mon.—Fri. 9–5.

- 1. A: An assistant at a swimming pool has shorter hours than an intern.

  (shorter hours)
  - **B:** Yes, but working as an intern is more interesting than being a swimming pool assistant. (interesting)

**Travel agency** needs energetic people. Knowledge of a second language is a plus. Mostly answering the phone. \$18/hour. Flexible hours. Five vacation days a year.

**Tutors** in math, science, English, and music wanted at private summer school. Challenging work with gifted teenagers. Salary negotiable. Mon.—Sat. 3–7.

2. A: Working in a

(better benefits)

**B:** Yes, but working (challenging)

**Tennis instructor** needed at summer camp for 12- and 13-year-olds. Must be excellent tennis player and good with kids. \$18/hour. Mon.–Fri. 1–7.

Tour company seeks **guide** to lead bus tours. Great attitude and good speaking voice a must! Fun work, but must be willing to work long hours. \$15/hour.

3. A: _____

B:

(make as much money)

(work longer hours)

City seeks **taxi drivers** for morning shift. No experience necessary; driver's license required. \$15/hour plus tips. Mon.–Thu. 7 A.M.–2 P.M.

Office assistant required in small, friendly office. Computer skills an advantage. Interesting work. Some management skills necessary. \$20/hour. 6-day week.

4. A: _____

000

(a shorter work week)

B: ____

(less boring)

# Choose four pairs of jobs from the box below to compare. Say which job you would prefer and give two reasons.









- · a graphic designer/a TV news director
- · an architect/a teacher
- · a guidance counselor/a coach
- · a doctor/a musician

- a police officer/a politician
- a secret agent/a psychiatrist
- · working on a construction site/working in an office
- · being self-employed/working for a company

	Example: Working as a TV news director sounds more interesting than being a graphic designer.
	A TV news director has more responsibility than a graphic designer.
	Also, directing the news is better paid.
1.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2.	
2	
J.	
4.	

# Would you mind . . . ?

- A Complete the request for each situation.
  - 1. You want to borrow a classmate's pen.

Can I borrow your pen?

- **2.** You want a classmate to give you a ride home after class.

  Would you mind
- **3.** You want to turn down your roommate's TV. Is it OK if
- 4. You want to use a friend's cell phone.

Do you mind if

- **5.** You want to borrow a friend's car for the weekend.

  Lwas wonderina if
- 6. You want someone to tell you how to get to the subway.

Could

B Think of four more things you would need to have done if you were going on a long vacation. Write requests asking a friend to do the things.



1. Could you water the plants?
--------------------------------

2.

3. ______

F.

2

# Accept or decline these requests. For requests you decline, give excuses. Use the expressions in the chart or expressions of your own.

Accepting	Declining
That's OK, I guess.	Sorry, but
I'd be glad to.	I'd like to, but
Fine. No problem.	Unfortunately,
B: Sorry, but I'm a	omputer? My computer crashed.  Joing to use it myself in a few minutes.  this ten-page paper. Could you check it for me, please?
3. A: I was wondering B:	if I could stay at your place for a week while my landlord fixes the roof.
4. A: Would you mind	if I used your cell phone to make a long-distance call to Nigeria?

# Look at the pictures and write the conversations. Speaker A makes a request. Speaker B declines it. Each speaker should give a reason.

1. A: Could you carry these boxes

for me? I have a bad back.

B: Sorry, but I have a bad back, too.





2. A: _____

B: _____





A Scan the magazine article about making requests. What strategies can you use for less formal requests? What strategies can you use for more formal requests?

# The Art of Making Requests

When you make a request, it helps to be clear about two things: Firstly, how well do you know the other person? Secondly, how important is it for you to get what you want? Are you willing to take "no" for an answer?

Let's say that you would like to borrow someone's car to go out on Friday night. Because borrowing a car is a big favor, we can assume that you'd probably only ask someone you know well for this favor. In general, when making requests of friends or close acquaintances, you can use a less formal approach.

Now let's imagine that it's very important for you to have that car on Friday night; you have to have it. In that case, you can let the other person know in a less formal, direct way. Here are two possible strategies:

- 1. Make a statement with need: "I need to borrow your car."
- 2. Use an imperative: "Please lend me your car."

By avoiding questions, this approach makes it more difficult for the other person to say no. If you are willing to put the other person in a possibly awkward situation, then this is definitely the clearest, and perhaps most effective, way of getting what you want.

But maybe you expect the other person to say no, and you can live with that. This attitude allows you to have a cooler, more objective perspective, so you can make your request in a more formal, indirect way.



Here are some examples:

- 3. Ask about ability: "Could/Can you lend me your car?"
- 4. Be polite use may: "May I borrow your car?"
- 5. Ask for permission: "Would it be OK if I borrowed your car?"
- 6. Express curiosity: "I wonder if I could borrow your car."
- 7. State the request negatively: "I don't suppose you could lend me your car."
- 8. Apologize: "I hope you don't mind my asking, but could I borrow your car?"
- Give a hint: "I have plans for Friday night, but I don't have a car."

This approach gives the other person a polite way to refuse if, for any reason, they don't want to or cannot lend you their car. And even though you know the person well, taking a more formal approach proves to the listener that you realize what a big favor you're asking. It shows them respect and appreciation - which makes it more likely that you'll get the result you want!

B Read the article. Check ( ) if each request is less formal or more formal. Then write the correct number from the article (1–9) for each type of request. Only eight of the numbers will be used.

	Less formal	More formal	Type
1. Close the door.			
2. It's really cold in here.			
3. Could you possibly move your car?			
4. May I borrow your dictionary?			
<b>5.</b> I was wondering if you could help me with this assignment.			
6. I need some help moving to my new apartment.			
7. I'm sorry, but I can't stand loud music.			
8. I don't suppose I could borrow your camera.			

#### **Nouns and verbs**

A Complete this chart. Then check your answers in a dictionary.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
apology compliment explanation	apologize	invitation permission request	

В	Check (✓) the phrase that describes what each
	person is doing.
	1 Don't worry I know you didn't mean to brea

- n't worry. I know you didn't mean to break it.
  - returning a favor
  - \rbrack accepting an apology
- 2. I really like your new haircut.
  - giving a reason
  - giving a compliment
- 3. Can I borrow your laptop?
- asking for a favor
  - giving a gift
- 4. I can't lend you my bike because I need it myself.
  - declining a request
  - 📘 accepting an invitation
- 5. Could you help me cook dinner?
  - making a request
  - returning a compliment



#### Choose the correct words.

- 1. My phone didn't work for a week. The phone company an apology and took \$20 off my bill. (accepted / denied / offered)
- 2. A friend of mine really loves to _____ compliments, but he never gives anyone else one. I don't understand why he's like that. (do / owe / receive)
- 3. Diane is always talking on the phone. She makes a lot of calls, but she _____ mine. Maybe she never listens to her voice mail! (makes / offers / returns)
- 4. I need to ______ a favor. Could you please give me a ride to school tomorrow? My bike has a flat tire! (ask for / give / turn down)

Use these messages to complete the phone conversations. Use indirect requests.

Message -

Message	Message	
For: Silvia	For: Mike	
Ms. Karen Landers called.	Mr. Maxwell called yesterday.	- 1 - 7 T
Her flight arrives at 7 p.m. on	The meeting is on Thursday at	
Tuesday. Please meet her in the	10:30 A.M. Don't forget to bring	
International Arrivals area.	your report.	
Message	Message	
For: Mark	For: Katy	
Ed called this morning. Can he	Andy Chow called earlier. Are you	
borrow your scanner? If he can,	going to the conference tomorrow?	
when can he pick it up?	What time does it start?	lies
THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN		
1 At la Silvia Voga there places?		
1. A: Is Silvia Vega there, please?	1	
<b>B:</b> No, she isn't. Would you like to	-	
A: Yes, please. This is Karen Lande	•	
	aht arrives at 7 p.m. on Tuesday	?
		?
<b>B:</b> OK, I'll give her the message.		
2. A: Can I speak to Mark, please?		
B: I'm afraid he's not here. Do you	-	
· ·		?
<b>B:</b> Sure, I'll leave him the message	· ·	
3. A: Could I speak to Mike, please?		
<b>B:</b> I'm sorry, but he's not here righ	t now.	
A: Oh, OK. This is Mr. Maxwell. I'd	like to leave a message.	
Could		?
Could		?
4. A: I'd like to speak to Katy, please	•	
<b>B:</b> She's not here right now. Can I	take a message?	
A: Yeah. This is Andy Chow.		
Can		?
<b>B:</b> OK, I'll give Katy your message	,	

Complete the conversation with the information in the knecessary and use the correct form of the verbs given.	oox. Add any words				
ask Kelly to get some soda bring a big salad borrow some money buy dessert don't be late					
Dan: So, is there anything I can do to help for the party?  Mark: Yeah. I have a list here. Would it be all right  if I borrowed your wireless speaker  Mine isn't working very well.					
Dan: Sure. And I'll bring two extra speakers. We'll have amazing sound.					
Mark: Thanks.					
Dan: No problem. Now, what about food?					
Mark: Well, I thought maybe a salad. Would you mind, too?					
Dan: Well, OK. And how about drinks?					
Mark: Well, could you? And please tell her					
Last time we had					
eleven o'clock, and everyone got really thirsty!					
Dan: I remember.					
Mark: One more thing – I was wondering if you could					
<b>Dan:</b> Um, sure. All right. But, uh, would you mind if I pay for it?	to				
Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.					
1. Can I use your cell phone?	(OK)				
Would it be OK if I used your cell phone?  2. Please ask Annie to stop by and talk to me.	(OK)				
2. Hease ask Affilie to stop by and talk to file.	(would)				
3. Could I borrow your guitar?	(1,001.0)				
	(wonder)				
4. Would you ask Mitch what time he's coming over?					
	(could / when)				
5. Lend me your hairbrush.					
	/:				

4

woman was arrested.

# What happened?

Complete these news stories using the verbs from the box.
1,
□ broke □ found □ locking □ stayed ☑ went
drank heard shouted waiting wondered
WOMAN TRAPPED IN BATHROOM FOR 20 DAYS
WOMAN TRAFFED IN BATHROOM FOR 20 DAYS
A 69-year-old grandmother in Paris <u>want</u> to the
bathroom – and there for twenty days.
What happened? As she was the door, the
lock, She could not open the door. She for help, but no one her
because her bathroom had no windows. After nearly three
weeks, the woman's neighbors where she was.
Firefighters broke into her apartment and her
in a "very weakened" state. While she wasto
be rescued, she warm water.
2.
became checking in entered popened sleeping
behaving decided had showed
TIGER CUB FOUND IN LUGGAGE
A woman was strangely when she
the Bangkok airport. While she was
for an overseas flight; she difficulty with a very large bag. The check-in clerk
Suspicious and to X-ray the
bag. The X-ray an image that looked like an
animal. When airport staff the bag, they saw
that a baby tiger was under lots of toy tigers.
The tiger was taken to a rescue center for wildlife, and the

2

## Join each sentence in column A with an appropriate sentence in column B. Use as, when, or while to join the sentences.

A	B	
I was crossing the road.	My racket broke.	
I was using my computer.	- A car nearly hit me.	
We were playing tennis.	The water got cold.	
l was taking a shower.	I burned my finger.	
I was cooking dinner.	It suddenly stopped working.	
<ol> <li>As I was crossing the road</li> <li></li></ol>	, a car nearly hit me.	

Complete these conversations. Use the simple past or the past continuous of the verbs given.

1. A: Guess what happened to me last night!

As I <u>was getting</u> (get) into bed, I

_______ (hear) a loud noise like
a gunshot in the street. Then the phone
______ (ring).

B: Who was it?

**2. A:** I'm sorry I'm so late, Erin. I was at the dentist.

A: Well, you're wrong this time. The dentist
______ (clean) my teeth when she
suddenly ______ (get) called away
for an emergency. So I just sat there waiting
for two hours with my mouth hanging open!



A Read this news story. Who is it about? Where did it take place?

Thank you, Andre Botha!

On December 6, 2015, Andre Botha was in the water, watching the big waves at the Pipeline off the island of Oahu, Hawaii, when he noticed something strange. The two-time world bodyboarding champion realized that professional champion surfer Evan Geiselman was in big trouble. Since the Pipeline has some of the biggest waves in the world and is considered to be the most dangerous place on the planet for surfing, situations like this are, unfortunately, not uncommon.

Botha realized that the surfer, who had entered the inside of a huge wave and was riding it, was knocked off his surfboard when the wave crashed on him. Normally a surfer will come up to the surface of the water a few moments after falling off the board. But there was no sign of Geiselman. Botha began to swim on his bodyboard as fast as he could to where the surfboard was being thrown around by the huge waves. When he reached the





surfboard, he saw Gelselman, who looked like he might be dead. The surfer was unconscious and his face was turning blue as Botha tried to bring him back to life in the water. Botha breathed into Geiselman's mouth and hit him on the chest to get him breathing again. Then he began to swim to shore with the surfer's unconscious body. Two lifeguards swam out to meet him, and they brought Geiselman to a hospital.

Surfers and bodyboarders agree that Evan Geiselman would probably not be alive today if Andre Botha had not rescued him. They don't always agree about which sport is best, but surfers and bodyboarders do agree that taking care of each other in the big waves is important. This respect and care for people is a wonderful part of these exciting sports.

- Use the article to answer these questions.
  - 1. In what sport is Andre Botha a two-time champion?
  - 2. What sport does Evan Geiselman excel at as a champion?
  - 3. Where is the Pipeline located?
  - 4. What is one way you can help an unconscious person start breathing?
  - 5. Who brought Geiselman to the hospital?
  - 6. What helps make bodyboarding and surfing such wonderful sports?

e of years ago, I got lost in intains. I was hiking when enly got foggy. I was really
enly got foggy. I was really
ed because I couldn't see
q, and it was getting cold.
ed to put up my tent and sta
or the night.
was putting up my tent,
the fog began to clear
<b>1</b>
a ring when a just chosen)
Andy's
Andy's ok / had taken)
it to him when the
at handed)
. We were
off / had run off )
us we had to pay for the ring
her ld / had just told)

us! What a terrible experience!

(arrested / had arrested)

## What a story!

A Choose the best headline for each of these news stories.

#### What a disaster!

#### What a triumph!

#### What an emergency!

#### What a lucky break!

#### What a dilemma!

Karen Lane was seven months pregnant when she and her husband. Scott, went on vacation to a small remote island off the coast of South America. On the first night, Karen was in a lot of pain. There were no doctors on the island, so Scott called a hospital on the mainland. They told him they could not send a helicopter because a typhoon was coming. During the night, Karen thought she was going to die. Luckily, the typhoon had passed over the island by the following morning. A helicopter picked Karen up and took her to the hospital - just in time for her to have a beautiful baby girl.

Serena Mills was very sick for several months before her final exams this summer. She couldn't study at all. Her parents suggested she should skip a year and take the exams the next summer. Remarkably. Serena suddenly got well just before the exams, spent two weeks studying, and got the highest grade in her class!

Mark Blaine had waited years for a promotion. Finally, a week ago, he was offered the position he had always wanted - Regional Manager. On the same day, however, he won \$6 million in the lottery. Mark's wife wants him to resign from his job and take her on a trip around the world. Mark says he cannot decide what to do.

В	Look at the words in bold in the a	rticles. What do you think they mea	n?	
	remote	skip	promotion	
	mainland	remarkably	resign	

Complete the sentences. Use the simple past, the past continuous, or the past perfect of the verbs given.

1.	In 2011, two divers <u>discovered</u>
	(discover) the remains of a 200-year-old shipwreck
	while they (dive) off the
	coast of Rhode Island, in the eastern United States.
2.	After an art show
	(open) in New York, it was discovered that
	someone (hang) a
	famous painting by Henri Matisse upside down.
3.	In 2015, workers
	(find) a chemistry lab from the 1840s while they
	(repair) a building at
	the University of Virginia in the United States. The
	lab was behind a wall of the current building.
4.	Chile's Calbuco volcano
	(surprise) residents of Santiago when it erupted
	in 2015. Before that, an eruption of Calbuco
	(not happen) for over

40 years.





#### Read this situation. Then use the information and clues to complete the chart. Write the name of each reporter and each country. (You will leave one square in the chart blank.)











Five news reporters - two women and three men - arrived for an international conference on Sunday, Monday, and Tuesday.

No more than two people came on the same day. The reporters came from five different countries.

#### Clues

The women:

Ms. Johnson and Ms. Marshall

The men:

Mr. James, Mr. Grant, and Mr. Simpson

The countries: Australia, Mexico, Brazil, Singapore,

and the United States

#### The arrivals:

- Mr. Simpson arrived late at night. No one else had arrived that day.
- Ms. Johnson and Mr. Grant arrived on the same day.
- The man who came from Singapore had arrived the day before.
- The reporters who came from Brazil and Australia arrived on the same day.
- Mr. James and the woman who came from Brazil arrived on Tuesday, after Mr. Grant.
- The reporter from Australia arrived the day after the person who came from the United States.
- Mr. Grant came from North America but not the United States.

Reporters' countries and arrival days				
Sunday	Name:	Name:		
	Country:	Country:		
Monday	Name:	Name:		
	Country:	Country:		
Tuesday	Name:	Name:		
	Country:	Country:		

## Expanding your horizons

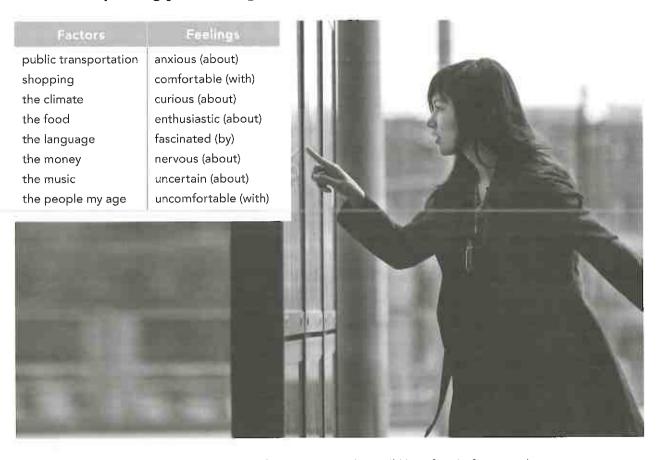
omplete these sente	nces. Use wo	ords from the	box.
	oressed barrassed	fascinated uncertain	uncomfortable worried
In my country, people ne	forgetting to tip		
I felt really <u>embarrase</u>			
The first time I traveled a		,	
language, and I didn't m		100	
. I just spent a year in Fran			
French. It was a satisfying	g experience, a	17.00	
. At first I really didn't like	shopping in the	e open-air	
markets. I felt	becau	se so many	
people were trying to se same time.	l me something	g at the	16
. When I arrived in Lisbon,	I was nervous I	because I	
couldn't speak any Portu	-	-	anguage, though,
l became more		_	
Before I went to Alaska I			
But it wasn't a problem k	ecause most b	uildings there are	e well heated.
. When I was traveling in			
Southeast Asia, I couldn'	A 11/2/20		
believe how many differe kinds of fruit there were.	2775.05.16	5	
	all of		
them, so I ate a lot of fru	1000		THE CALL OF
. It was our first trip to			THE SHAPE
Latin America, so we we		1000	TO THE POST

to expect. We loved it and hope to return again soon.



2

Imagine you are going to travel to a country you have never visited before. Write sentences using the factors and feelings given. Then add another sentence explaining your feelings.



• –	Public transportation is something I'd be anxious about. I'd be afraid of getting lost.
_	
-	

- 🔼 Make a list of four pieces of advice to help people feel comfortable about traveling abroad.
- B Scan the article about cultural differences. Where can you find articles like this? Who was it written for?

### Culture Shock

Each society has its own beliefs, attitudes, customs, behaviors, and social habits. These things give people a sense of who they are and how they are supposed to behave.

People become conscious of such rules when they meet people from different cultures. For example, the rules about when to eat vary from culture to culture. Many North Americans and Europeans organize their timetables around three mealtimes a day. In other countries, however, it's not the custom to have strict rules like this - people eat when they want to, and every family has its own timetable.

When people visit or live in a country for the first time, they are often surprised at the differences between this culture and the culture in their own country. For some people, traveling abroad is the thing they enjoy most in life; for others, cultural differences make them feel uncomfortable, frightened, and insecure. This is known as "culture shock."

When you're visiting a foreign country, it is important to understand and appreciate cultural differences. This can help you avoid misunderstandings, develop friendships more easily, and feel more comfortable when traveling or living abroad.

#### Here are several things to do in order to avoid culture shock.

◄ Instead of criticizing, enjoy the new. customs you discover each day on your trip as much as possible.

 If you read or understand the language, read a local newspaper or listen to the radio to find out what news they're likely to be talking about.

 Talk to people in order to understand their ideas about their own country as well as their thoughts about yours.

Remember the proverb, 4 "When in Rome, do as the Romans do." It's a great way to start learning new things!

For instance, try one new thing every day, like a food you've never had before, instead of choosing something on the menu that you can have in your own country.

 Read a book about the history of the place you are in so you will understand it better while you are there.

7 Go to concerts, museums, theatrical performances, and sporting events to appreciate the culture of this country,

 Remember that traveling is an educational O experience, so be ready to question the stereotypes you may have of another country, and learn about the stereotypes people in that country may have about the place you come from.

Czr.	Read the article.	Use your	own	words to	write	definitions	for these	words.
------	-------------------	----------	-----	----------	-------	-------------	-----------	--------

1.	culture
2.	culture shock
3.	appreciate
4.	stereotypes

After reading the article, would you make any changes to the pieces of advice you listed in part A?



## Complete these sentences by giving information about customs in a country you know.



1.	If you go for a long ride in a friend's car, <u>it's the custom to offer to pay for some of the expenses.</u>
2.	When a friend graduates from school or college,
3.	If you borrow something from a friend,
4.	When a friend invites you to dinner,

### Contrasting customs

A Read the information about the different customs and find four pairs of countries with contrasting customs. Write the countries on the lines below.

Country	Gustom
Brazil	Friends kiss each other three or four times on the cheeks as a greeting.
Denmark	People generally arrive on time for most occasions.
Egypt	People allow their hosts to treat them to meals in restaurants.
France	Service is usually included in the price of a meal in restaurants.
Japan	People bow when they see or meet someone they know.
New Zealand	People usually pay for their own meals in restaurants.
Spain	People usually arrive late for most appointments.
United States	People leave a tip of 15–20 percent in restaurants.

	Til		
1.	Brazil and Japan	3.	
2.		4.	

B Read these five cross-cultural situations. Write sentences describing what the visitors did wrong. Use the expressions in the box.

you're (not) supposed to you're (not) expected to it's (not) the custom to it's (not) acceptable to





1. Enni is from Denmark. When she was on vacation in Spain, some Spanish friends invited her to dinner at 9:00. She arrived at exactly 9:00, but her friends had not even arrived home yet.

In Spain, you're expected to

2. Kayla is from the United States. During her first week in Paris, she went to a restaurant with some new friends. She was so happy with the service that she left a tip of 20 percent. Her friends were a little embarrassed.

In France.

3. James is from New Zealand. When he went to Egypt, he was invited to dinner at a restaurant. When the bill came, he offered to pay for his dinner. His Egyptian friend was kind of upset.

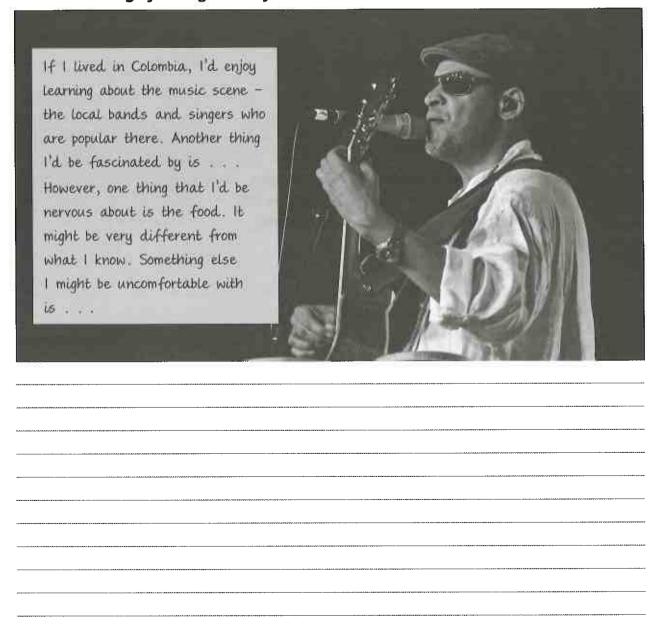
In Egypt,

- 4. Clara is from Brazil. She was working for a year in Osaka, Japan. One day, when she saw a Japanese co-worker in a bookstore, she went to say hello and kissed him on the cheeks. Her friend was very surprised.
- 5. Brian is from Canada. He was on vacation in Bali, Indonesia, and some new friends invited him to a temple to watch a special dance performance. He arrived on time wearing a clean T-shirt and shorts, but they said he couldn't go inside the temple because he wasn't dressed properly.

## Complete these sentences with information about yourself (1–4) and about a country you know well (5–8).

1.	One reason I'd feel homesick abroad is
2.	Something that would fascinate me would be
3.	Traveling alone is something
4.	Getting used to hot weather is one thing
5.	In, it's the custom to
6.	If you have good service in a restaurant,
7.	You're expected to when
8.	It's just not acceptable to if

Write about living in a foreign country. In the first paragraph, write about two things you would enjoy. In the second paragraph, write about two things you might worry about.



## That needs fixing.

### What's wrong with it?

A What can be wrong with these things? Put these words in the correct categories. (Most words go in more than one category.)

bike blouse tablecloth chair glasses

chipped	cracked	dented	leaking	scratched	stained	torn

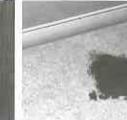
B What is wrong with these things? Use the words in part A to write a sentence about each one.



There's a scratch on the car.

1. The car is scratched. or 2.









5.



6.







#### Problems, problems, problems!

A Scan the articles in Consumer magazine. Who would read articles like these? Why?

### George's Class Trip

George Humphrey is a Spanish teacher at Crockett College in Duluth, Minnesota. Last year, George took his summer class from Duluth to Madrid, Spain. At the end of the six-week trip, George and the twenty students had a delayed flight at the airport in Madrid when they were coming home. Because of the six-hour delay in Madrid, they missed their plane from New York to Minnesota, Everyone had to stay at a hotel in New York City, and they all spent a lot more money than they had expected. They were also more than 24 hours late when they finally got back to Duluth, When George asked the airline office in New York to pay for their hotel and restaurant bills, the airline refused.

George contacted *Consumer* magazine. We talked to a representative of the airline office in Madrid and discovered that, in Europe, airlines must pay for delays – but that does not apply to airlines in the U.S. However, because the delay first occurred in Madrid, George and each student received 400 euros. George was very pleased, especially for his students. In his email to us, George wrote that he believes the law regarding airline delays needs changing in the U.S.



#### Diane's Vacation

Diane Gleason is a clothing designer in Cincinnati, Ohio. For her vacation last year, she decided to go somewhere she had never been - the southwestern part of the U.S. When she arrived at the airport in Phoenix, Arizona, she rented a beautiful red convertible for her trip. She planned to drive from Phoenix to the Grand Canyon to go hiking with friends for a few days. After she left the airport, Diane spent the night in Phoenix, The next morning, Diane discovered that someone had stolen the car from the parking lot. She called the car-rental agency, and they told her she was responsible for the cost of the car because she had left the keys in it. They would not let her rent another car until she paid for the stolen one. Diane didn't know what to do. She went back to the motel and contacted Consumer magazine.

We called the rental agency, and they told us that Diane had not bought special insurance for a stolen car. We told the agency that Diane needed help: she was all alone and feeling worried and depressed about what happened. The agency suggested that we contact Diane's credit card company. We did, and they told us that Diane was protected because of her credit card. They would pay for the stolen car! By evening, Diane had rented another car from the same agency and, that night, she had dinner at the Grand Canyon with her friends.



B Read the articles and complete the chart. Did George and Diane receive money?

51.	Problems	What Consumer magazine did	Rece Yes	ived money? No
<b>1.</b> George's trip	delay in Madrid			
2. Diane's vacation			155	

## Choose appropriate verbs to complete the sentences. Use passive infinitives (to be + past participle) or gerunds.

Language note: Verbs ending in -en or -n	
Some verbs are formed by adding -en or -n to a not These verbs mean "to make more of something."  Noun Verb Adjective length → lengthen loose (make something longer) (make something longer)	vun or adjective.  Verb  → loosen ething looser)
4	
☑ lengthen ☐ loosen ☐ sharpen ☐	shorten  tighten  widen
1. This jacket is too short.  It needs to be lengthened.  OR  It needs lengthening.  2. The screws on these glasses are too loose.	<ul><li>4. This faucet is too tight.</li></ul>
They need  3. The blades on these scissors are too dull.  They need	6. This street is too narrow.  It needs

Mia: Jack: Mia: Jack:	Guess what? Someone broke into my car last night!  Oh, no. What did they take?  Nothing! But they did a lot of damage. The lock  needs to be repaired (repair). And the window (replace).  It was probably some young kids having "fun."  Yeah, some fun. I think they had a party in my car! The seats  (clean).
Jack: Mia: Jack:	Nothing! But they did a lot of damage. The lock  needs to be repaired (repair). And the window (replace).  It was probably some young kids having "fun."  Yeah, some fun. I think they had a party in my car! The seats
Mia: Jack:	needs to be repaired (repair). And the window (replace).  It was probably some young kids having "fun."  Yeah, some fun. I think they had a party in my car! The seats
Jack:	Yeah, some fun. I think they had a party in my car! The seats
	(Clean).
	How annoying. Does the car drive OK?
	No, it feels strange. The gears
	(stick), so they (fix). And the brakes (check) right away.
Mia:	Well, I guess you're lucky they didn't steal it!
	Yeah, lucky me.
In the	about something you bought that had something wrong with it. a first paragraph, describe the problem. In the second paragraph, in what you did about it.
dam wors 1 to	ently, I bought an espresso machine. While I was unpacking it, I could see it was alread taged. The glass carafe was chipped and needed to be replaced. And to make matters se, the machine leaked! ok it back to the store. I was worried because the machine had been on sale, and I had my receipt. Luckily, the clerk didn't ask me for it. She said a lot of customers had onthly had the same problem, and she gave me a better machine at the same price.

## Paul will fix it!

A Match each problem with the repair needed.

1. dishwasher 2. DVD player 3. speakers 4. dresser 5. stove 6. table  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then add a sentence describing the action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  This motor needs checking.  2.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way.  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way.  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1		ITEM	PROBLEM	REPAIR NEEDED
2. DVD player 3. speakers wire is damaged				509
4. dresser mirror is cracked d. repaint the door e. replace the mirror f. check the motor  6. table legs are loose f. check the motor  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then add a sentence describing the action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked. The motor needs checking.  2		2. DVD player	DVD is stuck	
Write a sentence describing each problem. Then add a sentence describing the action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor neede to be checked.  The motor neede checking.  2.  3.  4.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way.  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.		3. speakers	wire is damaged	c. remove the DVD
Write a sentence describing each problem. Then add a sentence describing the action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.		4. dresser	mirror is cracked	d. repaint the door
Write a sentence describing each problem. Then add a sentence describing the action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.		5. stove	metal door is scratched	e. replace the mirror
action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2		6. table	legs are loose	f. check the motor
action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2	-			
action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2			<b>)</b>	
action needed to fix it. Use passive infinitives or gerunds.  1. The dishwasher doesn't work. The motor needs to be checked.  The motor needs checking.  2	Write	e a sentence describi	ing each problem. Then add a se	ntence describing the
The motor needs checking.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.				
The motor needs checking.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.				
2.  3.  4.  5.  6.  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.	1. ]	he dishwasher does	an't work. The motor needs to be	e checked.
3. 4. 5. Chink of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.				
4  5  6  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way.  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1		he motor needs che	ecking.	
Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.		he motor needs che	ecking.	
5  Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way.  Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.	2	he motor needs che	ecking.	
6 Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1	2	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.	2 3	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.	2 3	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.	2 3 4	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Think of three items you own that are damaged (or were damaged) in some way. Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.	2 3 4 5	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.	2 3 4 5	he motor needs che	ecking.	
Write a sentence describing each problem. Then write another sentence describing the action needed to fix it.  1.	2 3 4 5	he motor needs che	ecking.	
describing the action needed to fix it.  1.	2 3 4 5	he motor needs che	ecking.	
	2 3 4 5 Think	he motor needs che	own that are damaged (or were c	damaged) in some way.
	2 3 4 5 Think Write	tof three items you can sentence describi	own that are damaged (or were ong each problem. Then write and	damaged) in some way.
	2 3 4 5 Think Write descri	t of three items you ce a sentence describi	own that are damaged (or were ong each problem. Then write and ded to fix it.	damaged) in some way.

## 7

#### Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in the box.



j	clean fix jam stick
3	die flicker leak torn
1.	This cell phone is driving me crazy! My calls keep <u>dropping</u> .
2.	Your computer screen is so dirty. It needs to be
3.	Something is wrong with your TV screen. It keeps It's time to get a new one.
4.	I hate this printer. It keeps The copies won't come out.
5.	Be careful – your cup is I don't want you to cut yourself.
6.	The buttons on this remote control keep Do you have something to clean it with?
7.	Do you realize your jeans are in the back?
8.	Your bathroom faucet keeps Do you want me to try to fix it?
9.	My new glasses already have a on one of the lenses. How did that happen?
10.	. Did your laptop again? I find that so annoying.

11. This old scanner doesn't work at all anymore. It needs to be ______.12. The battery in my cell phone keeps ______. I should buy a new one.

## What can we do?

Use the information in the pamphlet and the verbs and prepositions given below to change the sentences from the active to the passive.

#### HERE ARE JUST SOME OF THE DANGERS FACING YOU AND YOUR CHILDREN.

#### The water we drink

- Agricultural runoff is contaminating the water supply.
- Chlorine and other additives have ruined the taste of our drinking water.



#### The food we eat

- Certain agricultural pesticides have caused new illnesses.
- Pollution from cars and trucks is destroying our crops.

#### The air we breathe

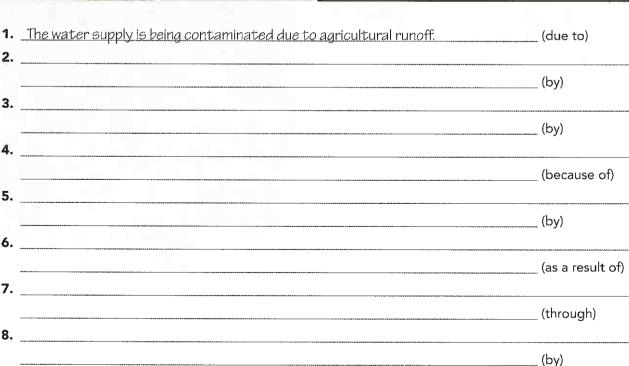
- 5. Factories are releasing dangerous chemicals.
- Breathing smog every day has damaged many people's health.



- The lack of rainfall has created more severe droughts.
- Global warming is threatening our forests and wildlife.

Join Save Our Planet today!





## Verbs and nouns

A Complete the chart.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
contaminate	contamination	educate	
contribute			pollution
	creation	populate	
deplete		protect	
	destruction		reduction

B	Write four sentences	like the	ones in E	Exercise 1	using	words from	the chart
---	----------------------	----------	-----------	------------	-------	------------	-----------

Exa	ample: Many rivers and streams have been badly contaminated by industrial waste.
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	

#### Choose the correct words or phrases.

- 1. Green organizations are trying to save rain forests that have been <u>threatened</u> by developers and farmers. (created / ruined / threatened)
- 2. One way to inform the public about factories that pollute the environment is through _____ programs on TV. (agricultural / educational / industrial)
- 3. In many countries around the world, threatened animal and plant species are being _____ by strict laws. (created / polluted / protected)
- 4. Agricultural pesticides are ___ the soil in many countries. (damaging / eating up / lowering)
- 5. _____ is an enormous problem in many large cities where whole families can only afford to live in one room. (pollution / poverty / waste)



B

#### How safe is the fleece you are wearing?

A Scan the title and first two paragraphs of this article. What is fleece? Do you own clothing made of fleece? What clothing?

## The Fleece that Came to Dinner

Today, half of the clothing bought by people is made of a synthetic fiber. And that figure is almost 70% in the developing world. Synthetics - or fibers that are created by science, not by nature - are very attractive to customers because, for example, some of them are water-resistant, which is particularly desirable for rain gear and hiking shoes. Moreover, synthetics don't require the amount of water, labor, and land that is needed to cultivate cotton and other natural fibers.

One of the most popular synthetic fabrics is called fleece, a name that originally referred to the wool from a sheep, which is still used to make fall and winter clothes. But in the twentyfirst century, the word "fleece" refers to the inexpensive, lightweight, and often waterresistant synthetic material that more and more people are wearing today.

One of the most interesting things about fleece is the fact that it can be made from recycled plastic bottles. This means that fleece can be far less expensive than wool or other natural fibers. For many people, recycling plastic bottles is thought of as friendly to the natural environment since we are reusing the plastic, not burying it in the ground or dumping it in the oceans. However, in the last

few years, scientists have discovered that fleece may not be as environmentally friendly as we once supposed.

Scientists are now finding very small particles of plastic at.

the bottom of the ocean that they believe are the remains of fleece that is washed in washing machines every day all over the world. When it is washed, more than 1,500 particles may separate from a fleece product into the water. When that water is drained, some of it will make its way back into the lakes, rivers, and oceans of our world. That is what seems to be happening now. When the synthetic particles reach natural bodies of water, the plastic is going to be eaten by fish because it looks like food to them. And sooner or later, those fish are going to be caught, delivered to the food market, and end up on your plate at dinner.

What can be done? Shall we return to more costly, heavier, and traditional natural fibers such as cotton and wool? Are people willing to spend more money. to possibly save the environment? Or is economics so important to people who have very little money that they believe they cannot afford to give up their synthetic fibers?

	ead the article. Check (✔) the true statements. For statements that are false, ite the true information.
1.	In the developing world, 50% of people buy clothing made of synthetic fiber.
2.	The word "fleece" originally meant sheep's wool.
3.	Fleece is made from recycled plastic bottles.
4.	More than 2,000 particles of fleece may separate during washing.
5.	Fortunately, fish will not consume particles of fleece.
6.	We now know that people are going to stop using fleece because of its dangers.

## World issues

A Match the nouns and definitions.

Nouns	Definitions
1. infectious diseases <u>d</u>	a. physical actions that are meant to cause     destruction or injury
2. global warming	<b>b.</b> a period of time when businesses are not doing well and a large number of people cannot find jobs
3. government corruption	c. an extreme lack of money
<b>4.</b> famine	d. illnesses that can be passed on to other people
5. political unrest	e. a situation in which people do not have enough food
6. poverty	f. a situation in which citizens become angry or violent due to their dissatisfaction with their government
7. recession	g. illegal or dishonest activity by people with political power
8. violence	<b>h.</b> a situation in which a number of people are not working because they cannot find jobs
9. unemployment	i. an increase in the world's average temperatures

В	Choose the correct nour	from part A to	complete each	sentence.	You will not use	all of the words.

- **1.** It seems like there are more dangerous ______ these days, like swine flu and the Zika virus.
- 2. During the recent _______, 30 percent of the businesses in my town closed, and a large part of the population didn't have jobs.
- **3.** There's so much _____ in this city. I'm afraid to walk on the streets alone at night because I don't feel safe.
- **4.** Before you travel to a foreign country, make sure there are no dangerous political situations going on there. It can be unsafe to visit countries that are experiencing
- 5. In the 1800s, a large portion of Irish potato crops were destroyed by disease.

  Because potatoes were a major part of the Irish diet, there was a major _____ and over 1.5 million people died.
- **6.** People in this country don't trust the police or city officials because there is a lot of ______.



## Complete the conversations. Use the expressions in the box and the information in the list.

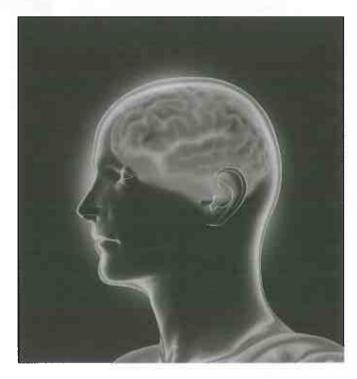
One thing to do The best way to fight Another thing to do One way to help	
complain to the Parks Department about it create more government-funded jobs create more public housing projects organize a public meeting to protest the threat of public property	educate young people about its dangers report it to the local newspaper donate money to charities that provide shelters and food
A new housing development?	
1. A: A big housing developer wants to build an apare I think that's terrible, but what can we do?	
<b>B:</b> One thing to do is to complain to the Parks D	epartment about it.
A: That's a good idea.	
B:	
2. A: Personally, I'm worried about violence in the cit	2
3. A: You know, there's a lot of corruption in our city	government
B:	~
A: Yeah, the bad publicity might help to clean thin	
4. A: There are so many unemployed people in this of	
B:	
5. A: What worries me most is the number of homele	
B:	• •
A:   agree.	

•	g the present continuous passive or the present st a solution to each problem.
1. A lot of jobs <u>have been los</u>	t (lose) in recent years.
One way to deal with unemployr	ment <u>is to bring more businesses</u> into the area.
2. These days, a lot of endangered	animals (kill) by hunters and poacher
The best way to stop this practic	e
3. During the past few years, lots o	f trees (destroy) by acid rain.
One thing to do about it	
4. Underground water	(contaminate) by agricultural pesticides.
The best way to deal with the pro	oblem
5 Too many people	(affect) by infectious diseases in the past few years.
3. 100 many people	(affect) by infectious diseases in the past few years.
The best way to stop this	
The best way to stop this Write two paragraphs about	a charity, an organization that helps people. be what the charity does. In the second think the charity is useful.
Write two paragraphs about In the first paragraph, descriparagraph, explain why you a good charity in my city is the number of homeless people	a charity, an organization that helps people. be what the charity does. In the second think the charity is useful. Sheller.
Write two paragraphs about In the first paragraph, descriparagraph, explain why you.  A good charity in my city is 5. This organization works to red the number of homeless people streets. Shelter believes the b	a charity, an organization that helps people. be what the charity does. In the second think the charity is useful.  Shelter. Luce on our best way
Write two paragraphs about In the first paragraph, descriparagraph, explain why you.  A good charity in my city is 3. This organization works to red the number of homeless people streets. Shelter believes the b to do this is to	a charity, an organization that helps people. The what the charity does. In the second think the charity is useful.  Shelter.  Juce  On our best way  because
Write two paragraphs about In the first paragraph, descriparagraph, explain why you.  A good charity in my city is ? This organization works to red the number of homeless people streets. Shelter believes the b to do this is to  Shelter is my favorite charity	a charity, an organization that helps people. The what the charity does. In the second think the charity is useful.  Shelter. Luce on our best way because to the

# Never stop learning.

### Choose the correct words or phrases.

1.	I'm interested in human behavior, so I'm planning to take a class
	in,
	(geography / psychology / math)
2.	I want to take a course in
	, such
	as commerce or accounting.
	(education / business / social science)
3.	I'd prefer not to study
	because I'm not
	very comfortable in hospitals. (engineering /
	new media / nursing)
4.	I'd really like to work in Information
	Technology, so I'm thinking of taking
	courses in
	(computer science / finance / English)



### What would you prefer?

A	Write questions with would rather or would prefer using the cues.	
	1. take a science class / an art class	
	Would you rather take a science class or an art class?	O
	Would you prefer to take a science class or an art class?	
	2. study part time / full time	
	3. have a boring job that pays well / an exciting job that pays less	
	4. take a long vacation once a year / several short vacations each year	
В	Write answers to the questions in part A.	
-	printe another to the queeners in pent it	

### Love it or leave it

First, complete speaker A's questions with four things you would not like to do. Use ideas in the box or your own ideas.

> learn to play the accordion learn clothing design learn how to repair watches study sociology take a class in personal finance take a cooking class



- B Now write responses for speaker B. Use the short answers I'd rather not or I'd prefer not to and say what you would prefer to do.

### Answer these questions and give reasons.

- On your day off, would you rather stay home or go out?
   I'd rather stay home than go out because
- 2. Would you prefer to have a cat or a bird?
- **3.** Would you rather live in the city or the country?
- **4.** When you entertain friends, would you rather invite them over for dinner or take them out to a restaurant?
- 5. Would you prefer to see a new movie at the theater or download it and watch it at home?

#### Online learning, the schools of the future?

- A Have you taken an online class? Would you like to? Would you prefer to study online rather than at school? Write your answers.
- Read the online newspaper article. Underline the sentences that contain the answers to these questions.
  - 1. What is a MOOC?
  - 2. Why do so few students complete a MOOC?
  - 3. Do professors who teach MOOCs think that they are as difficult as courses taken in a classroom?
  - 4. What are critics of MOOCs afraid of?

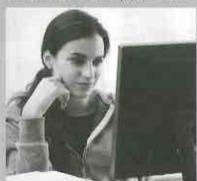
#### FREE COLLEGE FOR EVERYONE?

posted

A revolution in education is going to happen. Massive Online Open Courses (MOOCs for short) are designed for students who cannot afford, cannot get to, or simply don't want to attend classes in a university classroom. MOOCs are going to be of great importance to economically disadvantaged people, as well as people who live far from a university campus. The only requirement to attend a MOOC is access to a computer with an Internet connection, which is becoming more common each day.

Many MOOCs are created by top professors in their fields who teach at prestigious universities in the U.S., like Princeton, Harvard, and Stanford. These professors may teach online courses at their universities, but with a MOOC they can reach students all over the world. At the moment, not all universities accept academic credit for a MOOC. However, almost half of the professors who have taught a MOOC believe that the coursework is as demanding as the work done in a traditional university class. Many of these professors are not paid for teaching MOOCs by their universities; they do it because they want to

make education available to everyone, they love teaching, and they enjoy being able to communicate with so many students online.



MOOC students do not pay tuition, which is perhaps the greatest appeal of these courses. Most professors do not even require students to buy textbooks, which can be very expensive as well. This further reduces the cost of education. On the other hand, despite the affordability of MOOCs, MOOC students do not receive diplomas, which may lessen their appeal. Students may receive certification if they

pass the course, but of the 33,000 students enrolled in MOOCs today, the completion rate is strikingly low, at only 10%. Because a MOOC doesn't cost anything, students don't have to worry about losing money if they decide to drop the class. And many of them. ultimately do,

So while there are upsides to MOOCs, they are not without their critics. Some professors fear that in the future there may be two kinds of university courses: expensive and superior courses at a traditional university where small groups of students meet in classes with their professors, and Inexpensive and Inferior massive online courses where students will never meet their professors nor even their fellow students. These critics also point out that students must be disciplined self-starters to be successful in a MOOC and that students often develop the skills of perseverance, timemanagement, and self-discipline by learning together with other students in a traditional university classroom.

C	Write	answers	to	these	questions.
---	-------	---------	----	-------	------------

- 1. Do you think MOOCs are going to be the courses of the future? Why or why not?
- 2. What do you see as the main advantage of MOOCs? The main disadvantage?
- What would you prefer to take as a MOOC: a humanities course (such as literature, art, or history) or a science course (such as biology, chemistry, or engineering)? Why did you choose that course?



## Complete the sentences with by + gerund. Use not if needed. Use the ideas in the box or your own information.

cook at home eat good food

eat out exercise regularly go out more often stay home

study dance use social media







1.	A good way to enjoy the weekend is <u>not by staying home but by going out with friends.</u>
2.	A good way to keep in touch with old friends is
3.	You can make new friends
4.	The best way to save money is
5.	You could stay in shape
6.	I stay healthy
7.	One way to learn self-confidence is

## 74

#### Choose the correct words or phrases.

(cooperation / perseverance / time management)

1.	1. Robin shows her by volunteering to	help people with			
	cancer. (competitiveness / communication skills / concern for o	:hers)			
2.	<b>2.</b> When I was young, I didn't understand the importance of				
	But when I started paying my own bills, I realized it's an import	ant skill.			
	(money management / cooperation / perseverance)				
3.	3. I learned from my parents. They tau	ght			
me the importance of using my imagination and making art.					
	(creativity / courtesy / self-confidence)				
4.	4. Gina always gets upset with people who disagree with her. I wi	sh she would show			
	more (perseverance / self-confiden	ce / tolerance)			
5.	5. I recently joined a choir, and I love it. But you need a lot of				
	, because you have to practice the				
	same piece of music for weeks before you're ready to perform	it!			

### Personal qualities

A Read about each student in these descriptions and choose a suitable quality for each one. competitiveness creativity self-confidence time management cooperation perseverance self-discipline tolerance 1. Alex is always on time for everything. He's never even five minutes late. He keeps track of everything on his calendar. I wish I were as good at ______ as Alex is. 2. Frank finds school very hard, but no one tries harder than he does. He always spends the whole weekend at the library trying to keep up with his studies. He shows great 3. Melissa always wants to do better than everyone else. In school, she always tries to get the best grades. Her favorite sport is field hockey because she's the best player in the school. No one needs to teach Melissa 4. Jennifer has more ______ than any of her classmates. She writes fascinating stories that show she has a wonderful imagination. She's also very artistic and does very interesting paintings. 🖪 Write two similar descriptions of people you know. Either use two of the qualities you didn't use in part A or choose other qualities. 2. _____

## My way

M	y v	vay	
A		t two methods of learning each of ese skills.	
		become a good guitarist  by teaching myself  by taking lessons  improve my writing ability in English	
	3.	become a more confident public speaker	my first guitar
	4.	learn more about personal finance	
	5.	become skilled at auto repair	
	6.	learn a new computer program	15 years later
В	usi	ing would rather (not) or would prefer (not	
	1.		elf than by taking lessons.
	2.	•	they're expensive.
	3.		
	4.		
	5		
	J.		
	6.		

9 Getting things done

## Which service does each person need? Choose the correct word or phrase.

computer repair	house painting
dry cleaning	language tutoring
home repairs	Iawn mowing

#### 1. <u>lawn mowing</u>

Ken: I have a new home and don't have much time for yard work. I mowed the lawn two weeks ago, and I need to cut it again. I'd like to save money, but perhaps I'll just have to pay someone to do it for me.

Akiko: I don't like the flowered wallpaper in my bedroom or the dark color of the walls in my living room. I want to have the wallpaper removed so the whole place looks bigger and brighter with fun, modern colors everywhere.

Margaret: Now that it's getting colder, I need to take my winter clothes out of storage. Some things I can wash in the washing machine, but I should take my wool coat to that new place around the corner.

Steven: I have a lot of work to do this week, but my laptop stopped working! I tried to fix it, but I don't know how. I can't afford to buy a new laptop.

Eric: I'm so excited! I'm finally going to Quebec this summer. I studied French in high school, but I'm not sure how much I remember now. Do you know anyone who can help me improve my French?

Karen: I really want to move into that studio apartment I found downtown. The only problem is that there are a lot of little things that need to be repaired. Where can I get a leaky faucet and a broken lock repaired?







## Where can I get ...?

A Match the verbs in column A with the nouns in column B.

A	3	10-4	The second second
cut —	a stain	1	cut my hair
cut — check	my blood pressure	2	
do (	my computer	3	
fix	- my hair	4	
print	my nails	5	
remove	my pants	6	
shorten	my photos	7	

- B First, use the items in part A to write Where can I get . . . ? or Where can I have . . . ? questions for speaker A. Then write responses for speaker B using your own ideas.
  - 1. A: Where can I get my hair cut? B: You can get it cut at May's Salon.
  - 2. A:
  - 3. A: _____



- B:
- 5. A: _____
  - B:
- 6. A: _____ B: _____
- 7. A: _____

Where can you have these services done? Write sentences with You can have . . . .



Come to **SALON 21** 

for an haircut!

**AMAZING** 



1. You can have your hair cut at Salon 21.



DREAM CLEAN

We dry-clean your clothes like no one else.

CARPET WORLD

3.

We'll clean your carpets so they're as good as new.



We do nails (and only nails)





...the best car wash in town!

Service your washing machine to keep it running its best.

Call Hal's Repairs at 555-1838



At EYE to EYE,

we can examine your eyes in 30 minutes.

## 4

#### Less could be better

A Look at the two pictures. Where have you dreamed about living, in an apartment in the city or in a house in the suburbs? Why? Where would your parents like to live? Why?





Do you want your parents' furniture, family photos, old toys, and sports equipment? If you're a millennial, the answer is likely to be "no."

Millennials are people who became adults at the beginning of the 21st century, and they are not necessarily interested in collecting things. And boomers. Americans born in the years after World War II, are finding out that their children have very different ideas about how to live "the good life." Millennials do not feel the need to have a lot of things. They would rather have experiences, like tourism, art, and sports activities. This preference for "less is better" - or downsizing - is partly a result of the world economic crisis and the student debt that many young adults have. The lack of jobs has made millennials want to lower their expenses. And they feel that they must pay off their student loans before they can get married and have children of their own. Because millennials are waiting to start families, they tend to prefer to live in apartments rather than large houses like their parents. First, they simply don't need that much space. Second, houses are

expensive. Third, houses are often located in the suburbs, farther away from the culture and diversity that cities have to offer and that many millennials want.

But, in the latest twist of generational clashes, millennials are finding it more and more difficult to afford city living. Boomers, who generally have more money to spend than millennials, are finally ready to sell their houses now that their children have moved out. When they do, many then use that money to buy an apartment in the city where they can start a new life with all the amenities cities have to offer to people with money.

With this increase in demand, the prices of apartments have gone up, and millennials are discovering that it is very difficult to compete economically with their boomer parents. One option is for millennials to live together. Today some of them are renting houses or large apartments that several people can share. More than a few people think that this kind of downsizing, besides being good for the pocketbook, is good for the planet.

Read the article about downsizing. Check ( $\checkmark$ ) the true statements. For statements that are false, write the true information.
1. Adult children still enjoy receiving furniture from their parents.
2. Boomers are Americans born before World War II.
3. Downsizing is the philosophy that "less is better."
4. The competition between boomers and millennials has a lot to do with money.
5. The next step in downsizing could be for boomers and millennials to share houses and large apartments.

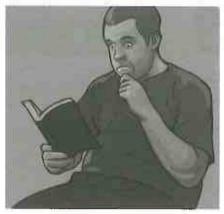
В

#### Write two suggestions for each of these problems.

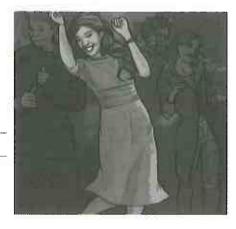


- 1. A: I never have any energy, so I can never do anything except work. I sleep all weekend, so don't tell me to get more rest!
  - B: Have you thought about <u>taking an aerobics class?</u> Another option is to improve your diet.
- 2. A: My problem is a constant backache. I just don't know what to do to get rid of it. I had someone give me a massage, but it didn't really help.
  - B: Maybe you could





- 3. A: My doctor told me to get more exercise. She strongly recommended swimming, but I find swimming so boring! In fact, aren't all sports boring?
  - B: Why don't you
- 4. A: I'm very sociable, and I have great difficulty saying no. I end up doing things every night of the week - going to parties, clubs, the movies. I'm so tired all the time!
  - B: It might be a good idea _____





- 5. A: I like to be a good neighbor, but the woman next door drives me crazy. She's always knocking on my door to chat. And whenever I go out into the yard, she goes into her yard - and talks for hours!
  - B: What about

## Choose the correct three-word phrasal verb for each sentence.



1.	I don't know how my grand	mother	_ all the new	
	technology. She's better at understanding new gadgets than I am! (comes up with /			
	cuts down on / keeps up wi	th)		
2.	My cousin didn't know what to do for her mother's 60th birthday, but she finally			
		the idea of a surprise picnic with	the whole family.	
	(came up with / got along w	vith / looked forward to)		
3.	llene has done it again! She	only met Chris two months ago,	and already she has	
		him. Why doesn't she try to work	out any problems?	
	(broken up with / gotten ald	ong with / kept up with)		
4.	After Michelle saw her doct	or, she decided to	eating fast	
	food. She wants to lose some weight and start exercising again in order to keep fit.			
	(cut down on / look forward to / take care of)			
5.	We're really lucky in my fam	nily because we all	each other	
	very well. (come up with / get along with / look forward to)			
6.	I've done pretty badly in my	y classes this semester, so I'm not	: really	
		receiving my grades. (getting alo	ng with / looking	
	forward to / taking care of)			
7.	l can't	that loud music anymore!	l can't stand hip-hop,	
	and I'm going to tell my neighbor right now. (cut down on / put up with /			
	take care of)			
8.	I've been getting sick a lot	lately, and I often feel tired. I real	ly need to start	
		my health. (cutting down on / ke	eping up with /	
	taking care of)			

## 10 A matter of time

## Circle the correct word that describes each sentence.

- 1. Events in December 2010 led to the peaceful removal of Tunisia's prime minister in January 2011. (natural disaster / epidemic / revolution))
- 2. In 2014, a new species of insect was found in Vietnam. It has a body over 30 centimeters long and is the second longest insect in the world. (discovery / invention / epidemic)
- **3.** On June 12, 2016, a gunman entered a nightclub in Florida where he killed 49 people and injured more than 50. (invention / terrorist act / achievement)
- **4.** Advances in robot technology have come a long way in recent years. Scientists like Japan's Hiroshi Ishiguro have created human-like robots that can have conversations with each other and with humans. (achievement / disaster / terrorist act)
- **5.** Prime Minister Benazir Bhutto of Pakistan was killed after leaving a campaign rally in December 2007. (assassination / election / revolution)
- **6.** In 2010, a series of floods in Australia affected over 200,000 people and caused nearly a billion Australian dollars in damage. (discovery / natural disaster / epidemic)

## Complete the sentences. Use words from the box.

	ago	for	from	in	since	to	
1.		first b 1920s		pop	ular	in	
2				as in	vented	about	45 yea
3.	. Bras				capital o	ity of	Brazil
4.	. The	first la		as p	roduced	d	
5.	. Mex	ico ha	s been	inde	pender than 20		rs.
6			r II laste		<u></u>		1939
7	. Viet	nam v	as sepa	arate	d into t t 20 yea	-	rts
8.	. East	and \		erma	ny have		united



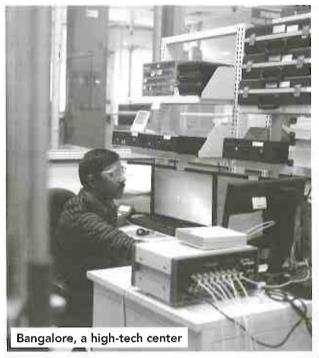


## Nouns and verbs

A Complete this chart. Then check your answers in a dictionary.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
achievement	achieve	existence	
assassination		exploration	
demonstration		explosion	
discovery		invention	
discrimination		transformation	
election		vaccination	

B Choose verbs from the chart in part A to complete these sentences. Use the correct verb tense.





- Over the past several decades, the Indian city of Bangalore has <u>transformed</u> itself into a high-tech center.
- 2. In World War I, many soldiers were _____ against typhoid, a deadly bacterial disease.
- 3. Aung San, the man who led Myanmar to independence, was _____ in 1947. No one is certain who killed him.
- **4.** The European Union has _____ since 1957.
- **5.** Until the 1960s, there were many laws that ______ against African Americans in certain regions of the United States.
- **6.** In 1885, Louis Pasteur _____ a cure for rabies when he treated a young boy who was bitten by a dog.
- 7. In recent years, teams of experts in countries such as Cambodia and Angola have been safely ______ land mines in order to rid those countries of these dangerous weapons.
- **8.** One of the few parts of the world that has not been _____ much is Antarctica. The extreme climate makes it dangerous to travel far from research centers.

## Vaccines past, present, and future

A What are vaccinations? If necessary, scan the article to find out.





## VACCINATIONS





For well over a thousand years, smallpox was a disease that everyone feared. The disease killed much of the native population in South America when the Spanish arrived there in the early sixteenth century. By the end of the eighteenth century, smallpox was responsible for the deaths of about one in ten people around the world. Those who survived the disease were left with ugly scars on their skin.

It had long been well known among farmers that people who worked with cows rarely caught smallpox; instead, they often caught a similar but much milder disease called cowpox. A British doctor named Edward Jenner was fascinated by this, and so he studied cowpox. He became convinced that, by injecting people with cowpox, he could protect them against the much worse disease smallpox. In 1796, he vaccinated a boy with cowpox and, two months later, with smallpox. The boy did not get smallpox. In the next two years, Jenner vaccinated several children in the same way, and none of them got the disease.

News of Jenner's success soon spread. In 1800, the Royal Vaccine Institution was founded in Berlin, Germany. In the following year, Napoleon opened a similar institute in Paris, France. It took nearly two centuries to achieve Jenner's dream of ridding the world of smallpox. In 1967, the World Health Organization (WHO) started an ambitious vaccination program, and the last known case of smallpox was recorded in Somalia in 1977.

The future of vaccinations aims at the eradication of three diseases that can be caused by mosquito bites: malaria, Zika virus, and dengue. Malaria is an infectious disease that is still a problem, in part because the virus that causes the disease hides in the cells away from the immune system. Zika virus has recently been discovered in various places all over the world, and it is particularly dangerous for pregnant women. At this time there is no vaccine for Zika virus, although scientists are working on one. Dengue is a disease that has multiplied alarmingly in recent years, but in the last two years a vaccine has been successfully developed for people between 9 and 45 years old.



Read the article about vaccinations. Complete the chart with the history of events in the story of vaccinations.

Date	Event
1. Early 16th century	Smallpox killed much of the native population in South America.
2. End of the 18th century	
<b>3.</b> 1796	
<b>4.</b> 1800	
<b>5.</b> 1801	
<b>6.</b> 1967	
<b>7.</b> 1977	
8. Future challenge	

## 5

## Life in 2050

A Complete these predictions about life in 2050. Use the future continuous of the verb given. Then add two more predictions of your own.

Life on the moon?

D.,	2	^		Λ		
Bv	_	u	Э	v.		

1.	some people <u>will be living</u>
	in cities on the moon. (live)
2.	many people
	temperature-controlled body suits. (wear)
3.	most people
	cars that run on fuel from garbage. (drive)
4.	people
	in a new Olympic event - mind reading. (compete)
5.	

Complete these predictions about what will have happened by 2050. Use the future perfect. Then add two more predictions of your own.

### By 2050, . . .

- **1.** computers <u>will have replaced</u> people as translators. (replace)
- 2. ties for men _____ out of fashion. (go)
- **3.** scientists ______ a cheap way of getting drinking water from seawater. (discover)
- 4. medical researchers _______a cure for cancer. (find)
- 5. _____
- 6. _____



	-	
	-/11	
ν.	-74	
ĸ.	രു	

## Write two responses to each question.

1. What will or won't you be doing in ten years? (Use the future continuous.) I won't be living with my parents, 2. How will cities of the future be different? (Use will.) Cities won't allow cars downtown. 3. How will life in small villages in your country have changed in the next 20 years? (Use the future perfect.) More people will have moved back from cities to small villages. **4.** How do you think the world's weather will change during this century? (Use will.) The weather will be warmer, and the summers will be longer. **5.** What advances will scientists have made by 2050? (Use the future perfect.)

Scientists will have found a way to grow enough food for everyone.



1. 2.		we live and wrs.	nes.					Edit Id
			~~~~				6	
			 		3		9	
					M		1	1
cł	rite two paragorice. In the fire	st paragrapl	h, describe th	ne past. In	the seco			
cł pa		st paragrapl ribe how yo changes within	h, describe the u think the fu	ne past. In	the seco			
cł pa	noice. In the file aragraph, described a music group space exploration E yeglasses we have earpieces to the eyes or place them easier to us	changes within changes within the invented in keep the glassed on the nose. It	h, describe the u think the fundamental the na region test the 13th centuries on the weare in the 1700s, eye entury, contacts	ne past. In uture will b alth chnology y in Italy. The r's face. Inste	the seconds.	ad to be he with earp	eld in front leces, mal	ding
ch pa	roice. In the file aragraph, description a music group space exploration E yeglasses we have exploration the eyes or place them easier to us convenient for perfective lenses computer technological acconvenient. In recorrective lenses computer technological accomputer te	changes within changes within changes within the properties of the plassed on the nose. It is the 20th complete to use convent years, document	the 13th centures on the 1700s, eye entury, contacts rective lenses. The people with a by replace eye obly replace eye	ne past. In ature will be alth chnology of last and control oped lasers a ertain types	the seconds. See early great, they have designed amon, make the control of vision property feet of vision property feet.	lasses didr ad to be he I with earp ding it even re practica hniques, w roblems. In	eld in front lieces, mal easier an land hich can r	ding d mor nak o
ch pa	in the flication of the example of the exploration	changes within changes within changes within the properties of the plassed on the nose. It is the 20th complete to use convent years, document	the 13th centures on the 1700s, eye entury, contacts rective lenses. The people with a by replace eye obly replace eye	ne past. In ature will be alth chnology of last and control oped lasers a ertain types	the seconds. See early great, they have designed amon, make the control of vision property feet of vision property feet.	lasses didr ad to be he I with earp ding it even re practica hniques, w roblems. In	eld in front lieces, mal easier an land hich can r	ding d mor nak o

11 Rites of passage

Milestones

lie 2 folie 2
Read these statements. Check (🗸) the ones that are true for you. For statements that are false, write the true information.
Example: As soon as I got my first cell phone, I called all my friends.
The moment I got a cell phone. I called my parents or I've never had a cell phone.
1. By the time I was three years old, I had already learned two languages.
2. Before I started school, I was carefree – I used to watch TV all day.
3. After I started taking the bus by myself, I became more independent.
4. As soon as I got my driver's license, my parents let me drive everywhere.
5. The moment I earned my own money, I opened a bank account.
6. Once I started learning English, I quit studying other languages.
7. Until I graduated from high school, I was very unsophisticated.
8. Before I became more independent, I thought I knew more than my parents.
Write three true statements about how things have changed over time for you, your family, or your friends. Use time clauses. 1.
2
3.

2	Complete these descriptions. Use words from the box.							
	ambitious carefree argumentative naive	rebellious sophisticated						
	and she never says anything silly.	She always dresses well, she knows lots of intelligent people, atricia. She questioned and criticized everything I said. I wish she						
	weren't so							
		She trusts everyone and thinks everyone is good, and my parents started to let me do what						
	5. Eric is really	He wants to own his own business by the time he's 25.						
	6. I wish I could be like Susie. She's so about anything.	and never seems to worry						
	One of my best friends is Jenning She's very mature and conscients and she always gives me good a Until 1 met her. I had been making some bad decisions Jennifer is also very generous. She always helps her friends whethey need it. For example, the mashe found out I was sick last we she came over and visited me.	nen noment						

 ${\mathbb A}$. Scan the article from a sports magazine about Usain Bolt. What lesson did he learn as a child?

FAST



Usain Bolt is called "Lightning" Bolt because he is considered the fastest man in the world. The Jamaican runner is an Olympic champion in the 100- and 200-meter sprint, as well as in the 4x100 relay, a race in which four runners each sprint 100 meters and then pass the baton to the next runner. He is the first man in the modern Olympic Games to win nine gold medals in the sprint. He is also the first athlete to win gold medals in the 100- and 200-meter races as well as in the 4x100 relay race in three Olympic Games, in 2008, 2012, and 2016. In his autobiography, Faster than Lightning, Bolt writes that sports interested him most as a child. He also says that in school he learned something important about himself: he is ambitious because he loves to compete and to win.



He doesn't want to be one of the runners-up. This desire to be the best, plus his natural physical speed, brought him to the attention of Pablo McNeil, the former Olympic sprinter who was teaching athletics at Boit's high school. Pablo McNeil convinced him to concentrate on sprinting and trained him in that sport. When he was 15, Bolt launched himself into world-class athletics in the 2002 World Junior Championships in Jamaica's capital, Kingston. He was so nervous that he put his shoes on the wrong feet! But that was another important lesson: he would never allow stress to affect him again before a race. In spite of his nervousness, he became the youngest World Junior athlete to win the prestigious gold medal when he ran in the 200-meter sprint. At the 2008 Olympic Games, Bolt learned another lesson: he should never stop learning. He broke two records at those games, becoming the fastest sprinter in the 100- and 200-meter race. At the end of the 100-meter race, he shocked everyone when he slowed down before the finish line. He was ecstatic because he already knew he was the winner. Some people felt he was too carefree. They thought he should have sprinted all the way. In the following 200-meter race, he didn't slow down. He ran all the way in record time, like the fastest man in the world.

В	Read the article.	Look at th	ne words an	d phrases i	n bold in	the article.	Write de	efinitions c	r synonyms
	for each word or	phrase.							

1.	sprint
2.	runners-up
3.	launched himself into
4.	prestigious
5.	ecstatic
4	record time

🝔 What factors mentioned in the article do you think have helped Usain Bolt to become a successful athlete?

Write sentences about your regrets. Use should (not) have.



- 1. I spent all my money on clothes. Now I can't afford to take a vacation.

 I shouldn't have spent all my money on clothes.
- 2. I was very argumentative with my boss, so she fired me.
- 3. I changed jobs. Now I work in a bank. My job isn't very interesting.
- **4.** I bought a new TV with my credit card. Now I can't afford the payments.
- 5. I studied music in school, but I'm much better at computer science.
- 6. I was completely rebellious when I was a student, so I got very bad grades.
- 7. My friend asked to copy my homework, so I let him. The teacher found out and gave us both Fs.
- **8.** My cousin invited me to a party. I accepted but didn't put the date in my calendar. I forgot all about it.
- **9.** I was very naive when I was younger. I lent money to people, but they hardly ever paid me back.
- **10.** My friend asked for my opinion on her new hairstyle. I told her I didn't like it. Now she's not talking to me.

A Rewrite the sentences as hypothetical situations. Use the words given.

- 1. I should have studied English sooner. (get a better job) If I'd studied English sooner, I would have gotten a better job.
- 2. We should have made a reservation. (eat already)
- 3. I should have put on sunscreen. (not get a sunburn)
- 4. You should have let me drive. (arrive by now)
- 5. I should have ignored your text in class. (not get in trouble)
- B Write sentences describing hypothetical situations. Use the words given and your own ideas.



1.	dependable <u>If I had been more dependable as a teenager.</u>
	my parents would have let me borrow the car more often.
	ambitious
3.	pragmatic
4.	naive
5.	rebellious
6.	wise

7

Complete the conversation. Circle the correct time expressions and use the correct tense of the verbs given.

Hector: I've made such a mess of my life!	
Scott: What do you mean?	
Hector: If I hadn't accepted (not accept)	
a job (as soon as)/ before / until) I graduated,	
1 around	MENDIE
(travel)	
South America all summer – just like you did.	
You were so carefree.	
Scott: You know, I should (not go)	a JA
to South America.	Clar A
I should	1 1 1 1
(take)	
the great job I was offered. (After / Before /	
Until) I returned from South America,	
it was too late.	
Hector: But my job is so depressing! (Before / The moment / Until) ! started it,	
I hated it – on the very first day! That was five years ago, and nothing's cl	hanged.
l should for another job right away.	
(look)	
Scott: Well, start looking now. I posted my résumé online last month, and five o	companies contacted
me right away. If I my résumé, no one	
(not post)	(contact)
I accepted one of the job offers.	
Hector: Really? What's the job?	
Scott: It's working as a landscape gardener. (Before / The moment / Until)	
I saw it, I knew it was right for me.	
Hector: But for me right now, the problem is that I get a very good salary and I ju	ust bought a house.
If I the house, I tal (not buy) (be able to)	ke a lower paying job.
(not buy) (be able to)	
Scott: Well, I guess you can't have everything. If I a (have)	better salary,
l a house, too. (buy)	

12 Keys to success

6. a reality TV show to be successful

ln	omplete these sentences wi order to.		1		
1.	<u>In order for</u> a resta	urant to be popular,			
	it has to have attractive decor.			USASTI	
2.	a movi	ie to be entertaining,	100	- 美文州	
	it has to have good actors and an	•	Earl & W	Man III	
3.	succee	ed in business, you often		III Brasen	1
	have to work long hours.		22	in line	ı,
4.	attract	new members, a sports	100	75	N.
	club needs to offer inexpensive m	•	10	100	
5.	speak	a foreign language well,		Val.	1
	it's a good idea to use the languag	-			
6.	it has to be able to find the latest				
				-ć	
W	rite sentences. Use the info				
W	have talented salespeople	work extremely long			
W	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies	work extremely long	stomer service		
W	have talented salespeople	work extremely long	stomer service	S	
	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies	work extremely long	stomer service	5	
	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies be clever and entertaining be a successful student	work extremely long provide excellent cut	stomer service resting character		
1.	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies be clever and entertaining be a successful student In order to be a successful stud	work extremely long provide excellent cut	stomer service resting character		
1.	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies be clever and entertaining be a successful student In order to be a successful stud a clothes store to be profitable	work extremely long provide excellent cur have drama and inte	stomer service resting character p with your stu	dies.	
1.	have talented salespeople keep up with your studies be clever and entertaining be a successful student In order to be a successful stud	work extremely long provide excellent cur have drama and inte	stomer service resting character p with your stu	dies.	

Choose the correct word or phrase.

1.	I didn't enjoy this book on how to succeed in business. It wasn't very
	<u>well written</u> . (affordable / well paid / well written)
2.	I learned a lot about how to run a successful bookstore from taking that class.
	I found it very (attractive / informative / knowledgeable)
3.	Annie has so many interesting ideas, and she's always thinking of new projects.
	She's very (clever / entertaining / tough)
4.	Debra is a salesperson, and she's good at her job. She's so
	that she sells three times as much as her co-workers. (unfriendly / affordable / persuasive)
5.	Matthew is one of the top models in Milan. He goes to the gym every day,
	so he looks really (clever / charming / muscular)
6.	Before opening a new store, it's important to think through all of your ideas and have
	(competitive salaries / a clear business plan / a reliable job)
7.	My new job has great benefits. We have unlimited time off, excellent health insurance, and
	(a good product / flexible working hours / a crowdfunding platform)

Read this information about journalists. Then write a paragraph about one of the people in the box or another person of your choice.

To be a successful journalist, you need to be both talented and dynamic. You have to write well and write quickly. In order to report the news, a journalist needs to have a good knowledge of world and current events. In addition, you must be able to report a story accurately.



The second of the second of						
an artist	a boss	a homemaker	a parent	a teacher		

I like it because . . .

 $\mathbb A$ For each pair of pictures, write one sentence about what you like and one sentence about what you dislike. Give reasons using the words given.



1. Hike this park because it's clean and there are a lot of trees. (because)



I don't like this park since (since)



2. (since)



3. _____(due to) _____(because of)

🕏 Think of an example in your city of each of these places: a restaurant, a hotel, and a shopping center. Write a sentence about why you like or dislike each one.

Example: The reason I don't like Cho Dang Gol Restaurant in my hometown is its noisy location right by the freeway.

2. _____

(the reason)



A new business with an ancient product

A Scan the article about Andean Grain. What is the secret that the company is selling?

SELLING SECRETS OF THE PAST

The Argentinian company Andean Grain is contributing to a comeback of highly nutritious loods that were unknown to many people during the last few hundred years. Andean Grain sells foods made from Indigenous Latin American plants, like chia seeds, amaranth, and quinoa. These plants are coming to prominence today because knowledgeable people have discovered that chia seeds, amaranth, and quinoa are superfoods, incredibly rich in vitamins and proteins.

Chia seeds were grown by the Aztecs as an energy tood. In order to travel long distances without having to stop, they drank a beverage consisting of chia seeds, lemon juice, and water. The Aztecs also cultivated amaranth, which they believed was a superfood, as do scientists today. Quinou was grown in the mountains of the Andes by the Incas. All three of these foods went out of favor after the conquest of Latin America in the 16th century. Wheat was preferred over these native plants, and they were almost unknown outside the countries that grew them. Nevertheless, these foods have become popular once more due to the health benefits that they are supposed to provide.

They appear to be of optimal benefit for the heart and brain, and rumor has it that they may help prevent cancer. They're also gluten-free. Because many people today have problems digesting the gluten in wheat, gluten-free foods have become very tashionable.

As a result, there is a great demand by the public for these superfoods. Andean Grain sells its products all over the world, but it is especially active in Europe, where it has a main office in the United Kingdom. From its base in Argentina, Andean Grain sends most of its native plants to Europe to be made into affordable breads, breakfast cereals, and today's popular trail mixes, which are combinations of dried fruits, nuts, and seeds.

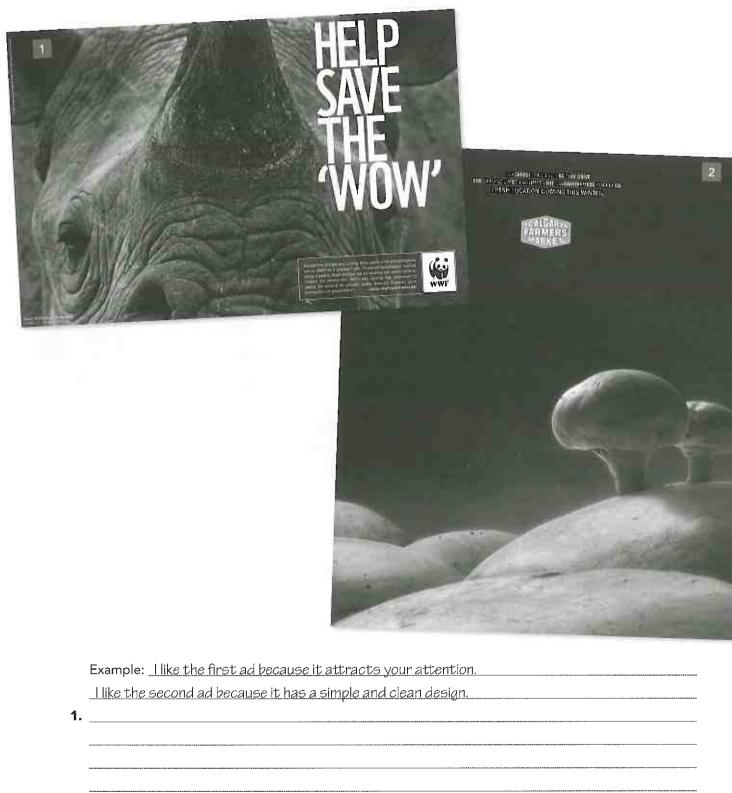
The secret is out, and what was hidden from the world for so many centuries has today become an important discovery of toods for our health. Did you know about these superfoods before the rest of the world discovered them just a few years ago?

В	Read the article. Look at the words and phrases in bold in the article.
	Write definitions or synonyms for each word or phrase.

1.	comeback
	indigenous
	to prominence
4.	superfood
5.	went out of favor
5.	rumor has it

Look at these advertisements and write two sentences about each one.

Describe the features and give reasons why you like or dislike the advertisements.



Do you have the right qualities?

A Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

	affordable athletic cle	ver entertaining	informative	knowledgeable	muscular	salesperson
2	to be a successful salesy store. I'm familiar with s but I don't know how to To be successful, person be fit and Weekend Talk ran for one	person in a hardwar ome common tools ouse most tools. hal trainers need to	e 🗼			
6	because it was so borin be successful on Saturd has to be I wouldn't be a good because I'm not very pe I found a fantastic news morning. It's really very detailed stories ab international news. For a salesperson to be she has to be Kate is so tennis, and basketball, a at all three sports. I like this store, but it's a are expensive.	ay evenings, it really ersuasive. website this It has out local and persuasive, he or with words She plays socceand she's excellent				
	Vrite sentences using the . apply for a job / write a		nfinitive clause	es with to or for.		
2	be an effective persona	l trainer / listen to y	our clients' n	eeds		
3	a restaurant / be succes	sful / delicious food	d at good prid	ces		
4	students / get good gra	ades / study hard ar	nd do their be	est		
5	i. learn a new language /	practice every day				

13 What might have been

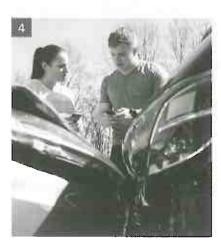
What do you think happened? Write an explanation for each event using past modals.







1. <u>She</u> :	may have lost her car key.		
2.			
3			
4			
5			
6			







Write two paragraphs about something strange that has happened to you. In the first paragraph, describe the situation. In the second paragraph, give two or three explanations for what happened.

at eight o'clock. They all On the day of the barbed			
my other friends could h do something else. Anoth	ave overslept, or the	y might have de	cided to
meant 8 P.M. instead of			CONST.
nswer these questions	. Write two explan	ations using pa	ast modals.
nswer these questions	. Write two explan	ations using pa	ast modals.
nswer these questions		y might have <u>buil</u> t	ast modals. t it to use as a church.
nswer these questions	1. The	y might have <u>buil</u> t	t it to use as a church.
Why do you think the a	1. The	y might have <u>buil</u> t	t it to use as a church.
Why do you think the a Britons built Stonehe	1. The last	y might have <u>built</u>	t it to use as a church.
Why do you think the a Britons built Stonehe They could have	1. The	y might have <u>built</u>	t it to use as a church.
Why do you think the a Britons built Stonehe	1. The	y might have <u>built</u>	t it to use as a church.
Why do you think the a Britons built Stonehe They could have	1. The	y might have <u>built</u>	t it to use as a church.

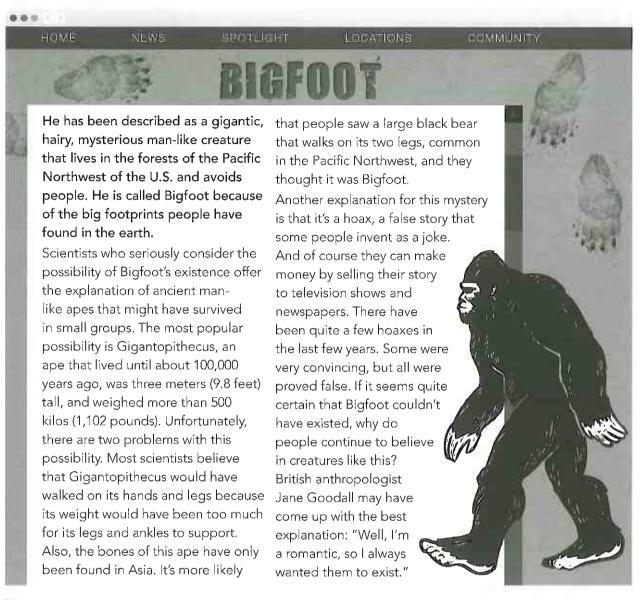


How	do yo	u think t	the early	y Pol	ynesi	ans
were	able :	to trave	l across	vast	ocea	ns?

5.	They may have
6.	

Strange creatures

 ${\Bbb A}$ Skim the online article about a world-famous legend. Where does the legend come from?



- Read the article. Then write answers to the questions.
 - 1. How might someone describe Bigfoot?
 - 2. Imagine that you have seen a creature resembling Bigfoot. Do you think you would have believed it was Bigfoot? Why or why not?
 - 3. What is the most popular possible explanation for Bigfoot from scientists?
 - 4. What is one problem with this popular explanation?
 - 5. What do you think people might have seen when they thought they saw Bigfoot?

Should have, could have, would have What should or shouldn't these people have done? Read each situation and check (✓) the best suggestion. 1. Mrs. King wouldn't let her children watch TV for a month because they broke a window playing baseball. She could have made them pay for the window. She shouldn't have done anything. It was an accident. She shouldn't have let them play baseball for a month. 2. Steve's old car broke down on the highway late one night, and his cell phone battery was dead. He left the car on the side of the road and walked home. He should have stopped a stranger's car to ask for a ride. He could have slept in his car till morning. He should have walked to the nearest pay phone and called a tow truck. 3. Sarah was in a park. She saw some people leave all their trash after they had finished their picnic. She did nothing. She did the right thing. I She should have asked them to throw away their trash. She could have thrown away the trash herself. 4. Edward's neighbors were renovating their kitchen. They made a lot of noise every day until midnight. Edward called the police. He shouldn't have called the police. He should have realized that they were trying to finish the job quickly. He could have asked them not to make any noise in the evenings. 5. Barbara's boss borrowed \$20 from her a month ago, but he forgot to pay her back. Barbara never said anything about it. She should have demanded her money back. She shouldn't have loaned it to him. She could have written him a nice email asking for the money. What would you have done in the situations in part A?

Wri	te suggestions or comments using past modals.
1.	I would have made them pay for the window.
2.	
3.	
4.	
5	

Nouns and verbs

A Complete the chart.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
assumption	assume		predict
criticism		suggestion	
demand		suspect	
excuse		warning	

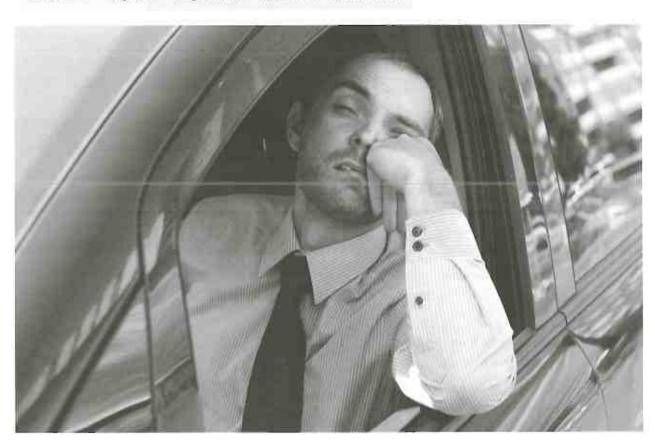
- B Complete the sentences using words from the chart in part A. For the verbs, use shouldn't have + past participle. For the nouns, use the appropriate singular or plural form.
 - 1. Last year some economists said that food and gas prices wouldn't increase. Those <u>predictions</u> were wrong! Both food and gas are more expensive now.
 - 2. Christopher having a beach party. It was so dark, I stepped in a hole and hurt my ankle.
 - 3. Andy bought an expensive ring and gave it to Millie for her birthday. A year later, he asked her to marry him. When she said no, he made an outrageous . He said he wanted his ring back!
 - co-worker not to be late for work so often. It was really none of my business.
 - 5. Lori said she was late because she got caught in traffic. Hmm. I've heard that _____before.
 - **6.** Kevin _____ would still be awake at midnight. I was asleep when he called.
 - 7. I thought that my roommate had taken my wallet, but I found it at the bottom of my bag. I _____ that my roommate took it. He would never do something like that.
 - 8. James _____ me for wearing jeans and a T-shirt to a friend's party. He always has negative things to say.



7

Complete these conversations. Use the past modals in the box and the verbs given. (More than one modal is possible.)

could have may have might have must have should have



1.	A:	Where's Luke? He's late	e.	
	B:	He <u>may have gott</u>	en (get) stuck in rush-hour traffic.	
	A:	He's always late! You k	now, he <u>should have taken</u> (take) the subway.	
2.	A:	Judy never responded	to my invitation.	
	B:	She	(not receive) it. You	_ (call) her.
3.	A:	Matt hasn't answered h	nis phone for a week.	
	B:	He	(go) on vacation. He	_ (tell) you, though -
		sometimes he's very in	considerate.	
4.	A:	I can never get in touc	n with Kathy. She never returns phone calls or answers	texts!
	B:	Yeah, I have the same	problem with her. Her voice mail	(run out) of
		space. She	(get) a new phone service by now.	
5.	A:	Thomas is strange. Sor	netimes he works really hard, but sometimes he seems	s pretty lazy. Last
		week, he hardly did an	y work.	
	B:	Well, you know, he	(not feel) well. Still, he	
		(tell) you that he was si	ck.	
6.	A:	I ordered a book online	e a month ago, but it still hasn't arrived.	
	B:	They	(have) a problem with the warehouse, but th	еу
			(let) you know.	

14 Creative careers

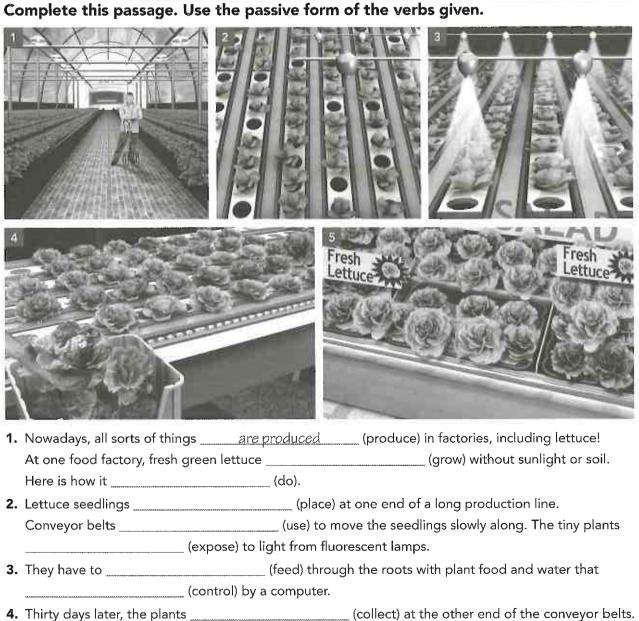
Complete the conversation. Use the passive form of the verbs given.



Anna:	Putting on a fashion show must be really fun!		
Marcus:	Yeah, but it's also challenging. All the clothes have to (number) so that the models wear them in the right se (mark) with the name of the	quence. And they also have	e to
Anna:	What happens if something	_ (wear) by the wrong mod	el?
Marcus:	Well, if it doesn't fit, it looks terrible! First impressions(sell) because they look go	• •	f clothes
Anna:	Do you have to rehearse for a fashion show?		
Marcus:	Of course! There's more involved than just models and (use), and music		ng the show.
Anna:	It sounds complicated.		
Marcus:	Oh, it is. And at some fashion shows, a commentary m	nay	(give).
Anna:	A commentary? What do you mean?		
Marcus:	Well, someone talks about the clothes as theyby the models.	(show)	on the runway
Anna:	It sounds like timing is really important.		
Marcus:	Exactly. Everything has to(ruin)	time) perfectly! Otherwise,	the show may

Choose the correct words or phrases.

1. Often, special music has to be ______for a film. (written / designed / hired) 2. A play may be ______ for several weeks before it is shown to the public. (shot / taken / rehearsed) 3. Designing ______ for actors to wear requires a lot of creativity. (scripts / movies / clothes) **4.** Newspapers are ______ to stores after they are printed. (written / delivered / reported) are added after the film has been put together. 5. (Scenes / Sound effects / Actors)



5. They may _____ (deliver) to the vegetable market the same day.

THE RESIDENCE AND THE RESIDENCE OF THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF THE P

Professional fashion blogger

 ${\mathbb A}$ Scan the article and use the past participle form of the words in the box to complete the sentences with the passive voice.

concern inspire create interest interview notice

A Passion for Fashion

In just the last ten years, a new job category has : professional fashion blogger. The story of one of the very first professional bloggers is an inspiration to young people everywhere who are 2 with how to make a good living while also doing something that is important to them. In 2007, Imran Amed, a young Canadian-British citizen who had recently moved to London. decided to take advantage of some free time he had while he wasn't busy working at his job. He sat down in his living room and began to write about something he was passionately 1 in: fashion. Sitting on his sofa, he created a blog that allowed him to communicate with readers who shared his fascination with the fashion industry. Naturally, at the beginning, his readers were mainly his friends and family. But because of his ability to tell interesting and perceptive stories that made readers want to keep on reading, his blog was soon * by many people, and by professionals in the industry. In time, advertisers began to pay Amed's blog, The Business of Fashion, for the opportunity to connect

with all those readers and potential clients. Amed

was also an excellent interviewer. His interviews

with Karl Lagerfeld, Natalie Massenet, Nick Knight, and other giants in the fashion industry became another great attraction to his blog. Designers were willing to be 5 by him because his questions and comments were relevant, intelligent, and by his passion for fashion. Today, professionals in 200 countries consider The Business of Fashion



Imran Amed, accepting the Business of Fashion Media Award at the 2016 CFDA Fashion Awards

to be required reading in order to keep up with the latest developments in fashion. Thirty employees now fill the demand for information on fashion. More recent fashion blogs like Chiara Ferragni's The Blonde Salad in Italy and Sabina Hernandez's blog Te lo dije nena (I told you, girl) in Argentina are now also very successful.

Potential professional bloggers, take note: passionate interest is fundamental to success. If you can discover your passion, then the power of that energy will be the magnet that captures and holds your readers' attention. That is exactly what happened one day when Imran Amed sat down and began to write a blog on his sofa.

	and the article. Check (\checkmark) the true statement or the statements that are false, write the tru	e information.
1.	Imran Amed has always lived in London.	
2.	His family and friends are not interested	in fashion and do not read about it.
3.	Because Imran Amed knows how to tell	an interesting story, many people began to read his blog.
4.	Designers enjoy giving interviews to Imra that he is interested in fashion.	an Amed because his questions are intelligent and show
5.	Chiara Ferragni's and Sabina Hernandez	's blogs were started before The Business of Fashion.
6.	If you want to be a professional blogger, is money.	the most important thing you will need for success

5

Join these sentences with who or that. Add a comma wherever one is needed.





	Examples:
	Broadcast presenters are journalists.
	They report the news on television.
	Broadcast presenters are journalists who report the news on television.
	A junior newspaper reporter should be curious.
	He or she is often new to journalism.
	A junior newspaper reporter, who is often new to journalism, should be curious.
1.	An editorial director chooses only the most interesting stories.
	He or she tells the reporters what news stories to cover.
2.	A game animator is a skilled artist.
	He or she creates detailed graphics for computer games.
3.	A storyboard artist is a creative person.
	He or she illustrates plans for individual scenes for a movie.
4.	Stunt people perform dangerous moves in films and TV shows.
	The films and shows have a lot of action scenes.
5.	TV sitcoms include actors and actresses.
	They are recognized by television viewers around the world.

Match the definitions with the jobs.

1. a cinematographer __a 2. a film editor _____ 3. a gossip columnist 4. a graphic designer _____ 5. a club DJ 6. a band manager 7. a web content manager _____

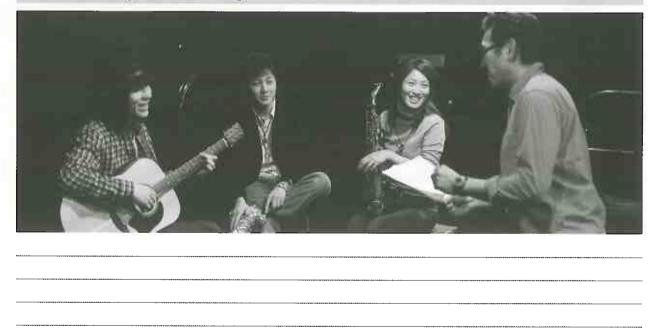
8. a talk show host

- a. a journalist who specializes in reporting on the personal lives of famous people
- b. someone who plays music in a dance club
- c. someone that helps a movie director put together the best "takes"
- d. a person who is in charge of choosing the text and pictures on a website
- e. a TV personality who invites guests to come on his or her program
- f. a person who takes care of business for a band
- g. a person who operates the main camera during shooting
- h. someone that creates the design for a printed work

Choose a job from Exercise 6 or another job you're interested in. In the first paragraph, describe the job. In the second paragraph, explain why the job interests you. Use relative clauses in some of your descriptions.

I'd like to be a band manager for a rock or pop band. Band managers are the people who schedule concerts and shows for bands. They also help bands make creative decisions about things like CD covers, magazine interviews, and even music. In addition, band managers who know people in the music business can help a band become successful.

This job interests me because I love music, and I enjoy being around people who sing and play instruments. Also, I'm organized and reliable, and I think that I have the skills that a good band manager needs.



Describe six steps in the process of renovating a restaurant. Use the passive form of the verbs given below.











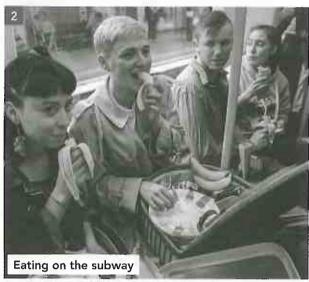


- 1. First, <u>a renovation plan is approved.</u> (a renovation plan / approve)
- **2.** Next, _____ (new walls / build)
- **3.** Then _____ (the walls / paint)
- **4.** After that, _____ (new lighting / install)
- 5. Then _____ (new furniture / deliver)
- **6.** Finally, _____ (the restaurant / reopen)

15 A law must be passed!

What should be done about each situation? Write sentences about these pictures, giving your opinion. Use the passive form with should, shouldn't, or ought to.



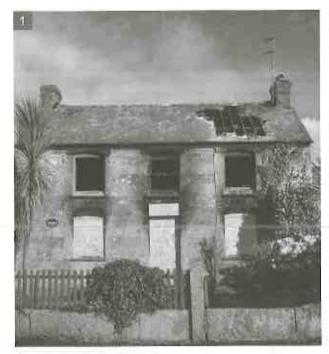






1.	People shouldn't be allowed to leave large items on the sidewalk.	OR
	People ought to be required to take large items to designated dumps.	
2.		
3.		
4.		

Make recommendations about the situations in these pictures. Use the passive form with has to, has got to, must, or mustn't.









1.	A law has to be passed to prevent people from losing their homes.	O
	Something must be done to repair abandoned homes.	
2.		
3.		
4		
т.		

	xample: <u>In my opinion, cell phones shouldn't be</u>	allowed in class.
_	They distract students from the lesson.	
1. 1	feel that	
2. 1	think that	
3. Ir	n my opinion,	
4.	don't think that	
	pond to these opinions by giving a difference expressions from the box.	ferent one of your own.
Th Yo	at's interesting, but I think at's not a bad idea. On the other hand, I feel u may have a point. However, I think o you? I'm not sure	TELEPHONE
1. A	Everyone should be required to study Chinese.	
В	You may have a point. However, I think that English is more useful for traveling.	
	People mustn't be allowed to write unkind things about others on social networking sites.	
		THE PERSON NAMED IN
В 3. А	Public transportation should be provided free of charge.	
3. A B 4. A	· ·	

Getting revenge

A Skim the web posts. What is a revenge story? Why is each of these stories a revenge story?

000

DO YOU HAVE A REVENGE STORY? SHARE IT!

- 1. Marcy I used to have a friend who was a lot of fun. She always loved to go out to eat. There was just one small problem: Every time the server brought the check, she would say, "Uh-oh! I don't have enough money with me. Can I pay you back later?" This was OK the first and second time it happened, but these excuses happened again and again. I finally got my revenge. The next time we went out for dinner, I said that I had forgotten my wallet. She was shocked, but she paid the check. However, she has never called me to go out again. I guess she was a moocher - a person who always tries to get someone else to pay.
- My neighbors used to keep rabbits in their yard, but they treated them very badly. Rabbit pens should be cleaned regularly, but these rabbits were dirty, and the smell was really terrible. Worse, I noticed that the rabbits didn't have enough to eat or drink. When I complained to my neighbors, they said, "It's not your problem." When I called the animal protection society, they said they would investigate. I waited a week, but nothing happened. One night, I stole the rabbits and took them home. The next day I gave them to a local pet store.
- 3 Child I was having problems sleeping because of a dripping noise coming from my air conditioner. I thought the air conditioner needed to be repaired, so I called a technician. She couldn't find anything wrong with it, but she said the dripping was coming from the apartment above me. I asked my neighbor to have his air conditioner checked, but he said, "If you can't sleep, that's your problem!" The following day I climbed a ladder and turned off the electricity inside the air conditioner. My neighbor had to call the technician to turn it on, and when she did, she also fixed the dripping. It cost him a few dollars, but it was worth it!

10	Read the	comments. Do you agree or disagree? write A (agree) or D (disagree).
	1.	Marcy shouldn't have pretended to lose her wallet. She should have spoken with her friend and told her it was time she paid for a meal.
	2.	I think Marcy did exactly what she ought to have done. Moochers must be taught a lesson!
	3.	People mustn't be permitted to steal. Jonathan made a big mistake, didn't he?
	4.	If people don't take care of their animals, something has got to be done. However, I don't think he should have stolen the rabbits.
	5.	Sometimes neighbors must be taught a lesson. Chad didn't hurt anybody, so I think his nasty neighbor got what he deserved.
	6.	You may have a point about some neighbors, but I think Chad should have called the manager of his building.
С	-	hink getting revenge – doing something mean to someone in return – is acceptable ? Why or why not?

Add tag question	ns to those sta			
a pulling to	iis to these st	atements.		
1. Builying is a serio	us problem,	isn't it	?	
2. The city doesn't p	orovide enough se	ervices for elderly	people,	doesit ?
3. You can easily spe	end all your mone	y on food and rei	nt,	?
4. Some unemploye	d people don't re	eally want to work	1	?
5. Health care is get	ting more and mo	ore expensive,		?
6. There are a lot of	homeless people	downtown,		?
7. Some schools have	ve overcrowded c	lassrooms,		?
8. Laws should be p	assed to reduce s	street crime,		?
Nouns and verbs	5			
A Complete the cha	art.			
INI-	No.	Maria	Monte	
Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb	
advertisement	advertise		pollute	
	,	prohibition		
offense	improve	provision	require	
permission		-	_ vandalize	
permission B Write sentences was discouraged by the new transfer of the new transfer	with tag questions ouns and four of to nould be required ey?	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t nould be required	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t nould be required ey?	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t nould be required ey?	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t nould be required ey?	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t nould be required ey?	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t	s using words fror the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t	s using words from the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t	s using words from the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	
permission B Write sentences we Use four of the notate of	ouns and four of t	s using words from the verbs. to wear helmets	n the chart.	

3	Give	one reason for and one reason against these opinions.
	1. Chi	ildren should be made to study a foreign language in primary school.
		: <u>It would help children understand other cultures.</u>
		ainst: I don't think it would be easy to find enough teachers.
	2. Sch	nools should punish students who bully other children.
	For	
		ainst:
	3. Mo	re tax money ought to be spent on cleaning up vandalism.
	For	•
	Ag	ainst:
	4. Stra	ay animals should be cared for in animal shelters.
	For	•
	Ag	ainst:
o Ti	_	
	Com	plete the conversation. Use passive modals and tag questions.
	Gina:	You know, I just moved into this new
		apartment building, and I thought
		everything would be really great now.
	Alec:	What's the problem?
	Gina:	Well, yesterday, the manager gave me a
		copy of the house rules. I found out that
		I can't park my moped on the sidewalk in
		front of the building anymore.
	Alec:	But people shouldn't
		(permit) to
		park their bikes or mopeds there.
	Gina:	Why not? There isn't any other place to
		park,?
		I guess I'll have to park on the street now.
	Alec:	I'm sorry that parking somewhere else will be inconvenient, but don't you agree
		that people shouldn't (allow) to block the sidewalk or
		the entrance to the building?
	Gina:	Well, you may have a point, but parking spaces for all types of cycles need
		(provide) for renters here. All renters with a car
		have a parking space,?
	Alec:	Well, yes, you're right. You should go to the next renters' meeting and discuss
		the issue with everyone else.
	Gina:	That's not a bad idea. My voice ought (hear) as

much as anyone else's – I think I will!

16 Reaching your goals

Vlato	ch each profession wi	th the correct achievement.			
П	actor student	volunteer			
Second .	parent nurse	✓ high school counselor			
	1000000				
1. ľve	e managed to help hundre	eds of students get into college. <u>high school counselor</u>			
2. I was able to clean litter from dozens of beaches over the last three years.					
3. I managed to maintain an A average during my last four years of school.					
		nany of my favorite movie stars			
	_	ildren how to be responsible citizens.			
5. l′∨∈	e been able to help sick pe	eople feel better			
Choc	osing a job				
91100					
A Co	emplete the chart with you	r own ideas.			
A Co	emplete the chart with you	r own ideas. Goals of people with this profession			
		Goals of people with this profession			
1.	Job	Goals of people with this profession			
1.	. social worker	Goals of people with this profession help people educate people			
1.	. social worker . university professor	Goals of people with this profession help people			
1.	. social worker . university professor . small-business owner	Goals of people with this profession help people educate people			
1. 2. 3. 4.	. social worker . university professor . small-business owner . emergency-room nurse	Goals of people with this profession help people educate people			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Ccc	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse	Help people with this profession help people educate people			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Ccc	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse	help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details.			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Ccc 1.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h	help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details.			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h She'd also like to have As a university professor t	help people educate people with this profession help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. hopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h She'd also like to have As a university professor t	help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. sopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1. 2.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h She'd also like to have He'd also like to have	help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. sopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1. 2.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h She'd also like to have He'd also like to have	help people educate people with this profession help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. hopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1. 2.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences we have a social worker, Jane has a university professor the dalso like to have head also like to hea	help people educate people with your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. sopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community. three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have ke, a small business owner, would like to have			
1. 2. 3. 4. B Cc 1. 2.	social worker university professor small-business owner emergency-room nurse mplete these sentences w As a social worker, Jane h She'd also like to have He'd also like to have By this time next year, Jak In addition, he hopes he'l	help people educate people vith your ideas from part A. Try to add more details. sopes she'll have helped poor and elderly people in her community three years from now, Paul hopes he'll have			

In addition, she'd like to have

3

Write two paragraphs about an issue that is important to you. In the first paragraph, describe a past achievement related to that issue. In the second paragraph, describe a goal.



Last year, I began volunteering at a local animal shelter. I managed to help find homes for over twenty cats and dogs in one year. It was an incredibly rewarding experience.

In the next few years, I hope to help more animals find homes. I'd like to have placed a hundred pets in homes over the next four years.

The challenge of a lifetime

A Scan the first paragraph of the article. Where is Rupert Isaacson from? Where are his parents from? Where did he go?

challenge in his life. The son of parents who were born in Africa, he grew up in London and in the English countryside, where he discovered his love of horses. Because he grew up hearing so many fascinating memories about Africa from his parents, he went there and lived with nomadic people called the Bushmen of the Kalahari Desert. He then wrote a book, The Healing Land, about his experiences with the Bushmen and the problems of survival they face in the twenty-first century.

By the year 2000, Rupert was already managing to make a living as a journalist, writing articles and guidebooks about Africa and India. It was in India that he met his wife, Kristin, Today, they live with their son, Rowan, just outside of Austin, Texas, in the U.S. But Rupert faced the greatest challenge of his life when, at the age of two, Rowan was diagnosed with autism, a condition that affects people's ability to communicate and interact socially with others.

Rupert discovered that spending time with horses and riding them was helping Rowan. The presence of the horses was very calming to the boy. Rupert also knew that the Bushmen of the Kalahari possessed great knowledge about healing. He thought that if he could find a group

1. How does autism affect people?

2. Why did Rupert's family go to Mongolia?

4. What does Rowan do in Endangerous?

3. What is the purpose of The Horse Boy Foundation?

5. List three accomplishments of Rupert Isaacson.

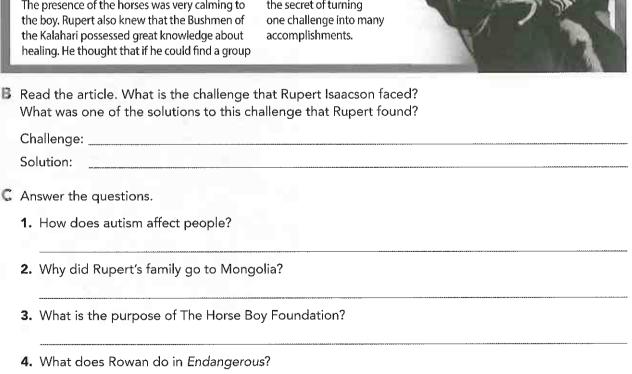
Challenge: Solution:

Answer the questions.

Rupert Isaacson is a man who has faced a major of people with healing powers and a great knowledge of horses, there could be a possibility of helping his son. Unfortunately, the Bushmen of the Kalahari do not have horses.

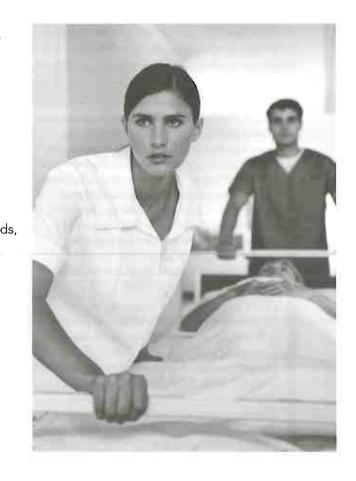
> So the family set off for Mongolia, where horses have been important for thousands of years. Rupert has written about this journey dedicated to helping his son in *Horse Boy*, and he has produced a documentary of the same name. In the film, viewers have the opportunity to see the family traveling in Mongolia, riding horses, and meeting healers in order to help Rowan.

Because working with horses has helped Rowan, Rupert established The Horse Boy Foundation at his ranch in Texas. It is a school that teaches people how to use horses for healing. In addition to writing another book, The Long Ride Home, about traveling with Rowan to Africa, Australia, and Arizona in the U.S., Rupert has also produced the documentary Endangerous, with Rowan as host, about dangerous animals that are threatened with extinction. Rupert Isaacson has managed to discover the secret of turning one challenge into many accomplishments.



Choose the correct word.

1.	It's not good to be
	if you're an emergency-room nurse.
	(courageous / timid / upbeat)
2.	If teachers are going to be successful, they
	have to be
	(dependent / rigid / resourceful)
3.	You have to be
	if you work as a volunteer.
	(adaptable / cynical / unimaginative)
4.	If you take a job far from your family and friend
	you have to be
	(compassionate / dependent / self-sufficient)
5.	One of the most important things about
	working with children is being positive



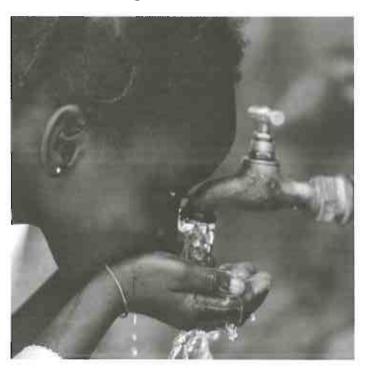
(compassionate / insensitive / timid)

(adaptable / cynical / resourceful)6. Being a role model for troubled youths requires someone who is strong and

and not __

Read each sentence. Write A for achievement or G for goal.

- **1.** I've been able to provide clean water to three villages during my time as a Peace Corps volunteer.
- 2. By the time I'm 35, I'd like to have lived in a culture that's very different from my own. _____
- While I was working abroad in Tokyo, I managed to learn to speak Japanese fluently.
- **4.** After my time with Habitat for Humanity, I hope to have made a significant and positive difference in people's lives. _____
- **5.** I'd like to have gotten another degree in two years.
- **6.** I hope I'll have gotten married by the time I'm 30. ____



Accomplishments and goals

A Match the verbs with the nouns. Write the collocations. (More than one answer may be possible.)

Verb	Noun	
buy —	a change	1. buy a house
get	debts	2
learn	a house	3
make	a promotion	4
meet	new skills	5
pay off	someone special	6

B Write one sentence about an accomplishment and another sentence about a goal. Use the words in part A and your own ideas.

1. My sister and her husband have managed to save enough money to buy a house. I expect to have bought a house within five years.

	2201	laske		
		8	1	Į
			r /	100
-	F	HOL		
		- OA		

A Write three sentences about the accomplishments of someone you know very well. Use the present perfect or simple past.



By investing his money carefully, my neighbor Enrico was able to retire at 40. Since then, he has managed to set up an organization that helps find jobs for people who are homeless. In addition, he has volunteered his time at a homeless shelter in the city.

Write three sentences about things the same person would like to have achieved in ten years. Use the future perfect or would like to have + past participle.

Enrico would like to have started an organization to provide scholarships for needy college students by the time he's 50. He hopes to travel a lot, too. In fact, he hopes he'll have traveled all through Southeast Asia.



Appendix

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Past Participle	Present	Past	Past Participle
(be) am/is, are	was, were	been	leave	left	left
become	became	become	lend	lent	lent
begin	began	begun	let	let	let
bite	bit	bitten	light	lit	lit
blow	blew	blown	lose	lost	lost
break	broke	broken	make	made	made
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	pay	paid	paid
burn	burned	burned	put	put	put
buy	bought	bought	quit	quit	quit
catch	caught	caught	read	read	read
choose	chose	chosen	run	ran	run
come	came	come	say	said	said ·
cost	cost	cost	see	saw	seen
cut	cut	cut	sell	sold	sold
do	did	done	send	sent	sent
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt	shine	shined/shone	shined/shone
drink	drank	drunk	shoot	shot	shot
drive	drove	driven	show	showed	shown
eat	ate	eaten	sink	sank	sunk
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought	fought	spend	spent	spent
find	found	found	stand	stood	stood
fly	flew	flown	steal	stole	stolen
forget	forgot	forgotten	stick	stuck	stuck
forgive	forgave	forgiven	sweep	swept	swept
get	got	gotten	swim	swam	swum
give	gave	given	take	took	taken
go-	went	gone	teach	taught	taught
grow	grew	grown	tear	tore	torn
have	hád	had ·	tell	told	told
hear	heard	heard	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
hurt	hurt	hurt	upset	upset	upset
keep	kept	kept	wake	woke	woken
know	knew	known	wear	wore	worn
lay	laid	laid	write	wrote	written

interchange The world's favorite English course.

What makes interchange special?

- The trusted methodology and proven approach have helped millions of students around the world learn English,
- Insights from thousands of teachers ensure that the topics and activities in the fifth edition are right for today's students and today's classrooms.
- The lifth edition features new content and a refreshed design of the flexible unit structure that teachers and students love.
- The clear communicative approach delivers results and helps students become confident speakers of English right from the beginning

cambridge.org/interchange

downloadable resources | more information

Digital solutions

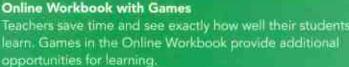


Presentation Plus

Everything in one place for classroom presentation: Student's Book, Workbook, Audio, and Video.



Teachers save time and see exactly how well their students learn. Games in the Online Workbook provide additional opportunities for learning.





Online Self-Study

Hundreds of Interactive online exercises free with each Student's Book



CEFR level

Interchange helps you create Better Learning experiences in your classroom.

Better Learning is our simple approach where deeper insights help shape richer content that drives stronger results.

Discover more:

cambridge.org/betterlearning





